# **Section 1:** Welcome to Cryptocurrency Investing! Here is what you will learn!

### 1. Thank you for learning Cryptocurrencies with me! Here is what you will learn

Would you like to learn how I have turned $1,000 investing in cryptocurrencies into $13 million today

and the exact strategies in which you can do so too.

Welcome to the Cryptocurrency Investing Course How to Fund Your Retirement.

Here with me.

Superman, your superhero cryptocurrency instructor.

I am here to educate you fully, to take you from being a complete novice that probably knows nothing

about cryptocurrency to being as advanced as me.

It is the best performing asset class in the last ten years, and there are multiple success stories

of people making billions from investing a few thousand.

And if you are watching me today, you are still early to the party and there are still massive opportunities

for you to be able to multiply your money with this asset class.

What you see behind me are the logos of cryptocurrencies in their infancy, all trying to change the

world of technology and money.

I have dedicated myself to cryptocurrency over the last four years and I have run two cryptocurrency

YouTube channels where I analyze cryptocurrencies, reverse engineering, the criteria that allowed

me to spot whether cryptocurrencies had enormous value.

Now I have got combined 200,000 subscribers on YouTube and I have got 100,000 followers on Twitter.

The reason why is because I am a very successful investor in cryptocurrency and I have invested in extremely

successful cryptocurrencies from a very early stage.

And a lot of these cryptocurrencies today have done extremely well.

Solana, for instance, is a cryptocurrency that I brought to people at $1 and now it is $245.

Polygon is a cryptocurrency that I brought to people when it was worth a 10th of a cent and today is

worth nearly $2.

So I am extremely good at picking out cryptocurrencies and I want you to understand the logic that goes

into my brain that allows me to identify why these cryptocurrencies can allow you to make huge multipliers

on your money.

So this is the definitive course for making money from cryptocurrency.

Now I am going to get you started right into the thick of it.

In the next lecture, I'm going to take you through this glossary of terms because I want you to fully

understand this technology, because if you understand it, it allows you to spot how you can make money

from it.

You are going to go from novice to advanced level in cryptocurrency knowledge.

You are going to understand all of the different types of cryptocurrency, all of the trends, all of

the technology.

And this is going to allow you to make the best investment decisions.

You are going to learn the best of what I have learned and the best of my experience.

I've been in cryptocurrency for four years.

That makes me a veteran in cryptocurrency.

That means that I have gone through all of the best of times and all of the worst of times.

I have gone from making millions to losing millions.

So this gives me the experience to tell you about profit taking, about market cycles and about how

to invest early in cryptocurrencies.

The riskiest investments are the earliest investments, and I'm going to show you how to mitigate your

risk when investing early.

I'm going to teach you about cryptocurrency, about Bitcoin blockchain.

ET cetera.

How to buy cryptocurrencies and how to cash out from cryptocurrencies, what to look for when investing.

What are the criteria you should be looking at when you are analyzing a cryptocurrency for profit making

opportunities.

This is golden because this is what I use to make 13,000 x on my thousand dollar invest moment and then

I'm going to show you how to exploit trends.

There are many subcategories in cryptocurrency.

They're not all just coins like Bitcoin.

There are various technologies such as infrastructure, Nfts, metaverse and Defi amongst many others.

And I'm going to be telling you all about each of these different trends and what to look for within

them to make huge amounts of money.

So strap yourself up and get ready for an avalanche of crypto knowledge that's going to help you make

money in this revolutionary asset class.

### 

### 2. Crypto Terminology Essentials to get you started quickly (Part 1)

WEBVTT

00:00.090 --> 00:01.950

Welcome to your first lecture.

00:01.950 --> 00:08.700

I am going to throw you right into the deep end and I'm going to acquaint you with cryptocurrency terminology.

00:08.700 --> 00:15.150

This is going to be quite hard to take at first, but I feel this is going to help you with your understanding

00:15.150 --> 00:19.440

and that when you go into cryptocurrency groups or forums, you're going to be able to understand what

00:19.440 --> 00:22.290

people are saying, what is cryptocurrency?

00:22.290 --> 00:27.510

So you've got your normal money, whether that be pounds, euros, dollars, rupees, etc. and this

00:27.510 --> 00:29.730

is what you use to buy goods and services with.

00:29.730 --> 00:31.770

And you have that in physical cash.

00:31.770 --> 00:36.120

You can have it on a card, you can have it in banknotes, you can have it in coins.

00:36.120 --> 00:39.260

But cryptocurrency is not physical money.

00:39.270 --> 00:46.020

Cryptocurrency is purely digital, and the crypto part of cryptocurrency means cryptography.

00:46.020 --> 00:52.590

This is a method of encrypting money, so the only way to access cryptocurrency is through your private

00:52.590 --> 00:53.850

and public key.

00:53.940 --> 00:56.070

So I'm going to move on to this next.

00:56.070 --> 01:00.270

So your private key is what secures your funds.

01:00.270 --> 01:04.260

With cryptocurrency, you do not have a banking system.

01:04.260 --> 01:11.340

The blockchain is the money system and the private key is your access to your money.

01:11.340 --> 01:16.530

Think of it as your PIN number when you are accessing money from your bank card.

01:16.530 --> 01:22.290

Now, whenever you open up a wallet to store your cryptocurrency because once you buy your cryptocurrency,

01:22.290 --> 01:25.320

you have to store it, you will generate a private key.

01:25.320 --> 01:30.270

When you create a wallet, you will be given a 12 word seed phrase.

01:30.270 --> 01:38.190

So if you want to access your wallet, you have got to put in these 12 words in the sequence that they

01:38.190 --> 01:39.240

are given to you.

01:39.240 --> 01:42.690

So you must write this down or store it somewhere securely.

01:42.690 --> 01:47.460

Only you are allowed to know your private key in the event of you passing away.

01:47.460 --> 01:50.640

This would be how somebody would be able to access your funds.

01:50.640 --> 01:56.280

So this should only be stored privately for you or shared on the event of a death.

01:56.280 --> 01:59.070

So this is how people access your funds.

01:59.070 --> 02:05.130

If you go into cryptocurrency forums, there will be scammers and people trying to find out your private

02:05.130 --> 02:05.520

key.

02:05.550 --> 02:10.770

Do not ever share your private key under any circumstances.

02:10.770 --> 02:15.120

It is never right to do so and no one should ever ask for your private key.

02:15.270 --> 02:17.190

Then you have got your public key.

02:17.190 --> 02:21.480

This is what you can share with other people and this is how people can send you money.

02:21.480 --> 02:26.130

So this is my Ethereum wallet and this is my public key.

02:26.130 --> 02:30.960

So if I copy that, I can now send it to somebody else if they want to send me money.

02:30.960 --> 02:33.390

And let me just show you how that works in actuality.

02:33.390 --> 02:39.060

So if somebody sent me this public key to send them money, I would go to send and then I would enter

02:39.060 --> 02:44.640

in their public key, and then I could choose how much money I send them and then I would send it over

02:44.640 --> 02:45.120

to them.

02:45.120 --> 02:48.870

So the public key is a way of being able to send your funds.

02:48.960 --> 02:50.280

Then you've got the market.

02:50.280 --> 02:59.190

The market refers to the cryptocurrency market that is all 13.8 thousand cryptocurrencies that exist

02:59.190 --> 02:59.880

today.

02:59.880 --> 03:02.370

So you have at the head of it Bitcoin.

03:02.370 --> 03:09.540

This was the original and first cryptocurrency and currently the one that is the most valuable.

03:09.540 --> 03:13.320

Every other cryptocurrency is known as an altcoin.

03:13.320 --> 03:19.560

Then if we go and have a look at Bitcoin, Bitcoin is the number one because it is a store of value.

03:19.560 --> 03:21.930

Now Bitcoin can be used as a currency.

03:21.930 --> 03:25.920

I can pay you and I can pay for goods and services with Bitcoin.

03:25.920 --> 03:29.340

But Bitcoin is mainly looked at as digital gold.

03:29.460 --> 03:33.630

Gold is valuable because it's a scarce material.

03:33.630 --> 03:38.070

Now Bitcoin is valuable because there is a scarce supply.

03:38.100 --> 03:45.690

There will only ever be 21 million bitcoins in circulation and the whole circulation will not be released

03:45.690 --> 03:53.370

until the year 2140 because there are six bitcoins going into circulation every 5 to 10 minutes.

03:53.370 --> 03:58.200

So that keeps the supply very, very finite and small.

03:58.200 --> 04:04.170

So it's only 18.8 million bitcoins, and that is why it is 67,000.

04:04.590 --> 04:11.970

Eight years ago it was worth a couple of dollars, but nowadays it's worth 67,000 because as more people

04:11.970 --> 04:15.930

have come into cryptocurrency, there is greater demand on Bitcoin.

04:15.930 --> 04:21.540

And because there is such short supply, demand massively exceeds supply and therefore the price just

04:21.540 --> 04:22.920

keeps going up and up.

04:22.920 --> 04:27.300

And this is why over time I expect Bitcoin to be eventually worth over $1,000,000.

04:27.300 --> 04:29.070

Then we have got mining.

04:29.070 --> 04:33.840

Now mining is a methodology of protecting the network.

04:33.840 --> 04:38.580

So how bitcoins are put into circulation is through a process of mining.

04:38.580 --> 04:40.800

So what happens is there is a mining network.

04:40.800 --> 04:47.490

There are thousands of miners that are currently using mining rigs to solve computational puzzles.

04:47.490 --> 04:53.220

Once they solve the puzzle, the last block is mined and more bitcoin is put into circulation.

04:53.220 --> 04:55.560

And this is the case with other blockchains too.

04:55.590 --> 04:58.560

Mining is important because of security.

04:58.560 --> 04:59.880

This is the hash power.

05:00.110 --> 05:01.790

Going into Bitcoin.

05:01.790 --> 05:06.630

And this hash power is what protects Bitcoin from being hacked.

05:06.650 --> 05:13.070

So in order to hack Bitcoin, there would need to be the equivalent amount of hash power against the

05:13.070 --> 05:15.550

current hash power to hack Bitcoin.

05:15.560 --> 05:22.070

And because the Bitcoin mining network is so large, it would be almost impossible to hack Bitcoin.

05:22.070 --> 05:24.140

So that is why mining is important.

05:24.140 --> 05:29.750

And mining is also known as proof of work because cryptocurrencies are generated through the process

05:29.750 --> 05:31.010

of working.

05:31.340 --> 05:33.230

Then you've got bitcoin season.

05:33.230 --> 05:37.490

This is important to understand where is the money flow going to?

05:37.520 --> 05:45.620

Money flow typically goes to bitcoin first and then it filters down into the other cryptocurrencies.

05:45.620 --> 05:51.890

Now this chart here, which is called the Altcoin Season Index, this will tell you whether it's Bitcoin

05:51.890 --> 05:53.720

season or coin season.

05:53.720 --> 05:58.460

When it's Bitcoin season, that means Bitcoin is outperforming the rest of the market.

05:58.460 --> 06:03.140

If it's all coin season, that means altcoins are outperforming Bitcoin.

06:03.140 --> 06:10.130

Bitcoin season is really a good time to buy altcoins before the run up into severe altcoin season.

06:10.130 --> 06:15.980

And the top of altcoin season is a good time to buy Bitcoin because then it becomes a Bitcoin season

06:15.980 --> 06:17.450

and you make your money there.

06:17.450 --> 06:19.310

Then you have got the blockchain.

06:19.310 --> 06:26.510

The blockchain is a digital record of all transactions within a block and then they are all chained

06:26.510 --> 06:27.560

up together.

06:27.560 --> 06:30.770

So this is as close to what a blockchain looks like.

06:30.770 --> 06:34.160

So you've got your first block that gets filled up with transactions.

06:34.160 --> 06:37.670

So I pay you, you pay Jorge, Jorge pays Steve.

06:37.670 --> 06:43.640

And once that block is filled up, it then gets processed and then the next block is generated.

06:43.640 --> 06:48.740

And then from that block, it then fills up with transactions, it gets filled, and then the next block

06:48.770 --> 06:49.970

is generated.

06:49.970 --> 06:54.650

So when you are paying someone, your payment will go into one of these blocks.

06:54.650 --> 06:59.750

So it's a digital record of all transactions taking place on a particular blockchain.

06:59.750 --> 07:05.630

Now, a lot of cryptocurrencies do have a blockchain, Bitcoin, Ethereum, Binance, Cardano and Solana.

07:05.630 --> 07:08.420

They all have their own blockchains.

07:08.420 --> 07:14.450

So that means that each of those blockchains store digital records of transactions happening on that

07:14.450 --> 07:15.320

money network.

07:15.320 --> 07:17.600

And then you've got something called gas.

07:17.600 --> 07:19.760

Now gas is the transaction fee.

07:19.760 --> 07:23.990

If I want to send somebody money, I have got to send gas.

07:23.990 --> 07:27.530

So this is what would happen if I wanted to send somebody.

07:27.530 --> 07:30.020

Etherium So I type in that.

07:30.020 --> 07:35.630

I want to send them 0.25 Ethereum and then it tells me how much the gas would be worth.

07:35.630 --> 07:38.930

So the gas at this present time is $16.

07:38.930 --> 07:45.140

So I am sending $1,200, but it would cost me $15 in gas.

07:45.170 --> 07:48.620

Now, if the network is busy, it could cost you a lot more.

07:48.620 --> 07:50.780

It could cost you 30 or $50.

07:50.780 --> 07:54.770

So you typically want to send money when a network is not so busy.

07:54.770 --> 07:58.010

Now, what happens with that gas fee is that it goes to the miner.

07:58.010 --> 08:04.040

You are paying the person mining the Ethereum blockchain to send that money on your behalf.

08:04.040 --> 08:06.620

Now Etherium is different to Bitcoin.

08:06.620 --> 08:12.980

Etherium is what allows you to build apps in cryptocurrency.

08:12.980 --> 08:16.700

So Ethereum is in essence an operating system.

08:16.700 --> 08:19.460

It's a little bit like Mac OS or Windows.

08:19.460 --> 08:24.170

These are both operating systems for Apple computers and Microsoft computers.

08:24.170 --> 08:27.740

So if you want to build apps, you need these operating systems.

08:27.740 --> 08:34.670

And a lot of these businesses on here started off as Etherium businesses before they launch their own

08:34.670 --> 08:35.420

blockchain.

08:35.420 --> 08:40.610

And Shiba Inu, for instance, is a cryptocurrency on the Ethereum blockchain.

08:40.610 --> 08:47.120

So that is why Ethereum is the second most valuable cryptocurrency, because it allows people to build

08:47.120 --> 08:48.140

businesses.

08:48.350 --> 08:49.850

Then you've got smart contracts.

08:49.850 --> 08:54.890

So smart contracts is the technology that Ethereum introduced to the cryptocurrency world.

08:54.890 --> 08:59.480

Smart Contracts is basically a program, a program with logic.

08:59.480 --> 09:01.970

If you do X, Y, you will happen.

09:01.970 --> 09:05.360

And this is how apps are created in cryptocurrency.

09:05.360 --> 09:07.370

It's with smart contracts.

09:07.370 --> 09:12.830

Then you've got fiat currency and this is typically your dollars, pounds, euros.

09:12.830 --> 09:15.470

That is what they are referred to in cryptocurrency.

09:15.470 --> 09:21.680

So if anybody says fiat currency, that means your normal money, then you've got Stablecoins.

09:21.680 --> 09:28.640

Now stablecoins are the equivalent of fiat currency, so there is no volatility in Stablecoins they

09:28.640 --> 09:30.530

stay at $1.

09:30.530 --> 09:36.320

And that means if you make a profit in cryptocurrency, let's say you bought Bitcoin at $1,000 and you

09:36.320 --> 09:40.580

sell it today for $66,000, you've made a 66 X profit.

09:40.580 --> 09:45.170

So that means you can take your profit and you can put it into your tether and that will freeze it.

09:45.170 --> 09:46.520

There's no volatility.

09:46.520 --> 09:47.630

It won't move.

09:47.630 --> 09:52.130

So if you've made $60,000, it will stay at $60,000 with tether.

09:52.130 --> 09:56.810

And there are other stablecoins just like Tether Usdc Binance USD.

09:56.810 --> 09:59.650

Now something that I want to let you know about Stablecoins in.

09:59.900 --> 10:02.410

That this is where people park profits.

10:02.420 --> 10:09.460

So Bitcoin at the present time has got $41 billion worth of volume in the last 24 hours.

10:09.470 --> 10:15.710

That means money going into and out of bitcoin, but tether has 88 billion.

10:15.710 --> 10:19.430

That is over double bitcoin and bitcoin is the number one.

10:19.430 --> 10:24.920

So that shows you how much money gets traded into Stablecoins because when there is lots of profits

10:24.920 --> 10:30.980

being made in the market, people like to cash in their profits by trading their cryptocurrency for

10:30.980 --> 10:33.200

tether and that will freeze the profits.

10:33.200 --> 10:39.110

Stablecoins are a really good place to park your money when the market is going down because if you

10:39.140 --> 10:45.140

cash in your profits when the market goes down, you are able to buy cryptocurrencies much cheaper.

10:45.140 --> 10:46.910

Then you have got market cap.

10:46.910 --> 10:53.240

So the market cap on Coinmarketcap.com refers to the value of all cryptocurrencies put together.

10:53.240 --> 10:58.850

So all 13,000 cryptocurrencies equate to $2.9 trillion.

10:58.850 --> 11:07.520

Bitcoin's market cap is $1.28 trillion, and how market cap is derived is the price times the circulating

11:07.520 --> 11:08.000

supply.

11:08.000 --> 11:11.000

This gives you the valuation of the cryptocurrency.

11:11.000 --> 11:16.250

So if you think of cryptocurrencies like a business, if you are going on Shark Tank or Dragon's Den

11:16.250 --> 11:20.120

and you are pitching a business and they're asking How much do you think your business is worth?

11:20.120 --> 11:23.870

This is essentially the worth of a cryptocurrency.

11:23.870 --> 11:25.370

Then you have got volume.

11:25.370 --> 11:30.710

Volume refers to the money going into and out of a cryptocurrency.

11:30.710 --> 11:34.880

Volume is also very, very useful when doing technical analysis.

11:34.880 --> 11:39.080

So as you can see here, you've got these volume bars down here.

11:39.080 --> 11:42.140

So you can see there's quite a big red bar right there.

11:42.140 --> 11:45.110

And that volume indicates that people are selling.

11:45.110 --> 11:48.500

And this is what happened to Bitcoin at this period.

11:48.500 --> 11:54.140

It went from 58,000 all the way down to 27,000.

11:54.140 --> 11:58.130

It lost half of its value because there was a peak in selling volume.

11:58.130 --> 12:03.410

So volume is very, very important for understanding how relevant is that cryptocurrency and how much

12:03.410 --> 12:05.270

people trading it right now.

12:05.540 --> 12:07.130

Then you've got volatility.

12:07.130 --> 12:10.310

Volatility refers to the price swings.

12:10.310 --> 12:15.920

So as you can see, bitcoin is very volatile, you can make a lot of money and you can lose a lot of

12:15.920 --> 12:16.220

money.

12:16.220 --> 12:21.320

And this is why being knowledgeable in cryptocurrency is very, very important, because it allows you

12:21.320 --> 12:26.060

to buy at the right time so that you can experience positive volatility.

12:26.060 --> 12:30.710

So for instance, if you bought down here at 29,000, which is what I was encouraging people to do,

12:30.710 --> 12:36.530

then when the cryptocurrency went up to 58,000, they essentially to X their money.

12:36.530 --> 12:43.460

And then when it reaches a kind of critical mass, which it did here at 64,000, then this was the time

12:43.460 --> 12:45.020

people started to sell.

12:45.020 --> 12:47.750

So cryptocurrency markets are very volatile.

12:47.750 --> 12:51.620

And the reason why is because cryptocurrency is not a regulated market.

12:51.620 --> 12:56.510

That means anything can happen and all sorts of manipulation happens in cryptocurrency.

12:56.510 --> 12:59.780

But volatility is the magic of cryptocurrency.

12:59.780 --> 13:02.360

This is how you can make such incredible money.

13:02.360 --> 13:05.510

But if you're not careful, it's how you can lose incredible money.

13:05.780 --> 13:08.120

Then you've got investing and hodling.

13:08.150 --> 13:09.890

These are two of the same thing.

13:09.890 --> 13:13.130

Investing means you are buying for a long term period.

13:13.130 --> 13:17.210

So that could be six months to five years to ten years, 20 years.

13:17.210 --> 13:20.240

And Hodl stands for Hold On for Dear Life.

13:20.240 --> 13:24.950

So when people say they are hodling a cryptocurrency, that means they are holding it.

13:24.950 --> 13:31.100

No matter what happens with the volatility, whether it goes obscenely down or violently high, they

13:31.100 --> 13:35.990

are going to hold that cryptocurrency because they are looking for a long term benefit.

13:36.020 --> 13:43.490

The opposite of investing is trading and this is typically a short term buy of a cryptocurrency and

13:43.490 --> 13:45.620

there are a few types of trading.

13:45.620 --> 13:50.930

There is day trading, which is where you invest in a cryptocurrency only for one day.

13:50.930 --> 13:56.690

So if I give you a good example of why people would do this, Moon River is a cryptocurrency.

13:56.690 --> 13:59.780

This week they got listed on an exchange.

13:59.780 --> 14:01.970

An exchange is where you buy cryptocurrency.

14:01.970 --> 14:06.770

So Binance, which is the number one exchange, said they are going to list Moon River.

14:06.770 --> 14:13.550

And in anticipation of the price going up, people bought at this point here and then they sold at this

14:13.550 --> 14:13.850

point.

14:13.850 --> 14:16.880

So this all happen in the space of a few hours.

14:16.880 --> 14:23.510

So that is a day trade and you can make good money with a day trade and typically with a day trade is

14:23.510 --> 14:28.880

because you've heard some kind of rumor on that particular day that's going to make that cryptocurrency

14:28.880 --> 14:29.420

go up.

14:29.420 --> 14:34.670

So you typically buy the rumor and sell the news once the actual event happens.

14:34.670 --> 14:40.460

So in this case they said about the listing and the price went up once the listing actually happened

14:40.460 --> 14:43.940

and Moon River got listed on Binance so people could buy it.

14:43.940 --> 14:47.270

Then the price plummeted because people sold the news.

14:47.270 --> 14:48.890

Then you've got short term trading.

14:48.890 --> 14:51.680

Short term trade refers to the period of a few weeks.

14:51.680 --> 14:53.960

So this is the period of one month.

14:53.960 --> 14:59.440

If you had gone into Kadena back at the beginning of last month, you would have got it for 1.90.

15:00.210 --> 15:04.380

And then only a few days ago did this actually hit $24.

15:04.380 --> 15:07.380

So this would have been roughly a 12 x.

15:07.380 --> 15:12.930

So if you put $1,000 into this, that would have turned into $12,000 if you held for this short term

15:12.930 --> 15:13.470

period.

15:13.470 --> 15:15.030

And then you've got swing trading.

15:15.030 --> 15:22.050

Swing trading is the process of buying a cryptocurrency at are low selling it at a high and then re

15:22.050 --> 15:23.310

buying it at a low.

15:23.310 --> 15:27.900

So you are always increasing the amount you hold of that cryptocurrency.

### 3. Crypto Terminology Essentials (Part 2)

Technical analysis refers to the process of studying patterns on a chart, looking at a chart and analyzing

it to predict what's going to happen next.

And technical analysis is mainly a tool used by traders.

And I'm going to take you through some technical analysis techniques later on in this video.

Then you've got support and resistance.

So support, this is what's propping up the price.

So whenever the price goes up and then goes down, it falls to that floor price.

Now, once the cryptocurrency goes below that floor price, that means that a breakdown has happened.

So it has broken through the floor.

And that is why you hold support lines, because once it breaks through, typically that is the time

to sell.

Now resistance refers to a line that is stopping the price from going up.

So this line that was previously support then became resistance.

So when the price broke down from the floor, when it raised up, it couldn't get beyond this line.

So it tried once, it tried twice and it failed and it fell down further.

So resistance is the force stopping a cryptocurrency from growing higher.

Now, this price of 64,000 was the all time high of Bitcoin.

Back in April.

It hit 64 and then it fell right through.

And then in order to go higher than its previous all time high, it will need to go through its resistance.

Now, initially, when it went back up to 60,000, it did go through, but then it came right back down

again.

And this resistance line held and it held for a few days until Bitcoin spiked back over it.

Now, when a price goes beyond the resistance, that equals a breakout.

So if it breaks below support, that means it's a break down.

And if it explodes beyond resistance, that means it's a break out.

Fundamentals or fundamental analysis means what makes a coin valuable.

And this typically refers to what pain does it solve?

If it solves a pain that is felt in the market, then it has good fundamentals.

That means that the cryptocurrency is needed.

Market cycle indicate the points when you should buy and when you should sell.

So what you will have is you will have your low points and you will have your high points.

The low points are the times to buy and the high points are the times to sell.

The cryptocurrency market is cyclical.

This tends to happen every 18 months to two years.

So you have the bull market, which is where the low goes all the way to the high.

And this is a period where people are buying and then you've got the bear market and each of these markets

last 18 months to two years.

So that's what a bull market is.

Bull market means people are buying.

When people are bullish, that means people want to buy it.

When we've got a bear market, it means people are selling.

And when people are bearish, it means people are thinking the price is going to go down.

So the way to understand bull and bear markets is how they attack.

So bulls have the horns and they attack up.

So that means the prices are going up, bears attack down.

So that refers to down motion.

So up motion and down motion.

Then you've got retail and institutional investors.

Retail investors are your normal everyday investors.

Institutional investors refers to banks and companies.

So recently PayPal and Tesla have bought Bitcoin, so they are referred to as institutional investors.

And this is another reason why the price of Bitcoin has gone up dramatically over time.

It's because more institutions are interested in it.

Then you've got wallets.

Now there are two types of wallet in cryptocurrency.

One is a hot wallet.

Wallet means your money is readily available and it's easy to use that money.

This is the example of a cold wallet.

So most of my cryptocurrencies are stored in here.

And the reason why is because this is the safest way to secure your cryptocurrencies.

You buy them and then you send them to your hardware wallet.

This means that somebody needs to access your hardware wallet.

That means they need to physically get it with a hot wallet.

If somebody hacks your computer and that can be easily done in the world of software.

There are many clever people out there and there are always people trying to hack your computer.

Now, how people can hack your computer is they can essentially send you a file which installs a key

logger that will tell them what you are typing into your computer.

And from that they may be able to access your seed phrase, which will allow them access into your hot

wallet.

A hacker would physically need to get this off your hands because the private key is installed within

this hardware wallet, so it's almost impossible to hack.

Now, if you should buy cryptocurrency on Coinbase, because Coinbase is the number one place to buy

cryptocurrencies with your normal Fiat money, then they have an inbuilt wallet.

So when you buy that cryptocurrency, it gets stored on Coinbase, however, that.

Means is stored on a third party site.

So if that third party site gets hacked, then you potentially could lose your money.

Additionally, if you buy your cryptocurrency on a website like Binance, so Binance is an exchange.

This is where you buy cryptocurrency with other cryptocurrency.

So when you buy cryptocurrencies here you will have a wallet which stores all of your currency.

But again, it's a third party wallet.

It can be hacked and if somebody does hack it, you could lose your funds.

That's why a hardware wallet like this, the ledger nano s is absolutely vital, particularly if you

have a large sums of money, then you've got centralized exchanges.

So Binance is a centralized exchange.

It is run by a company.

Binance have a CEO and have staff that maintain and manage this exchange.

They are also a third party.

Now the benefit of being a centralized exchanges is that when you buy a cryptocurrency, you have to

pay an exchange fee for every single trade.

That is how they make money.

The alternative to a centralized exchange is a decentralized exchange like Uniswap.

Uniswap does not have a CEO.

They have got developers that built Uniswap.

But this allows you to not have to send your cryptos to another website if you wanted to buy cryptocurrency

with your Ethereum.

So Ada and ETH is a trading pair.

That means you would buy Ada with your ETH.

So if you were to send Ethereum over to Binance, that means they are in control of your Ethereum.

Whereas on Uniswap you keep your Ethereum in your wallet and your wallet interacts with this decentralized

exchange.

Then you have got Eidos.

Now Eidos is initial dex offering.

That means you are buying a cryptocurrency before it goes on.

Any exchange, whether it's a decentralized exchange or a decentralized exchange, Eidos give you the

best price for a cryptocurrency.

So to give you an example, Astro Swap was recently an IDO, so this allowed you to buy Astro Swap before

it went on an exchange and you were able to buy Astro Swap for a 10th of a cent today.

Astro swap is worth $0.29, so it has 290 XT from its ido price.

So Eidos are getting into cryptocurrencies before they launch on an exchange and the way you do that

is through what's called a launchpad.

So how I got into Astro Swap was through a d-pad.

So what I needed to do was I needed to buy ADA tokens, I needed to stake them on the platform and I

needed to stake a certain amount.

So if I show you the tiers, you need to have 25,000 or 200,000 tokens sent to this platform in order

to be able to buy Astro Swap.

So it's not cheap to get involved.

So if I just go to ADA pad each ADA token is worth $0.80.

So if I put the lowest tier 25,000 times $0.80, that means it costs 20,000 to be able to take part

in Astro Swap.

But once you've bought it, you can take part in every Edo that is launched on a D-pad.

Then you've got Metaverse.

Metaverse refers to the virtual reality world.

Metaverse is currently the hottest type of cryptocurrency, and what you will notice with cryptocurrency

is that the market does go through various trends.

One type of coin is hot one minute and then it's not the next.

And then another type of cryptocurrency is hot.

Defi stands for decentralized finance.

So Uniswap is a type of decentralized finance.

So you don't need a third party to be able to do financial activities.

Then you've got staking.

Staking is the method of locking up your tokens on a particular platform, and that allows the blockchain

of that platform to be secure.

So I previously showed you mining.

Mining as a way of securing a proof of work network like blockchain and staking is a way of protecting

a proof of stake network.

Then you've got yield farming.

Now yield farming is an advanced version of staking.

What it means is you have to buy two tokens of equal value and combine them into a staking pool.

And this will allow you to earn great APIs, which means annual percentage yield.

So if I give you Astro Swap as an example, this is an area where if you stake your cryptocurrencies,

you get a 113.8% APY.

That means if you stake $10,000 worth of Astro swap tokens, then you're going to get an additional

$10,000 worth over the course of the year.

So staking in the yield farming are like a savings account that you would get with a bank, but with

a bank you get rubbish y you will probably get like half a percent or 1%, 3% at maximum, which means

you would get a 3% increase on what you have got in savings.

With DEFI and staking and yield farming, you are able to get 100 to even 1,000%.

So this is why.

Buy has become one of the big areas of cryptocurrency.

Then you've got game fi, which is gaming mixed with Defi.

If you play games, you are able to earn money and if you buy gaming tokens, you can stake them to

be able to earn an annual percentage yield.

Then you've got Nfts.

Nfts stands for Nonfungible token.

So if you think of one Bitcoin and another Bitcoin, they're both exactly the same.

There's nothing different between one Bitcoin and another Bitcoin, but with Nfts there is something

different.

So for instance, this and this, these are tokens.

And as you can see, this has different characteristics to this token.

Now these have individual value.

So when you buy a cryptocurrency to make gains, let's say you buy a cryptocurrency at $0.01 if it goes

to $0.10, you've made a ten x.

What you are looking to do with Nfts is you would be looking to buy it.

Let's say this image here, you would be looking to buy it for eight Ethereum and then sell it for 86

Ethereum.

So that is the price of this image right here is 86 Ethereum or $412,000.

Now you're probably going to be thinking that is a ridiculous amount of money for an image.

Well, the reason why this particular image is so expensive is because this is one of the original nfts

that came out about four years ago.

Therefore, it's got really good appreciative value.

But don't think that you can just buy an NFT and it's going to ten X in value straight away.

You may have to hold it for a while, but that's what an NFT is.

An NFT is a collectible item that is different from other items, but they only exist digitally.

So if you buy this, you can't hang it up on your wall.

So that is the drawbacks of digital collectible assets.

And then you've got meme coins.

Meme coins are a joke type of cryptocurrency.

So you may have heard of Dogecoin because Elon Musk has spoken a lot about Dogecoin.

Now Dogecoin is basically just a dog coin, it's a currency.

So I could send it to you and you can send it to me as a method of payment.

It has value.

It's basically $0.27 per dogecoin.

Now Dogecoin once upon a time, back when I first traded it for years ago, was around about this value

here.

So joke coins do have their utility.

They are the easiest to understand.

When the retail investors come to cryptocurrency, they aren't going to straightaway understand the

technology.

In cryptocurrency, they're not going to understand Ethereum smart contracts, staking proof of work

and all of the technicalities around cryptocurrency.

They just want something simple and a dog face that has no utility and is just a fun coin.

These are very, very popular and that is why the market cap of meme coins is 69 billion, because there

is a lot of value in them and there's a lot of trading activity.

And the other reason why people like meme coins is because of the value of it.

You can buy a million of these coins with a few hundred dollars, whereas with a couple of hundred dollars,

if you buy bitcoin, you are essentially buying a fraction of it like 0.001 of a Bitcoin.

Therefore you feel psychologically like you get a lot for your money when you buy meme coins.

So there we are.

That is a very brief introduction to a lot of the terms you'll come across in cryptocurrency.

This is a bit of a mouthful, but I am sure this is going to really help you understand the rest of

this course.

# **Section 2:** Why Crypto is the Future of Money, Today!

### 4. Why Crypto is the Financial System of the future!

What is the importance of cryptocurrency for 2022 and beyond?

Why should you consider looking at or investing in this new age money system?

Well, because it introduces a trustless system of transacting money otherwise known as decentralization,

i.e. it has no government, Federal Reserve or bank intervention.

The current fiat system of money.

So your US dollars, your UK pounds, your Russian rubles, all of these are controlled by central banks

and governments.

Now, what happened in 1971 was that the US went off of the gold standard now.

Up until that point, the gold standard in theory essentially backed the value of the dollar because

it was something real and substantial.

And over the course of history, people actually used it to transact and exchange goods and services.

But since 1971, the US government decided how much money they could print at any given time.

So there was no real substance backing it before.

And as a result of that, purchasing power has been lost versus supply.

If we have a look at the 1971 cost of living, so essentially the prices before the gold standard was

lost, the average income was $10,600 a year and a new house would cost $25,000 a year.

So a new house was only two and a half times the average income.

Nowadays, what I would say is that the average income is about $30,000 a year and a new house is about

300,000 a year.

So essentially ten X the average income, which means that purchasing power has gone down so dramatically.

So we are now an era of people that cannot afford to buy a house and in some cases will never be able

to afford to go on to the housing market.

And to give you another example of how bad purchasing power has gotten since we lost the gold standard

from 1895 to 1971, the price of a Campbell's tomato soup was $0.10.

Since going off the gold standard, the cost is now $1.

So look at the increase of cost of goods versus income.

Income has only gone up three x and yet the price of A Campbell's Soup has gone up ten x.

The fundamental drawback then is that we have got a central authority we can't trust to protect our

purchasing power.

When Bitcoin was Incepted all the way back in 2009, the whole purpose of it was to solve the Byzantine

general problem, i.e. how do you create a system of trust which relies on consensus being achieved

despite multiple parties?

And that is why we have got the Bitcoin of today, because the blockchain is that system of trust,

looseness and decentralization that enables for me to send you money and for consensus or agreement

that I have sent you that money via the blockchain.

And the blockchain is controlled by a system of computers.

So why do we need a trustless system of money?

Why do we want a money system that doesn't have the government, the Fed or banks?

Well, because of increased purchasing power, let's say for the sake of this argument, this is $50

because dollars is the main world reserve currency.

So this $50 represents all the money in the world.

That means if you are creating a money system where goods and services were priced into the economy,

then it could all be based on this $50.

So let's say the price of oil would be $0.01.

Let's say the cost of food is $0.02.

Let's say the cost of cigarettes is half a cent.

So everything can be priced against the total.

So if the total is $50, then everything can be priced against that.

So everything should be fair in that kind of system.

Well, what happens when the government decides to print another $50?

Well, what happens is, is that the cost of goods goes up double.

So those who run those services, they achieve double.

We cannot trust what the government does when they print money and what they do with that money.

So let's say the extra $50 that they have, just print it out, gets distributed to all their friends

in power.

And us who are the normal person are still left with our $50.

Well, that means they just stole half the money because we are having to pay double for goods and services

by having the same amount of money we had before.

And that is the same situation that we have got with central authorities deciding how money is printed.

So with cryptocurrency you do not have government intervention, which means.

You cannot have your money stolen from you.

That means that the purchasing power of your money gets more and more powerful over time because it

doesn't have that government intervention.

So you just using the example that I gave you where the government printed double the money and everything

went up, double the price, but you didn't get any more money.

You have just had your money stolen from you and that is not a good thing.

So when inflation happens, it actually reduces your purchasing power.

So currently in August 2022, the current inflation rate for the US is roughly 10%.

That means for every $100 they make, they are losing 10% a year.

So essentially they have $90 of real purchasing power and yet the cost of goods go up.

So inflation is not a good thing, particularly for your purchasing power.

So what cryptocurrency does is it creates a mechanism of scarcity where you either have low inflation

using the example of Bitcoin.

So there are 19 million bitcoins in circulation and they will only ever be 21 million bitcoins in circulation.

Now, every four years, bitcoin goes through a halving event, which means that every time a block

is produced in the Bitcoin blockchain, the rewards that go out to miners halves, that means that circulation

halves every four years and it gets slower and slower.

So although Bitcoin has been around for 12 years, 91% of its supply has already been mined and the

other 9% is going to take another 120 years to mine because it's got a very low inflation and it has

got a fixed supply.

So once it comes to the end of that 21 million, no more bitcoins can ever be produced.

That means that demand can overtake supply.

However, with fiat money systems, what we have seen is, is that so much money can be printed that

demand never gets close to supply, and therefore purchasing power keeps on reducing.

Etherium has an uncapped supply, meaning they can print as much as they need to to facilitate the use

of the Ethereum blockchain.

However, given the issuance of new Ethereum going into the world as of September 2022 is going to move

into a deflationary system, meaning that the circulating supply of Ethereum is going to reduce over

time.

So the importance of cryptocurrency is not only does it produce a trustless system where we don't need

a third party to control the money supply, but also the purchasing power of these cryptocurrencies

are supposed to increase.

And that is why Bitcoin and Ethereum are the number one and two cryptocurrencies at present.

### 5. Why the time is Now to get into Cryptocurrencies!

Crypto gives us freedom and full ownership of our money because we self customize it.

A lot of people don't know that banks are insured to $80,000 of your money.

So that means if you've got $100,000 sitting in a bank, then if that bank should close down or go into

insolvency or have problems, you are only insured up to $80,000 of that.

So they keep that $20,000 which they can use to try and recover as a bank.

So you don't really have control of your own money in the banking system and the fiat world as it exists

today.

Also, with the purchasing power reduces, you don't have any control over the purchasing power because

that decision is made by government.

However, with crypto currency you self customize your own coins when you buy them, you hold them in

your own wallet and there are no rules against that wallet.

You don't have to deposit a certain amount into them.

It's your wallet, it's your rules, and it's your coins.

So you have full ownership of this.

Trustless High Purchasing Power Crypto Currency Cryptocurrency is now 13 years old since the inception

of Bitcoin, but is it evolves?

We are seeing greater technologies become decentralized.

So Web3 is the next iteration of the internet.

So where we are now with the Internet is is that we have got centralized entities like Facebook, Twitter,

YouTube, which are run by the respectable companies of the social networks.

But what that means is, is that if they don't like your content, they can ban you.

You are at the mercy of the centralized system that is Facebook, Twitter, etc. But with Web three,

they are looking to create decentralized social media that has maybe some rules that the blockchain

agrees upon for consensus.

So certain types of content can't get on there for safety, but fundamentally you cannot be banned and

you are not under the control of these companies.

And the same is coming for the metaverse.

So the metaverse is basically virtual reality.

So Facebook recently rebranded to being called Metta because they're looking to bring virtual reality

systems to the world, but they are deciding what they look like.

But in the cryptocurrency world, we have what is known as daos or decentralized autonomous organizations,

which are run by people for the people.

So the people decide what comes out, what gets released, what gets produced by the sandbox or decentraland,

which are also cryptocurrencies.

And then that facilitates a world that is run by people for people rather than by banks or governments

for banks and federal governments.

And the same is coming for social media.

Decentralized finance.

So in the current financial world, if you put your savings into a bank account, you may get 0.03%

as an interest.

There's a little reward for giving them your money, which they then use to trade and make more money

for themselves.

You get a tiny little reward for that, but decentralized finance gives you much greater rewards just

for using these decentralized finance protocols which exist today.

And then, of course, nfts, which is a way of owning digital assets on the blockchain.

So the future is very much decentralized and very much digital.

And this is a concept borne out of cryptocurrency and cryptocurrencies facilitating more growth of technology

in these areas.

Last of all, adoption.

So over the course of the last 13 years, there has been some slow adoption relatively.

It's taken up till now until big institutions actually started to adopt cryptocurrency.

So very recently we've had Tesla, BlackRock, PayPal and Jp morgan.

Some of these were entities that actually resisted Bitcoin for many years.

But now what they've decided to do is they've decided to enable for their clients to be able to utilize

cryptocurrency to either use their services or to invest in cryptocurrency via their services.

So in the case of BlackRock, PayPal and Jp morgan, they have they have opened up cryptocurrency so

you can invest in it through them.

So the adoption is now starting.

So therefore, cryptocurrency is only getting more and more important.

Previously it was just decentralized currencies.

Now it's decentralized technology, and it's a system that is growing the more that people get frustrated

with governments working on behalf of themselves.

# **Section 3:** The Best of what I have learned and implemented in Cryptocurrency

### 6. This sites will be your 'Go-to' site in Cryptocurrency!

Welcome to another lecture.

In this lecture, I'm going to be taking you through Coinmarketcap.

This is likely to be your go to website in cryptocurrency.

Why?

Because you are likely to use this website to research cryptocurrencies and find out the prices of cryptocurrencies.

So let me just get you started with what we can see here.

So first of all, you get the vital stats at the top.

You've got 13,877 cryptocurrencies, 429 exchanges.

These are marketplaces where you buy cryptocurrencies.

The market cap is nearly $2.9 trillion.

That is the combined valuation of all 13,000 cryptocurrencies listed on this website.

Then we have got the 24 hour volume in the last 24 hours.

How much money has been traded in cryptocurrency, whether it's buying and selling and then dominance?

Bitcoin has a 43% market share across all cryptocurrencies, so given the market cap is nearly 2.9 trillion

and Bitcoin has $1.25 trillion of that, so virtually 50% and Ethereum 19.4%.

And then you've got the gas price here.

This is how much it would cost to transact with Ethereum at the moment.

Up here you've got some relevant news and then down here we have got highlights.

So here are the trending cryptocurrencies and how they are doing performance wise, the biggest gainers

and the most recently added cryptocurrencies.

And then we come in to the nub of the index.

So this is where you see all cryptocurrencies ranked by market cap.

So market cap is derived from the token price times, the circulating supply, and that gives the valuation

of the company and how all coins are ranked is by market cap, so it's by value.

So what we have as a default is we have 100 cryptocurrencies on the first page.

This is the top 100.

These are what are classed as the top cryptocurrencies to be able to trade.

And whilst by default they are ranked by market cap, you can actually tweak with how things are displayed.

So if you want to see which cryptocurrency has done the best in the last 24 hours, you simply click

24 hours and it will show you what has had the best rises.

If you want to see what's done the worst, then you click it again and it will show you the worst performances.

And you can do the same for seven days as well.

If you want to see beyond the top 100, what you've got to do is you've got to scroll down and you have

got to click on one of these pages and it will take you to much lower market cap coins.

The biggest cap of cryptocurrency is large caps.

Obviously Bitcoin is the number one, but large caps are considered the blue chip cryptocurrencies and

large caps are worth 10 billion or more.

So from this list, anything above vechain and mid cap is between 250,000,010 billion.

Low cap is 50,000,250 million and micro cap is anything under 50 million when you go into an individual

cryptocurrency.

So I'm going to give you Solana.

It opens up a page for them where there's more information.

So what we have got here is we've got the ranking and then we have got where we can do the research.

So we've got Salon.com.

This will open up the website.

We've got the Explorer.

This is to see how the blockchain is performing.

Then you've got the community so you can join their medium blog, their Twitter page, their Reddit

forum, and their Solana forum.

And then you've got the chats.

These are the official places where members go to chat, so they've got a discord group and a telegram

group.

Then you've got the source code.

If you are wanting to actually check the quality of the code and make sure that it is legitimate, and

then you've got the white paper.

The White Paper sets out the original vision of the project.

These tags will show what categories the Solana appear in.

So proof of stake.

That means it's a staking platform.

It's a platform that means it's an infrastructure so people can create cryptocurrencies from it like

they could.

Etherium So it's a building cryptocurrency.

It's obviously in the Solana ecosystem.

We move across, we've got the individual token price.

Now, this is what you trade ultimately, and you are wanting multipliers on this price.

The lowest prices achieved in the last 24 hours and the highest price.

And here we have got the Bitcoin price and the Ethereum price.

So that is if you're buying on an exchange, whether the Bitcoin or Ethereum.

So then we've got the market cap, the fully diluted market cap fully diluted means the total supply

times, the current price.

But we go on circulating supply because that information is real.

Time and it's accurate.

Then after we've gone through that, we come to another tab here.

First of all, we have overview.

So overview allows you to see how the asset has performed over time.

So you got one day, seven days, one month, three months, one year and year to date and all time.

Then you can look at where do you buy it?

That's what you see on market.

So with market you can see all of the exchanges where you can buy it.

So on Binance dot com, Coinbase, these are the two exchanges that retail investors loved the most.

Because these have Fiat on ramps.

That means you can buy cryptos with Fiat using these two exchanges and then you've got a multitude of

other exchanges.

That is what contributes to its extremely high liquidity.

So the liquidity equals volume, so nearly $3 billion worth of liquidity, and that's because it's available

on so many exchanges.

Then we got historical data.

This shows you the volume of previous days, the open prices and the high prices.

Then you've got project information.

So this gives you some information on their socials.

You've got the various wallets that you can hold Solana in, you've got news impacting Solana, you've

got more social media updates, you've got ratings.

If they are given analysis and price estimates down on the right hand side here, we can see information

about its price history.

So if we wanted to see the all time high of Solana's price, then we can see that it's $260.

So we are not far off of that shortcut.

A lot of your research by putting what is Solana about, etc. in this area underneath the graph you

can see recently added cryptocurrencies price estimates legal tender countries where in the world is

cryptocurrency used as legal tender and we can have a look at global charts.

This will allow us to see how the market cap, which is the overall market cap here, has performed

for cryptocurrency over the course of time.

So you can see the total market cap, total market cap excluding Bitcoin and you can see how dominance

has changed over the course of time.

I'm back here, you can see the gainers and losers.

This will allow you to see what has gained the most in the last 24 hours and what has lost the most.

And you can change this to one hour time frames and seeing what's going up right now.

So if you were wanting to see, right.

What is something that's really hot right now, what's trending?

You may be able to get into something on its ascendancy up.

If you're looking in the one hour time frame, you can look at seven days and you can look at 30 days

as well.

You can look at historical snapshots so you can see what cryptocurrencies look like on a particular

date.

So if we actually go back to March, when I first joined cryptocurrency, you can see Bitcoin all the

way back then was 1200, Ethereum was $19.

Unbelievable stuff.

You can look at the exchanges, what are the best performing exchanges?

So as you can see, Binance and Coinbase are the best.

So you've got spot exchanges.

This is where you buy based on its current price derivatives.

This tends to be futures based dexs.

These are decentralized exchanges and then lending.

So this is where you can actually lend and borrow cryptocurrency from these exchanges.

Then you've got NFT statistics.

This will show you the most popular NFT collections.

There's a calendar here that shows you when certain events are happening in cryptocurrency, knowing

that they have added very recently, which I really like, is subcategories.

So what you have got as default a general cryptocurrencies ranked by their market cap.

However, if you wanted to look at the rankings of cryptocurrencies in certain categories, you can

do that here.

So you have got decentralized finance cryptocurrencies.

This will show you the market cap of this segment of cryptocurrency and the trading volume.

You can have a look at nfts and Nfts and gaming are actually quite close knit Polkadot projects, Binance,

Smart Chain, Solana and Avalanche.

These are the top blockchains at the moment, and a lot of projects are starting to launch via these

blockchains.

You want to see what cryptocurrencies are trending right now.

You click in the search and it will show you the current trending cryptocurrencies.

The reason why you'd want to know what is trending right now is to understand what is the appetite for

right now?

Where is the big money going?

What it looks like is that these cryptocurrencies are basically meme coins, so it just goes to show

you where the interest is lying right now.

If for whatever reason you can't find market cap data.

So there is no market cap here for divergence.

Then you can use another website called coingecko.

Coingecko is pretty much exactly the same as Coinmarketcap, but it sometimes fills the gaps left by

coin market cap.

So if we have a look at divergence protocol here, we can see it's a $12 million market cap meme coin.

These are very, very popular in cryptocurrency.

Now, if I just try and have a look for Pulse Shiba, that's not there.

If I have a look for it on Coinmarketcap, it is not there.

But if I go to nomics, nomics seems to be a very good place to find new cryptocurrencies and meme coins.

So if I put Paul Shiba in here then Paul Shiba will come up and I will be able to look at various bits

of information regarding Shiba.

Think of Coinmarketcap and Coingecko as being like the blue chip of indexes and nomics is trying to

get to that level.

So that's why you can find that information there.

Another area to look for, cryptocurrency price information, is Dex Tools.

Now, Dex Tools provides you with another place to do analysis.

And the great thing about Dex Tools is that they show you how new coins and meme coins are doing.

So Coinmarketcap is likely to be the place where you are going to look for price information and do

your research.

But you've got additional areas where you can find price information to.

### 7. How to buy Cryptocurrencies right now!

How do you get started and buy cryptocurrencies?

After this lecture, you're going to be fully versed on how to obtain cryptocurrencies to invest in,

to trade or to sell.

The first thing I'm going to take you through is exchange types.

You have got two main types of exchange and cryptocurrency.

One is spot and the other one is Dex.

And the difference is the custody.

With a spot exchange, they hold your tokens and with a decentralized exchange, you hold your tokens.

So if we go back to Coinmarketcap, we can have a look at exchanges.

Now, exchanges are where you buy cryptocurrencies.

It's basically the marketplace for cryptocurrencies.

And if we hover over exchanges, you can see that there are three main types.

There is the spot exchange spot essentially means you are buying cryptocurrencies at its current price.

Derivatives is different.

This is buying a cryptocurrency based on its future price.

So with derivatives you normally go either long or short on a cryptocurrency.

Long means you are betting on the price going up at a future date, and short means you are betting

on the price going down a future day.

We're not going to be touching that in this course.

And then we have got dexs.

These are the decentralized exchanges that all you need to do is hold your cryptocurrency in a wallet

on your web browser, and you can buy and sell directly from this wallet.

So we go into spot exchanges.

This gives you an index of all the exchanges where you can buy cryptocurrencies at current market price

and you can see that they are ranked by their score.

So this exchange score is arrived at by looking at the following data web traffic and volume.

So essentially what this means is that Binance that has scored 9.9 has got a hell of a lot of traffic,

the most traffic of all exchanges, and it's got the most liquidity.

That means there are people constantly buying and selling on there, which means if you are looking

to get the current price, you can get it instantly with Binance.

And if you're looking to sell at the current price, you can get it instantly with Binance.

So now I've taken you through the exchange types.

I'm going to take you through Fiat gateways.

Now a Fiat gateway is how do you convert your normal fiat money into cryptocurrency?

And the main exchanges that do this are Coinbase, Binance, Kraken and Q Coin.

So if I take you to Binance right now, this is one of the most popular websites to buy cryptocurrency

with your normal money.

Now, if we have a look at these spot exchanges, you can see if your Fiat is supported on this list.

So we can see that Binance supports 46 different Fiat.

So if we go back into Binance and we go to buy crypto and then we go to credit debit card, this is

to buy crypto with your card.

There's also another way, which is card deposit.

So let's say you don't have an idea of what you want to buy, but you want to put some money on this

exchange just in case you hear about a coin and you want to be able to buy it instantly.

You can deposit some money here.

Now, if you want to select which type of fiat currency, you go up to the top, right?

You simply type in the currency that you want to use so you can use USD great British pounds, Australian

dollars.

So I'm going to use because this is my country, I'm going to use great British pounds and I'm going

to show you how to buy with credit or debit card.

So once you go to buy with credit or debit card, you are given the following options.

So here is where you decide how much do you want to spend?

And here is where you decide which cryptocurrency do you want to buy?

And this is only if you have an idea of what you want to buy.

So let's say you want to buy ADA.

Then what you would put here is I want to spend £500 on ADA and from that I will receive 389 ADA tokens.

And the reason why is because ADA is worth £1.28.

So there we are.

So that would be how you buy it.

Now, assuming that you have it, then what you can do is you can also sell and that is where you can

convert your cryptocurrency back into great British pounds and therefore send it back to your bank.

So this is an example of a Fiat exchange.

Another one, which is the one I have always used, is Coinbase.

You sign up on this website and then you input your card details.

Once you have done that, you have got the ability to be able to buy.

So what you do is you go to trade and then buy over here.

So then what you can do is you obviously have options of a fixed amount or a custom amount and then

you can decide which cryptocurrency you want to buy.

Now, both Binance and Coinbase only have a certain amount of cryptocurrencies, so as you can see,

there are 14.

I was in 713 different cryptocurrencies.

And yet if you go to Coinbase, there are literally around about 100 cryptocurrencies.

Now, Binance has a lot more because Binance is an actual exchange, whereas Coinbase is more a Fiat

gateway.

So let's say you want to buy some Solana.

Very, very simple.

You simply put how much you want to buy, and you can decide whether you want to buy it or not.

And it will give you a fee.

That fee is typically 1.82 and a half percent.

So that is a fiat gateway.

That is how you convert your normal money into cryptocurrency.

If you go on most exchanges, which I'm going to cover next, you can only buy with other cryptocurrencies.

So you need a Fiat Gateway first in order to be able to convert your normal money into crypto currency.

Then we have got centralized exchanges and this includes again Coinbase, Binance, and there's another

two gate and FTX X FTX mainly serves the Solana blockchain.

So if you are looking to buy Solana based assets, you are able to buy them on FTX typically before

you're able to buy them on Coinbase, Binance or Gate.

So a centralized exchange is a third party website.

That means if you buy crypto here, you will typically store it in the native wallet that they have

got on the website.

And very similar with Coinbase.

If you buy it on Coinbase, it is stored in your assets folder and it basically means they are custodians

of your cryptocurrency.

So let me just show you what the exchange interface looks like.

I've taken you through how to buy cryptocurrencies with Fiat.

Now we are going to operate on an assumption that you are going to buy cryptocurrencies with other cryptocurrencies.

So what you have got at the top, like with Coinmarketcap, is you've got some highlights.

What is the biggest gainer on Binance, The Biggest Loser?

What has got the top volume and what is the coin they are highlighting in particular?

Now, if you go further down, you have got all of the different spot markets.

So these are all the cryptocurrencies you can buy with be USD.

So you've got Ethereum, Bitcoin, Sandbox, Decentraland, Shiba, etc. These are what you can buy

with tether.

This is what you can buy with BnB, this is what you can buy with Bitcoin.

So if you bought Bitcoin either on Binance or on Coinbase, send it over to Binance to be able to trade.

You can use your Bitcoin to buy all of these different currencies, then you've just got alt crypto

currencies.

This is various so bnb for ETHE, btt for x.

So this is what you would typically use to just search a cryptocurrency.

So let's say you want to buy Solana.

So what it's showing you here is you can buy Solana with Etherium.

Fiat, this is what I've taken you through already.

So what you can do the direct buying of cryptos with fiat.

And as you can see, you've got Solana and GBP here.

And this is if you have gone to buy crypto card deposit and then you can use that GBP to buy this Solana

with I have got on this website I have actually got some ADA.

So if I just go and show you how that would look when you are looking to buy a cryptocurrency, this

is exactly how it looks.

There is so much and I know this could probably confuse you.

So what you've got at the top is firstly, what is the ADA price and what you've got up here?

These are all these sell orders.

Give you an example here.

Somebody or a group of people are trying to sell ADA at $1.69 for.

All right.

So that is $112,000 worth of ADA at that price level.

All right.

And so what you've got here is you have got basically the price either eating up the sells or eating

up the buys.

And what you've got in the center is the chart.

So this chart shows you the price action of ADA over the course of the last 24 hours.

You can also do the last 4 hours, last one hour, last 15 minutes, last week, etc..

Now, with this, you can actually do some technical analysis, but I won't show you that right now.

And then what you've got down here is the buying and selling interface.

So as you can see, I've got $692 right here and I've got 230,000 ADA.

So if I want to sell my ADA, then I could literally just sell 100% and that will give me 391,000 USD.

If I wanted to sell my ADA, if I wanted to buy ADA with the usdc that I have got in here right now,

then I could do so.

So I can either put in a certain amount or I could just use this bar along the bottom.

So just for the sake of argument, I'm going to use the bar.

Let's say I want to buy 100 and ADA.

That would cost me $173.

I would buy Ada and then that would go into the open orders.

Then once it hits.

1.70 right here.

Then it will buy up the ADA for me.

So what I'm showing you IO is because Ada IO is actually where you can buy most new cryptocurrencies

on Binance and Coinbase.

The reason these two are the most used exchanges is because they are the most reputable.

That means they will only list high quality.

However, newer cryptocurrencies will not get on Binance or Coinbase.

If you want to get your hands on newer cryptocurrencies, you will find most of them are actually available

on Gateway.

IO IO is one of the few centralized exchanges that takes on new coins, whereas Binance and Coinbase

have more of a reputation to uphold.

If they list one rubbish coin, it can ruin their reputation and then a type of exchange that has only

recently become popular.

Decentralized exchanges.

Now, decentralized exchanges means you hold your cryptocurrency in a wallet on your web browser.

That means you are the custodian of it.

And then what you do is you go to the decentralized exchange and you interact with the website, but

you still are the custodian of your money.

And the different decentralized exchanges out there are uniswap and uniswap are for Ethereum based cryptocurrencies

Pancakeswap, which is for Binance, smart chain based cryptocurrencies and radium, which is for Solana

based cryptocurrencies.

So this is Uniswap.

So Uniswap, as I said, is for Ethereum based assets.

So just to give you an example, there is a cryptocurrency called Valhalla.

Now Valhalla was created as a Binance Smart Chain Cryptocurrency, and you can see that by the contract

address.

This means that how this cryptocurrency was created was via Binance Smart Chains Minting Process.

So this cryptocurrency is only available on Binance.

Smart Chain is also available on another blockchain called Vallis.

So you would not be able to trade this cryptocurrency on Uniswap because Uniswap is only for Ethereum

based assets.

So if I give you another example, convergence.

Convergence is a Ethereum based asset and you can see that under contracts.

So it will say Ethereum, this is where it was created.

So you can invest in convergence via Uniswap.

So let me just show you how you do that.

So what you would need to do, first of all, is you would need to get metamask.

So what you do is you download Metamask, you can download it to your phone and or to your web browser.

Now I have both, right?

And now you have to download it as a Chrome extension.

And that means that it sits up here waiting to connect with a website it can connect to.

So in this case, uniswap.

So what you'll need to do is you will need to buy cryptocurrencies with your fiat on an exchange like

Coinbase.

And what you would do is you would buy Etherium and then you would send that Etherium over to your metamask

because when you create a Metamask wallet, you will have nothing in it.

So what you need to do, first of all, is you're going to need to buy Ethereum on Coinbase and you

are then going to need to send it.

And how you do that is via pay.

And then it will have this sandbox here and this sandbox allows you to put in your metamask address.

So when you create your Metamask wallet, it's going to give you an address right here.

This is your public key, so you copy it and you would put it here.

So just to use it as an example, you put Ethereum there, you would put your wallet there, you would

have to have already bought it in order to send it.

I haven't actually got any Ethereum on Coinbase, so I can't show you that.

But you would buy it.

You would go to pay send and then you would put your metamask address in this to field here.

And then once you send it over, it may take 15 minutes, but then you will get Ethereum into your wallet.

And then once you've got Ethereum in your wallet, you go back to Uniswap and now you can trade on decentralized

exchanges.

So let's assume I wanted to buy convergence, which is what I just showed you here.

What I would do is I would copy the address here.

So this allows you to go to the source of the cryptocurrency.

So if you copy address and then you go back to Uniswap, you go to select a token.

It will say search name or paste address.

You could type in convergence.

This is convergence via coingecko.

You could probably trust that, but to make sure you are putting in the correct one, I always copy

the address from Coinmarketcap.

I import it and now I could use my Etherium to buy conversions.

I've got 0.33 Ethereum.

Yes, that's true.

I just want to buy 0.1 of an Ethereum in convergence.

So that would be $429 and that would allow me to get 14,000 tokens.

And then all I do is press swap and then the transaction will go through and I will own convergence.

Now let me take you to Pancakeswap.

So again, you need to connect your wallet.

So Metamask all you need to do is you'll need to set up Binance Smart Chain on your Metamask wallet.

So Metamask is not just an Ethereum wallet.

Metamask allows you to create multiple networks on this wallet so you can buy cryptocurrencies amongst

various different blockchains, but you have to set it up first.

So I'm just going to show you quickly I'm going to change it to Binance, Smart Chain.

And this is going to show you how much Binance coin I have, which is 1.09 of a Binance coin.

So what I would do is I would connect my wallet and it's the exact same process as with Uniswap.

So if I wanted to buy Valhalla, I would copy the Binance Smart Chain address.

I would go back to Pancakeswap, I would go here and it will say search name or paste address.

I would do that and there we are.

It will have ska or Valhalla there, and then you just import it and then you can buy it.

Obviously I've got BnB, so what I would do is I would use my BNB, so let's assume I want to buy 0.5

of a BnB in Valhalla.

I would be able to get 4565 tokens and then it will say, here, buy, and then that will allow you

to have it.

And once you have it, it will then be in your wallet.

But what you'll need to do is you will need to import the tokens because they won't just show up.

You need to then put the token address and then add custom token and then your balance of what you've

just bought in Valhalla tokens will appear in your metamask, so you've got to do that manually each

time.

And radium is very similar to Uniswap and Pancakeswap.

Radium is a decentralized exchange for Solana based tokens.

And then the last type of place where you can buy cryptocurrency is on online payment services such

as PayPal or Revolut.

So I'm in my PayPal account now.

Now this is not available in every country.

Neither is Revolut, but if it is available in your country, this is another way in which you can buy

and invest in cryptocurrencies.

Now on PayPal, you've only got four cryptocurrencies you can buy.

Now if you wanted to buy either Bitcoin, Ethereum, Bitcoin, Cash or Litecoin, you can do so safely

here.

You will buy it and then you will store it in your wallet, just like you store your normal fiat money.

And this is mainly from a trust point of view.

If you use PayPal, then this will be much easier for you.

The other benefit of PayPal is obviously they are well known online banking or payment services company.

So if you have any problems, you can always go to PayPal.

So there we are.

That was your guide on how to buy cryptocurrencies.

I hope that it is taught you exactly how accessible it is and you don't need a broker.

You can just do it yourself and you can do it instantly.

8. The Harsh Reality of Cryptocurrency, but how to win in the end!

In order to learn the best about cryptocurrency, you have to know the worst about cryptocurrency.

And this is where I present you with the hard truth.

Now, if cryptocurrency was making money for everybody, then they would be telling their friends and

their friends would be telling their friends and everybody would be getting into cryptocurrency.

But a lot of people have gotten into it and gotten burned by it.

And I'm going to tell you exactly why, so that you are aware of the pitfalls and how to avoid being

burned.

Most coins value and there are 7000 coins out there.

Most of their value is speculative.

That means it's not backed by anything substantial.

It's not backed by evidence.

That is going to be the next big thing.

A lot of cryptocurrencies are created on a promise, on a promise to solve a problem that brings the

mass market into cryptocurrency, understanding digital currency, and transacting in it on a day to

day basis.

So people are essentially gambling.

They are looking to find or predict the next big thing and therefore it's speculative Bitcoin even even

though it's worth today $10,700, a lot of that is based on its speculative value.

It's the number one cryptocurrency.

It's got the brand name.

It has built a reputation over time, and therefore the speculation is high and therefore it's the number

one cryptocurrency.

But even though people, millions of people may be transacting Bitcoin on a day to day basis doesn't

necessarily mean that it's not still speculative.

So really, most cryptocurrencies are not backed by any evidence of anything substantial or game changing,

but it's based on the promise of it.

And the most people speculate on the promise of it being great.

The more the value goes up, as soon as people lose that belief, the value goes down.

So most coins value is speculative.

Most people get wrecked in a bear market.

You're going to understand a little bit more about bear and bull markets.

But essentially, a bear market means when the market is down, when all prices of cryptocurrencies

basically go down.

Now, a great example of this is Voyager.

This coin was previously called Ethos.

Now I invested in Ethos all the way back in July 2017.

I bought it at $0.05.

It went up from $0.05 all the way to over $11.

So if we have a look at the price here, we can see that the price hit over $11.

In fact, on some exchanges, it hit $13 now from $0.05 to $11.

Essentially, people became millionaires pretty much over the space of a few months.

If you invested $10,000 into Ethos when it was $0.05, then you would have had 3.5 million by January

2018.

And then what happened after January 2018?

Essentially all crypto currencies went down and Ethos was one of those cryptocurrencies that if you

hadn't sold it at the top and hung onto it, essentially now that 10,000 would be 20,000.

So if people didn't sell at the top, essentially they have lost pretty much 90% of all of those profits.

So in a bear market and a bear market can last for two years, people get REKT and lose most of their

money.

Cryptos can crash suddenly and for no obvious reason.

One day your cryptocurrency that you've invested in at $0.05 is $0.20.

You have made a four ex investment, and you can be thinking, Wow, I've made loads of money.

This coin is going to keep going up because it's doing really well so far.

And then the next day is $0.10 and it's lost half of that value and you're like, Why?

Why does that happen?

It can crash suddenly and for no obvious reason.

Most cryptocurrencies follow Bitcoin.

If Bitcoin goes down and there are normally reasons known at a higher level that Bitcoin has gone down,

then all cryptos go down.

Bitcoin equals health.

If Bitcoin's doing well, most cryptocurrencies also do well.

There are anomalies.

Not everything does well.

Just because bitcoin is doing well, it has to do well because it's a project of substance.

But you know, most coins follow bitcoin and if bitcoin crashes, everything crashes and you can be

left in despair.

The market is ruled by greed and fear.

These are the most prevalent emotions in cryptocurrency.

When people are greedy, prices go up.

People tend to get greedy in bull market.

Bull markets are when the prices are consistently going up of cryptocurrencies and people get greedy,

people don't think they can lose.

And as a result, prices go up.

Now, when the market goes down, suddenly they are ruled by fear.

So what was greed turns into fear.

They are worried that what they what profits they have made is going to become losses.

And so they sell, therefore they make a loss.

And so the coin plummets based on the price going down and people seeing their profits dwindling, the

price goes down even more.

It's almost like a snowball.

Greed causes a snowball up and fear causes a snowball down.

And you can be the casualty of that if you don't sell at the right time or buy at the right time.

Most people buy and sell low in the stock market.

The motto is buy low, sell high.

But most people are too scared.

And the thing is, is that in cryptocurrency, you can buy a cryptocurrency right now.

You don't have to go through a broker.

Now, a broker will traditionally advise you.

They will say, oh, this could go up because of X reason and they could persuade you not to sell,

but because you can directly sell your cryptocurrencies.

Not having to go through somebody who can give you a bit of a reality check, then the prices can just

suddenly tank and therefore people think, Well, you know what, I'd rather have a little bit of money

than lose it all.

So they will sell.

So even though they won't be selling a profit, they'll be selling before they lose it all.

And so people tend to buy and sell low.

And you may be one of those people in the course of your cryptocurrency lifetime.

I certainly have been to I have bought and I have sold lower than I have bought for.

But what I will tell you is this the most important thing is that you win more than you lose.

And one very good win.

Can make all the losses pale into insignificance.

### 8. The Harsh Reality of Cryptocurrency, but how to win in the end!

In order to learn the best about cryptocurrency, you have to know the worst about cryptocurrency.

And this is where I present you with the hard truth.

Now, if cryptocurrency was making money for everybody, then they would be telling their friends and

their friends would be telling their friends and everybody would be getting into cryptocurrency.

But a lot of people have gotten into it and gotten burned by it.

And I'm going to tell you exactly why, so that you are aware of the pitfalls and how to avoid being

burned.

Most coins value and there are 7000 coins out there.

Most of their value is speculative.

That means it's not backed by anything substantial.

It's not backed by evidence.

That is going to be the next big thing.

A lot of cryptocurrencies are created on a promise, on a promise to solve a problem that brings the

mass market into cryptocurrency, understanding digital currency, and transacting in it on a day to

day basis.

So people are essentially gambling.

They are looking to find or predict the next big thing and therefore it's speculative Bitcoin even even

though it's worth today $10,700, a lot of that is based on its speculative value.

It's the number one cryptocurrency.

It's got the brand name.

It has built a reputation over time, and therefore the speculation is high and therefore it's the number

one cryptocurrency.

But even though people, millions of people may be transacting Bitcoin on a day to day basis doesn't

necessarily mean that it's not still speculative.

So really, most cryptocurrencies are not backed by any evidence of anything substantial or game changing,

but it's based on the promise of it.

And the most people speculate on the promise of it being great.

The more the value goes up, as soon as people lose that belief, the value goes down.

So most coins value is speculative.

Most people get wrecked in a bear market.

You're going to understand a little bit more about bear and bull markets.

But essentially, a bear market means when the market is down, when all prices of cryptocurrencies

basically go down.

Now, a great example of this is Voyager.

This coin was previously called Ethos.

Now I invested in Ethos all the way back in July 2017.

I bought it at $0.05.

It went up from $0.05 all the way to over $11.

So if we have a look at the price here, we can see that the price hit over $11.

In fact, on some exchanges, it hit $13 now from $0.05 to $11.

Essentially, people became millionaires pretty much over the space of a few months.

If you invested $10,000 into Ethos when it was $0.05, then you would have had 3.5 million by January

2018.

And then what happened after January 2018?

Essentially all crypto currencies went down and Ethos was one of those cryptocurrencies that if you

hadn't sold it at the top and hung onto it, essentially now that 10,000 would be 20,000.

So if people didn't sell at the top, essentially they have lost pretty much 90% of all of those profits.

So in a bear market and a bear market can last for two years, people get REKT and lose most of their

money.

Cryptos can crash suddenly and for no obvious reason.

One day your cryptocurrency that you've invested in at $0.05 is $0.20.

You have made a four ex investment, and you can be thinking, Wow, I've made loads of money.

This coin is going to keep going up because it's doing really well so far.

And then the next day is $0.10 and it's lost half of that value and you're like, Why?

Why does that happen?

It can crash suddenly and for no obvious reason.

Most cryptocurrencies follow Bitcoin.

If Bitcoin goes down and there are normally reasons known at a higher level that Bitcoin has gone down,

then all cryptos go down.

Bitcoin equals health.

If Bitcoin's doing well, most cryptocurrencies also do well.

There are anomalies.

Not everything does well.

Just because bitcoin is doing well, it has to do well because it's a project of substance.

But you know, most coins follow bitcoin and if bitcoin crashes, everything crashes and you can be

left in despair.

The market is ruled by greed and fear.

These are the most prevalent emotions in cryptocurrency.

When people are greedy, prices go up.

People tend to get greedy in bull market.

Bull markets are when the prices are consistently going up of cryptocurrencies and people get greedy,

people don't think they can lose.

And as a result, prices go up.

Now, when the market goes down, suddenly they are ruled by fear.

So what was greed turns into fear.

They are worried that what they what profits they have made is going to become losses.

And so they sell, therefore they make a loss.

And so the coin plummets based on the price going down and people seeing their profits dwindling, the

price goes down even more.

It's almost like a snowball.

Greed causes a snowball up and fear causes a snowball down.

And you can be the casualty of that if you don't sell at the right time or buy at the right time.

Most people buy and sell low in the stock market.

The motto is buy low, sell high.

But most people are too scared.

And the thing is, is that in cryptocurrency, you can buy a cryptocurrency right now.

You don't have to go through a broker.

Now, a broker will traditionally advise you.

They will say, oh, this could go up because of X reason and they could persuade you not to sell,

but because you can directly sell your cryptocurrencies.

Not having to go through somebody who can give you a bit of a reality check, then the prices can just

suddenly tank and therefore people think, Well, you know what, I'd rather have a little bit of money

than lose it all.

So they will sell.

So even though they won't be selling a profit, they'll be selling before they lose it all.

And so people tend to buy and sell low.

And you may be one of those people in the course of your cryptocurrency lifetime.

I certainly have been to I have bought and I have sold lower than I have bought for.

But what I will tell you is this the most important thing is that you win more than you lose.

And one very good win.

Can make all the losses pale into insignificance.

### 9. Cryptocurrency is ALL about this!

In my opinion, only one thing matters in cryptocurrency, and that is multipliers.

Everything in this course is designed to make you multipliers.

How can you make sure that you get multiple returns on your investment?

So let me demonstrate to you exactly what I mean.

So multipliers means that when the coin price multiplies in value, that means your investment multiplies

in value equally.

So if you were to buy a coin, let's say A, B, C coin, it's not a real coin.

A B.C. coin at $0.01 and you buy $1,000 worth.

Therefore, 100,000 coins.

Then if it goes to $0.05, that means you have five x your money.

You have multiplied your money by five, so therefore your investment equals $5,000.

Now, my personal strategy is to make 100 X multipliers.

This is what I have done numerous times in cryptocurrency.

And essentially what this means is it will turn either $1,000 into 100,000 or $10,000 into $1 million.

And once you have made that 100 X, you sell.

So therefore, if I'm to use this example for my own personal strategy, if I bought a B, C coin at

$0.01, then I would sell it at $1, therefore making it a 100 x.

So how can we apply it to real world cryptocurrency?

So at the present time, bitcoin is worth $43.9 thousand.

For this to to x in price, this would need to go to $87,000.

And for this to go to 87,000, the market cap would need to double to.

So essentially there would need to be $1.7 trillion invested in Bitcoin.

Now, at the present time, there is $830 billion invested.

So the difficulty of getting from 830 billion to 1.7 trillion is quite difficult.

However, bitcoin is the number one cryptocurrency.

It is the cryptocurrency pretty much everybody has heard about.

So therefore if anything is likely to to x, it is likely to be bitcoin because this is the one that

has stood the test of time, whereas others have not necessarily so.

This would need to double in market cap for this, to double in price for bitcoin to make a ten x multiplier,

this would have to go to $430,000 to make a ten x multiplier.

Now that is difficult because that would involve having an 8.3 trillion market cap.

Now, given that the market cap of the entire market, that is every cryptocurrency put together is

1.9 trillion.

Essentially Bitcoin would have to fall x that in order to be a ten x cryptocurrency therefore multiplies

a harder to make the higher up in value you already are, the higher in value you are, the harder it

is to make multipliers.

Therefore, I invest in cryptocurrencies that are extremely low in value.

It's actually much easier for a coin that is worth $10 million today to go to $20 million than it is

for Bitcoin to go from $8.3 billion to $1.6 trillion.

Therefore, I tend to go for lower cap coins.

I invest in cryptocurrencies early stage.

You will very rarely see me investing in a cryptocurrency that has already made the money.

All of these cryptocurrencies that you see in the top 100 right now have already made the money for

early investors.

So for instance, I was one of the earliest investors in Matic.

I invested in Matic when it was a quarter of a cent, now it is worth $1.

Now you can still make the money, however, it's just more difficult.

So for instance, Matic is now worth $7.7 billion.

This would have to be worth $15 Billion for this to to X, it would have to be worth $21 billion for

this to three x, whereas it's much easier for.

For a strong low cap coin like Saito to go to $30 million.

So therefore, I personally like to invest in earlier stage cryptocurrencies because the ones that have

already matured have made them money for early investors.

So for instance, Bitcoin, Ethereum, you know, Bitcoin people got in into this at sense.

Etherium People got into this at about $0.50 about five years ago, and Solana, for instance, was

worth $1.50 a year ago.

So the money has already been made for earlier investors in these.

So what I look for is I look for the next potential high cap coin.

So anything above 10 billion market cap is actually a large cap.

So what I look for is I look to identify what are the smaller cryptocurrencies that have the potential

to go into large cap or even mid cap status later on in their journey.

Now, the lower the value of the coin, the higher the risk you take investing in it, because the lower

the value actually, the greater the risk because these coins have not yet been around a long time.

We don't know if they are going to die in the next two months, six months, one year.

So you carry a risk investing at a low price, whereas you carry less of a risk if you invest in one

of the higher cap cryptocurrencies because they've been around longer and they are universally accepted

to be safer cryptocurrencies and there is lots of money and liquidity, basically volume, a lot of

money being pumped into it.

Look, 19 billion worth of trade volume in Ethereum.

So that shows you that there's a lot of money going into it, so therefore it is less risk, whereas

something in the lower range.

So for instance, Saito is half a million and verbal is just over 100,000.

And this one here CW Vechain 12,000.

When you are not getting the volume, you're not going to increase necessarily in value.

So therefore it's greater risk buying.

The lower value is, but it's the greater reward.

So let me show you now.

My top ever multiply is made in cryptocurrency so that you know it can be done.

So I am going to be showing you here the buy price, what I bought at the all time high, the highest

value ever achieved.

For that token, what was the multiplier based on achieving that high?

And if you invested $1,000, what would that be based on the all time high?

So in reverse order BitMEX.

BitMEX I invested in at $0.01 its all time high was $3.26 and therefore its multiplier was 326 x.

So therefore if you invested $1,000, this would have been at the high literally a couple of months

ago, $326,000

definable.

I invested in this at $0.03.

It hit a high of nearly $12.

This was 398 x, nearly 400 x and therefore nearly 400 K.

Then number three Tron had this.

I bought 4.1 of a cent and this did go to $0.42, which makes it 420 X and therefore $1,000 would have

turned into $420,000 then BNP, otherwise known as Binance Coin.

This is the coin of the Binance Exchange, which actually now is the number one exchange.

But back in the day that I bought it at $0.72 back in October 2017, this was a small cap cryptocurrency

and this ended up going to $690 a couple of months ago, which would have made it a 958 x.

So $1,000 could have been nearly $1,000,000.

And then my best ever, which is the one I just took you through Matic now called Polygon, this I bought

for a quarter of a cent three years ago and at the all time high a couple of months ago, this went

to $2.68, therefore a multiplier of over a thousand x, so $1,000 became $1.03 million.

So this shows you exactly what can be achieved.

Now, there are multiple stories like this.

These are just my personal bests.

These are ones that I invested in.

But there are many, many examples.

Of huge multipliers made in cryptocurrency.

Now, some of these multipliers can be made almost instantly.

So, for instance, Rafinha and Tron had hit their all time highs literally hours after they hit the

exchange, whereas BitMEX and Matic, they took 2 to 3 years to actually realize their profits.

However, my personal strategy, regardless of time, is to make a 100 X for every investment I make.

So that shows you what can be achieved.

But yours doesn't have to be as ambitious.

You could be looking to make a5x, a ten x, a 20 x, maybe even a 50 x that maximum I go for 100 x

because I've got a lot of patience and I'm happy to take the risk.

You only have to have one big winner and that cancels out your losses.

So, for instance, if you had $5,000 and you invested in Matic and then four coins that failed, then

that $1,000 that then turned into a million will cancel out the 4000 that you've lost.

Investing in Failure Cryptocurrencies.

So that shows you the potential of cryptocurrency and really what it's all about, and that is multipliers.

Hope you enjoyed this and I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 10. What drives the price of Bitcoin & Altcoins - use this to your advantage!

At the end of the day, as an investor or a trader, what you're interested in is making a return on

your investment.

You want the cryptocurrency you invest in or trade to go up so that you can sell for a profit ultimately,

and you can make life changing wealth.

But what affects price?

What makes prices go up and down?

Cryptocurrency is known for its volatility.

As I have said to you already, I am 600,000% up on my initial investment where if I put my same initial

investment into the stock market, probably be about 30% up.

So cryptocurrency can be so hugely rewarding as an asset class for making multipliers on your money,

but it can also lead to losing a lot of money.

So it's important for you to know what are the factors that affect price, what can make the price go

down, and what can make the price go up?

So we just have a look in the last 24 hours, what has caused AMP to go up 22% and what has caused for

the graph to go down 10%?

And if we go and look at the top gainers and losers in the last 24 hours, why is gold gone up 800%

essentially at eight x?

So $1,000 would now be 8000 in the space of 24 hours.

And what has caused go Cerberus to lose 100%, which essentially if you put $1,000, it now be worth

probably about $500.

So what explains why prices go up and down?

Now, I can make a whole course about this because this is what cryptocurrency is all about and there

are so many factors that can change price.

But I'm going to explain to you in my experience, what are the main ones and what should you be aware

of?

So what affects price?

Number one, events definitely affect price.

So the launch of a cryptocurrency, this is typically the hottest time for a new cryptocurrency, no

matter whether it's potentially rubbish or very, very hot.

The launch is where people speculate on it and how the price reacts on launch phase can dictate how

the cryptocurrency does over time.

But typically when people are excited about cryptocurrency about to launch, then the launch is their

first opportunity to buy it.

And as soon as they can buy it, the price just goes up and people FOMO in on launch.

So that can make the price go up like five X literally in the space of 10 minutes.

I have actually got involved in a cryptocurrency that 300 X in 10 minutes.

So the launch is one of those times that you get in the earlier you get in, if you can get an Edo State

which literally before it even launches, that's the best possible price you get it for sometimes,

but you can get in as soon as it launches, literally as soon as it goes on the exchange, then you

can make big multipliers in that respect.

But launch, if you get into late, can lead to you losing money.

So for the same cryptocurrency that when 300 X people bought right at the top and then the price lost

about two thirds of its value.

And so people who may have put $1,000 in at the top, very instantly, their money became $300.

So that really does affect price then updates.

So when cryptocurrency says something new has happened, they have launched a new product or they have

launched a new initiative which brings demand to the token, then the price goes up listings.

Now this is a listing on an exchange, whether it be a decentralized exchange like Uniswap or Pancakeswap,

or a centralized exchange like Gate IO Okex, Huobi, Binance, Coinbase.

So there are minor listings on the more minor exchanges, and then there's major listings.

So if you get on Coinbase or Binance, those are major listings.

And typically they can cause a 3 to 5 X spike in price.

Another thing to know, though, is that the listings can be pump and dumps.

So because of an event, people are like, Right, okay, it's going to go on Binance.

So they speculate on the price.

So let's say the coin is $0.03 when the news comes out.

And this is why I put rumors as well, because it's not necessarily the event, it's also the rumor

of the event that causes the price to go up.

So, for instance, when there is a rumor of a coin, let's say you to me coin, let's say you to me

coin.

That's not a real coin, but Udemy Coin is about to list on Binance at the moment is worth $0.03.

As soon as that rumor is known, the earliest people are going to be buying it up.

So it could probably go from $0.03 to $0.10 on that rumor.

And then once actually goes on Binance, it could go from $0.10 to $0.20, in which case you have made

about six X in that instance.

But also once it goes on that big exchange, people are like, Right, okay, the events happen now

let's take our money out.

And then it can go from $0.20 down to 10 to $0.03, who knows?

But so it can be a pump and dump.

But listings do definitely make the price go up.

And the more major the listing, the better the price spike then partnerships.

So let's say a cryptocurrency, a new cryptocurrency partners up with a top project, one of the blue

chip cryptocurrencies, or they partner up with a big well known company known to the masses like Tesla

or General Motors or or Amazon or Microsoft or PayPal.

A big partnership leads to huge spikes in price or the rumors is typically, if you hear about it as

a rumor first, that is where you make the biggest multipliers on your money.

So there's going to be a particular room I talk about in this course where there's a cryptocurrency

called Digibyte.

I found out about the rumor of them being integrated into a game called Minecraft.

This was back in 2017, and when I heard that rumor, I bought straight away and over the course of

that rematch playing out and being a reality, I made a ten x just on that coin so you can make huge

amounts of money on rumors.

Number two, marketing.

This is, I would say, half the battle of any cryptocurrency, right?

So any cryptocurrency that exists today, the way for them to achieve long term success is a 5050 relationship.

So 50, 51, 50% is they've got to be good.

Fundamentally a good strong coin the solves the problem has got good venture capitalists behind it,

a good team behind it.

That is 50% of what makes a good cryptocurrency.

The other 50% and don't underestimate this is marketing is their marketing team generating excitement.

It's one thing having a great cryptocurrency, but if no one knows about it, then it basically can

fail.

But if they've got a strong marketing team that supports the vision, then it can really lead to great

things.

Some of the best cryptocurrencies like Chainlink and Etherium have been born out of exceptional marketing.

So marketing leads to increased relevance, more liquidity on a day to day basis and investor confidence.

At the end of the day, as I've said in a previous lecture, all price is speculation.

People are speculating that a coin is good or that a coin is bad, or that a coin is going to make profit,

or that a coin is going to make a loss.

That is basically why people put money into a crypto currency.

If you put money into a cryptocurrency, you are paying it in because you think it's going to make you

a gain.

All right.

And you have confidence in that happening.

Now, marketing and whether when a cryptocurrency uses Twitter and social media and communities to spread

good word and exciting initiatives, this increases confidence and increases the amount of people speculating

the price is going to go up.

What dictates whether a price goes up and down is on the amount of speculators on the event.

So if there are more speculators on the price going up, then the price is going to go up.

If there are more speculators on the price going down, then the price is going to go down.

So marketing increases the chances of that cryptocurrency going up because it increases confidence,

therefore increases liquidity and because they are staying top of mind, increases their relevance.

Now there are 10,000 cryptocurrencies out there in the world.

There is only one way to keep growing, and that is to make a noise so that the investors invest in

that cryptocurrency versus the other 10,000.

So the cryptocurrencies that make the best noise are the ones that stand out and are the ones that can

keep on growing.

So marketing is so super important.

A cryptocurrency that everybody is excited about in the technology that has really bad marketing.

You could be making a bad investment if you invest in that.

You know, sometimes good things take time, but in cryptocurrency, people are very impatient.

So if you've got bad marketing, people will just drop the coin.

Market forces.

So if we're in a bull or a bear market.

So a bull market means on the whole, everybody's buying.

And a bear market means that on the whole, everybody's selling.

There may be some good prices going up, but on the whole, prices are mainly going down.

So if if the prices are mainly going down, then you are going to see more losses than gains, simply

because there's a lack of confidence in the market and there is fear in the market.

So bull market basically equals greed and a bear market equals fear.

So when people are feeling fear, when people are feeling greedy, the prices go up.

I mean, that is why it's a bull market.

When people are feeling fearful, prices go down.

That's why it's this fear and that's why it's a bear market.

I don't say bitcoin and altcoin season, so it's a bit of a seasonality thing.

So if the money is flowing into Bitcoin, then Bitcoin is going to go up.

If the money is flowing into all coins and all coins are outperforming Bitcoin, then all coins are

going to go up.

So this is a very good time to get into altcoins.

So all the coins other than Bitcoin.

Utility and benefit.

So essentially what it comes down to in cryptocurrency is demand.

Right.

Is there a benefit or a utility to owning the token?

So with cryptocurrency, in order to avoid being investigated by the SEC, which is basically the Securities

and Exchange Commission, in order to stop being investigated by them, every cryptocurrency has to

be marketed as a utility.

They should not be marketed as an investment or as a security, in essence, as a security, basically

something designed to give you a profit.

So a utility is it has a specific function for the cryptocurrency platform, right?

So this is how a cryptocurrency markets itself.

It will not say if you invest in us, we're going to make your money, we're going to make you a profit.

It's more a case of if you invest in us, if you buy this token, then you can use it.

So therefore, it boils down to demand, you know, is this token exciting enough to make people want

to buy it?

Is it exciting enough to increase demand for it?

And therefore it needs to have a benefit.

It has to have a utility, a good utility.

It's got very little utility.

So if the token in itself has no utility, there's likely to be a real lack of demand and therefore

a real lack of price going up.

So the more demand there is for that token, the more benefit there is, the better the adoption.

So think about it.

If Amazon, if you needed to have an Amazon token in order to buy from Amazon.com, there would be huge

demand for it and therefore there would be adoption of that coin.

That's the way to think about it.

And therefore the coin would go up incrementally because there are hundreds of thousands, millions

of customers of Amazon, so therefore there is demand there.

However, let's say somebody just invents a coin.

It's got no utility.

It's just called let's say I have made a coin coin.

What's the what's the point of it?

There's no benefit to it.

What's the point of it?

So therefore, people aren't going to buy it.

There's no demand for it.

And so the price isn't going to go up.

So it has to be a utility and a benefit.

And the greater the utility or greater the benefit, the more there's demand, the more there is adoption

and the more the price goes up.

Narratives.

So in cryptocurrency, various cryptocurrencies have their trending periods.

So for instance, in the past we have had infrastructure coins like Ethereum, Solana, Cardano, we

have had privacy coins like Dash, Monero, Deep Onion Verge and when there is a trend, so for instance,

there are two or three going up dramatically versus the rest of the market.

That shows you people are liking that type of coin.

So back in 2017, privacy coins went up 10 to 100 X in the space of two months.

That's because that was their narrative.

That was a trend at the time.

Most recently we've seen Defi coins going up 10 to 100 X NFT coins going up 10 to 100 x.

And we still have scaling coins like for instance, Matic network has only in the last year 1000 XT

and then that opened up everybody wanted to invest in scaling blockchains like Solana, Hashgraph,

Avalanche, Fantom, then meme coins.

So you had Elon Musk very recently tweeting about dogecoin and now everybody was investing in dog coins.

They are investing in Shiba Inu in poly doge in and poly shiba in BSC Shiba.

They are investing in all these dog coins because it was the narrative at the time when a particular

class of cryptocurrency is standing out above all the other classes.

That means a narrative is going on.

And if you invest in cryptocurrencies within that narrative at that specific time, then the prices

are going to go up.

So in that period, meme coins were going up.

In some cases, some were going up 30 X in a day.

So narratives, if you are buying a coin that is sitting perfectly within a narrative, if it's like

a low value crypto currency sitting in a narrative, that means it's probably got the greatest move

to the upside.

Technical and chart analysis.

So what you're going to learn in this course is you are going to learn how to chart a cryptocurrency.

You are going to be able to use indicators to predict is that price is going to go up or is it going

to go down?

And so there are various people who trade cryptocurrencies and use technical analysis to predict if

the price is going to go up, whether that's for the short or mid term, or is it going to go down in

the short or mid term.

And they tend to you know, traders tend to make buys and sells based on technical analysis.

So if they predict the price is going to go down, they will sell.

Right.

And that causes the price to go down.

Right.

So whether or not you're an investor in it, like a long term investor, if a trader sees that the price

is going to go down, then the traders collectively are going to sell.

So the price is going to go down.

Also, it happens on the upside, too.

If a trader has sees an optimum entry point to get into a cryptocurrency because it's dipped enough

and it's about to explode, then that cryptocurrency is going to go up.

So are the traders that are trading all.

They have some form of community where they are sharing to everybody else.

I have just spotted a great opportunity to enter into this cryptocurrency.

It can make the price spike dramatically.

So if you've got a trader who's got 100,000 followers and they say, I am about to get into X coin because

it's about to it's about to shoot up, then that coin can shoot up.

So that affects price both on the negative and positive side.

What else?

Milestones.

So when you are looking at a Cryptocurrency's website, it's always important to look at the roadmap

because the roadmap will let you know what are the events coming up that are going to affect price.

So a testnet is typically when they are testing the cryptocurrency just before they are about to launch.

So a testnet means a test of the product or a test of the blockchain.

So if they are a blockchain company, then they could be releasing a testnet a test of that blockchain

to see if it works.

So that typically leads to an increase in price.

The main net is the final version of the blockchain or final version of the product.

So it goes from Testnet being a test product to the main product to the finished product and mean that

is the finished product.

So mean that typically also increases the price.

In fact, it increases it more than testnet typically listings.

So on roadmaps, people say, are we going to try and list in March or are we going to try and list

an April?

So you can see right through my cryptocurrency is going to go up in a month time or three months time

because they are aiming to get a listing.

And in a lot of occasions you pay to list.

It's not because you're in Binance and Coinbase.

These instances, you have to impress them.

You have to be a coin of long term value.

You have to show a significant amount of liquidity over a long period of time before they will consider

you on there.

There's a lot of other exchanges you can just pay to go on that exchange.

And if you know, as an investor, when the cryptocurrency is looking to release on another exchange,

then you can expect it on a particular month and then product launches.

So if this isn't necessarily a main that if this is just they are launching a new product or a real

improvement to an existing product, then this can also increase the price.

So all of these tend to get contained in roadmaps.

Roadmaps contain all of the various events that the cryptocurrency is hoping will lead to an increase

in price or an increase in value anyway.

Influences.

Influences are all over the place in crypto currency and given the size of a lot of the influences.

So the follower size sizes say you've got hundreds of thousands, if not millions of people following

them.

Verses how small cryptocurrency is at this time of recording in 2021.

We are still in the early stages then.

Essentially an influencer in of themselves can make a coin 2x3x5x ten x just on making a video or talking

about it because they have huge follower sizes and it sometimes doesn't take a lot to make a cryptocurrency

go up in price.

Sometimes you can even make $1,000 worth of trade, make it go up 100%.

It's all relative.

So influencers, whether on YouTube or Twitter, and I am an influencer, whether on YouTube or Twitter,

when they talk about an altcoin, it can go up hugely.

And I've seen proof of this with my basically with my colleagues on YouTube.

Celebrity endorsements, this can be really, really astronomical.

So Elon Musk very recently tweeted about Dogecoin in literally in around about March, April 20, 21.

And it made Dogecoin basically go from $0.01 to $0.85 and it was already a major coin.

So it's not like, you know, a really small coin that went up 1000 eggs.

It was like dogecoin, it's like a major coin anyway.

And weigh up 85 X just due to Elon Musk.

And then Elon Musk also tweeted about Shiba Inu, which made that coin go up about 1,000%.

So I have seen stories on Twitter of people who have screenshotted a picture of their wallet when they

first bought Shiba and it was worth $500 back then.

And then two months later it's worth $2 million.

So 500 turning into 2 million.

So a celebrity endorsement can make the price go up hugely, particularly if that celebrity is a major

celebrity.

So if you had like a Hollywood actor or a one of the biggest YouTubers or somebody very, very influential

in a popular sector, they tweeted or mentioned a particular cryptocurrency that cryptocurrency could

just grow 100 X within within days.

So celebrity endorsements, they're not often.

However, as cryptocurrency becomes more mainstream, I do imagine this will become more often.

You know, back in 2017, you would never have had somebody like Elon Musk tweeting about a coin.

But as cryptocurrency becomes more popular and more YouTubers that do gaming videos and all of that

and have millions of subscribers as they get more into cryptocurrency, then that is going to make the

price go go up dramatically.

And so therefore, really, the earlier you get in, the more you open yourself up to those increases

in price.

Venture capitalists and institutional buyers.

So you will find that when I research my cryptocurrencies, I tend to look for do they have venture

capitalists?

And the reason I look at that is because venture capitalists are connected to networks of money.

They have a lot of influence.

Money tends to follow smart money.

And venture capitalists and institutional buyers are the smart money because they've got millions and

billions to invest in cryptocurrencies.

So when other rich or wealthy investors see that the smart money are investing in certain coins, whether

that be Bitcoin, blue chips or even new and exciting coins, wealthy people will just follow the smart

money.

So therefore, I look for venture capitalists, but I only look for a certain quality of venture capitalist

because the higher the quality.

So a venture capitalist who comes in because they are looking to get a return on that investment versus

a venture capitalist, just sell just after the launch.

I don't look for that.

I look for venture capitalists that are fundamentalists.

So like Pantera, Alameda, Fen Bucci, Fbg, Coinbase, Binance Labs, these are fundamentalist crypto

currency investors.

They invest for the long term.

And so I go where the smart money goes.

So yeah.

So if you follow the smart money, typically you do.

Okay, network effect.

So what is the difference between a new cryptocurrency and a blue chip cryptocurrency?

A new cryptocurrency typically has nothing.

It starts on on a blank slate, you know, a blank canvas.

They've got everything to do.

They have to create demand.

They have to create and forge partnerships.

They have to be a technology that other people depend on.

Before, there is a lot of value going into that cryptocurrency, this is a blue chip which is already

established.

It's been there for a long time, like, for instance, Chainlink and Ethereum.

They are two major blue chips that have a large network effect.

They are integrated with so many products in cryptocurrency that these products are almost dependent

on them.

And as a result of that, it only increases their influence and their network in cryptocurrency and

therefore the value.

All right.

One that I spoke about in its very early stages is Matic.

So Matic, which is now called Polygon.

I spoke about when it just came out and Matic in its early stages had nothing, you know, it had it

all to do, but it had the venture capitalists, it had the influencers, it had the whale network of

people due to venture capitalists.

So venture capitalists got them connected.

And as a result of that, they were able to form partnerships with so many different blockchains that

now it's become a technology that other blockchains depend on.

And it's gone from being a new cryptocurrency to a blue chip.

That is exactly what you are looking for.

You are looking to get into a new cryptocurrency that becomes a blue chip, but it has to have the potential,

has to have the technology and it has to have the connections to be able to get integration with other

projects and adoption from the masses.

If you get good network effect, the prices just go up exponentially.

So Matic has been going up exponentially.

It's now 1000 x am my initial investment and that is because it has exponentially grown through partnerships

and organically growing through partnerships and that is exactly what you are speculating on.

So network effect is a reason why it goes up and network effect can be a reason why it goes down.

Because if there is a lack of integration and a lack of adoption, nobody's really using it and it has

no real value.

And if it has maintained that position for a while, then people will grow tired of it and then they'll

just drop it.

And then that investment is no longer a decent investment.

And then last of all scams lies, delistings closures, rug pulls.

These are all negative.

These normally leads to either death or most of your money being lost.

When I say death, I mean death of that cryptocurrency like it pretty much has a bleed out to zero.

So if it's a scam.

So, for instance, you know, it was never really a project.

It was never intended to be a project.

It was just a way of the founders getting money from people.

As soon as it's discovered to be a scam, it bleeds out and it basically loses all of its value lines.

So if the team is dishonest and they send out a tweet, which is blatantly a lie or a fabrication of

the truth, then people lose trust, people drop it, and people will speculate on the price going down

just simply because of the fact they have been distrustful.

Delistings.

So as in opposition to listings, there is such a thing as Delistings.

So if a cryptocurrency is not performing well on an exchange, the exchange will divest it.

All right, so think about why an exchange has a cryptocurrency on their exchange.

So Binance, for instance, Binance tend to include cryptocurrencies that have got good, sustainable

volume over a period of time and is fundamentally sound.

Typically, not always, but typically, you know, they do list doge and they do list Shiba Inu, so

they aren't really fundamentally good coins, but they've got high liquidity over a long space of time.

Once a coin loses that liquidity or money, constant money and volume going into that cryptocurrency,

then they lose interest because the exchange makes money on trades, whether it's buys or sells.

So if there is no real volume either on the buy or the sell side, then an exchange will delist it.

And that will typically, if they get delisted off Binance or a major exchange, it can lead to the

price going down dramatically.

Closures.

So some projects just run out of money, they run out of funding, they can't afford to carry on and

they just close up, you know, and they go.

And that typically leads to the value going to zero.

Right.

And this is a reason why I look for venture capitalists, because when venture capitalists invest in

a cryptocurrency, they are, in essence, funding them so that they can last for a period of years.

And that period of years can give them the opportunity to build the network effect, build the value

incrementally, increase price.

But if a cryptocurrency lacks that funding and they are not delivering value and they're not increasing

in price, they will just close.

And this has happened.

This happens mainly in bear markets.

And then rug pulls.

Rug pull is when a team just swipe all the money.

They're all their investors have pain.

All right.

So this could be in the form of bad code.

So they've got a malicious code in the source code of the project.

So people invest money or people lock up money to get a yield.

And then the and the team just basically take the money and run and then the value goes to zero.

It doesn't matter for the founders because they've already made their their money.

They've taken everybody's money and a rug pull kills a cryptocurrency rug pulls happen mainly in defi

because people lock up their tokens into a smart contract.

And if it's a bad smart contract, then basically the investor loses everything and the team gain it

all.

So a rug pull kills a cryptocurrency, and that will make a cryptocurrency go down massively.

So these are the various factors.

There are way more, but these are in the main the main reasons why prices go up and down.

Contained within this are most of the reasons why it happens.

But what you've got to fundamentally understand is it's all about speculation, like each of these different

factors all add up to speculation, right?

So when there's an, let's say, for instance, celebrity endorsement, when there's a celebrity endorsement,

people get to speculate.

It goes up when there's a closure or a delisting or a rug pull or a scam or a lack of marketing or a

lack of milestones.

And the cryptocurrency has not moved or done anything significant for an amount of time.

People are going to speculate on it going down, and that is what essentially prices lead.

That's what eventually sums up price movement speculation of it going up or speculation of it going

down.

And if more people are speculating on it going up, then it will go up.

And if more people are speculating on the price going down, then it will go down and that is how it

works.

So I hope that answers the question for you.

I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 11. You must do this for the best results!

Why do your own research?

I have found that the best way to make money in cryptocurrency is research, research, research.

Don't invest blindly based on other people's recommendations.

Now, I have been in cryptocurrency space for over three years.

I've heard it all.

Everybody has tried to sell me on their project, and after doing a lot of research and doing a lot

of analysis of coins, you get to see what are the cryptocurrencies that are a load of hot air and what

are the cryptocurrencies that have actual substance.

So what I have found is the more input you put in, the more you get out the lazier you are, the worse

you get.

But I would recommend that you be informed in cryptocurrency.

Join the telegram groups of the cryptocurrencies that you are looking to get involved in.

So for instance, linear, if you want to get in the telegram group of linear, what you want to look

for is you want to look for this kind of paper airplane symbol.

You click it and you can join a community.

Now, as you can see in linear finance has nearly 6000 members.

You will need a mobile phone and telegram installed on your mobile phone to join.

And once you join, you are within a community.

When you're in that community, not only do you talk to the community members, the people that have

invested or people that have an interest in it, but you also get to talk to the people in the team,

the founders, the marketing people, the developers, all of the people that will allow you to see.

Does your investment potentially have value?

If you're seeing very little engagement from the team, then it probably means that the project is a

load of hot air.

The team always gets involved when they are trying to educate and keep the community updated.

You should also look on news channels, so amongst the most popular news channels are coindesk dot com

and cointelegraph.

Now what I will say about both of them is they are crypto outlets just like any other.

They do sponsored reviews, so don't necessarily take any positive recommendations as seriously, look

at it as a pinch of salt.

Use it to aid your research.

If you are looking to do any basic research on a cryptocurrency, literally type it into Google and

put, let's say, for instance, Cardano.

So from this you will be able to see the top stories on them, any of the relevant news on them.

And what this will show you is, is there some potential value to be unlocked within the news?

I would also recommend you look on YouTube for cryptocurrency news and for coin analysis.

This really does do a lot of the work for you, but it also allows you to put your own judgment on it.

Look on Twitter, make sure that you follow the account, because on Twitter, a lot of the projects

keep their community up to date on everything happening.

Something that I have found in cryptocurrency is that you've got to kind of keep updated on these cryptocurrencies

on a regular basis.

If not daily, then certainly weekly things happen that can make the value go up and down.

Certain things happen within the community that make the price of the coin plummet.

Don't miss out on that because you could come back to your cryptocurrency in a month time and it be

worth 10% of what it was and you'd be like, What's happened?

And then you've got to kind of backtrack and see what happened.

But don't gamble, be informed, don't just do what I used to do when I first started trading in cryptocurrencies.

Why are you still, as I used to pick names that sounded good.

A little bit like horse racing, I think.

Oh, that sounds good.

Game credits or Ripple?

That sounds great.

And I would just gamble.

And a lot of the time when you're not informed, you end up losing money.

What you should do when you are researching is you should research everything about a coin.

You should look at like you would study a horse, look at the form, look at the team behind it, look

at how it's performed in the last few races.

Look at the liquidity, basically the popularity of it, how many people are interested in it?

Don't gamble.

The more research you do, the better your results will be.

Now, you really do need to answer some core questions.

When you are investing in a cryptocurrency, don't invest in something you don't understand.

Okay, I have done this myself, and what I realized later on is, God, if I'd actually known what

that project was about, I wouldn't have invested in it.

So can you understand it?

Can you explain it to the person next door?

Does it solve a problem?

The reason why this is really important is because if a cryptocurrency is going to become a Goliath,

like one of the Googles of the space, it has to solve a problem.

Okay, so how do you get books quickly delivered without having to leave the house?

And how do you get it for the best price you go on Amazon?

That is a great problem.

That is why they're so successful.

Similarly in cryptocurrency, does it solve a problem and does it solve a problem sizable enough?

To attract the mass market.

So these are very kind of core, basic but very important questions.

And can it build value over time?

There's no point in investing in something.

That's the finished article.

You can do it.

It can still release value over a lot over time.

But what I would recommend is that you get in something early and it's got a number of different milestones.

So they're building the platform.

They're going to be listing on a big exchange.

These are aspects of a coin that will enable you to build value over time.

So if you invested in something at $0.10, if it's got a number of milestones that will bring up the

price of that cryptocurrency, then it's better for your money to travel further.

### 12. This approach is CRUCIAL when Cryptocurrency Investing.

Emotion.

I'm going to talk to you about emotion because this is something that you've really got to keep control

of in cryptocurrency, because if you don't, then your emotions can run away with you.

You don't stick to plans and you can make heavy losses.

So the first thing I will say is don't fall in love with a project that you invested.

Now, when you read about a project and you read all the great things about a project, you could be

blinded by the fact that that project is the best thing since sliced bread and you are in love with

it no matter what people say about it.

If people bring up a load of red flags and tell you something is wrong with it, you will blind yourself

to it.

You'll wear the blinkers and you'll be like, Oh, that's rubbish.

That person is wrong.

That person doesn't know what they're talking about.

And people become tribalistic.

And what happens is, is that those people will then have those red flags come back to burn them.

So don't fall in love with an invested project.

Avoid the emotions of FOMO, greed and fear.

So FOMO is fear of missing out.

So you will see a cryptocurrency.

It was $10 yesterday, it's $60 today.

And you'll think, right, the price is going to go up to $120 because everybody is excited about it.

Everybody is jumping on the trade.

So for fear of missing out, you invest at $60 and then the next day is $40.

That is because the fear of missing out made you buy high.

And then all of a sudden, people that bought $10, sold at $60, brought the price down.

It exposes you to risk when you buy something based on FOMO and similar for greed.

When there is greed in abundance, when people are so excited about cryptocurrencies, they will buy

it no matter what the price because they are thinking, well, this is only going to go up wrong.

So price action is based on greed and the next day the price action could be based on fear.

And then you will lose any gains or you will lose what you have initially staked into a cryptocurrency

and similar for fear.

Avoid being fearful sometimes because what happens is, is that the next day when people are fearful

and they're saying, sell, sell, sell, and you don't do your own research and you sell based on somebody

else saying it's going to go down, it's going to go down.

Then the next day, when it goes up, you'll be like, Oh, what an idiot.

So you've got to keep your emotions in check.

You've got to keep informed.

Being informed is the way of winning in this game, not being emotional.

Use the market's emotions to be able to make profits and be able to know when to sell.

So look at other people.

Look at the behaviors of other investors.

Now, the best thing to do in cryptocurrency is be part of the cryptocurrency community.

Join Telegram groups, follow cryptocurrencies on Twitter, join communities and you will see other

people's emotions.

You will see people saying, Buy, buy, buy this now or sell, sell, sell this now, now when people

are saying bye, that tends to be a good indication sometimes to sell.

When something has has been riding a wave and has gone up, up, up, up, up, people will be.

That's the time when people go buy now, buy now, buy now.

And actually what you need to do is you need to be worried about people being too excited and sometimes

sell into that excitement because, you know, the demand is there.

Stick to a plan.

Something that people don't do in cryptocurrency is stick to a buy price.

So let's say a cryptocurrency you're invested in is at $5 today.

Now.

If I believe that that cryptocurrency is quite highly valued, I will wait for it to go down to $3 before

I buy.

But some people can't wait.

They have to buy now.

They have to buy it there and they put $5,000.

They put all of their money into it.

At that point, stick to a plan.

If you don't think it's going to go down, put 20% of the money, you're looking to invest in it now,

just in case the price does continue to go up.

But don't put it all just in case the price goes down to your ideal buy price.

And I'm going to be telling you more about the optimal buy prices in this course and then stick to a

sell price.

When I got involved in Ethos and it went up to $10, I thought, Right, I'm going to sell now because

I was very happy with the price I had in my mind a target, and I stuck to that target.

Now, luckily, or unluckily for others, the price then went down and it never ever found $10 again.

So actually me sticking to a plan meant I didn't get burned.

And it was also enough at that point for me to say I've made a good profit.

Now I can move on to the next cryptocurrency.

So stick to a plan, because if you let emotions run away with you, you'll be blinded and you won't

stick to a plan.

You will.

Your emotions will take you far away from that plan and you could end up losing money.

Anticipate the highs, don't chase highs.

So if a cryptocurrency was $10 and it's $60 today, then don't chase that $60.

What you should have done is you should invest it at $10 and anticipated it going to $60.

And that is what you're going to learn in this course.

You're going to learn where to find the potential value for a cryptocurrency to go from $10 to $60,

not investing at $60.

And then the next day the price goes to $40.

You won't learn that in this course.

This course is teaching you how to anticipate the highs.

In essence, don't get emotional emotion clouds the judgment.

### 13. When is the ideal time to buy and exit Cryptocurrencies?

Market cycles.

This is going to teach you when your cryptocurrency investments are going to go up on the whole and

when they're going to go down on the whole.

This is something that you learn with experience.

But I'm going to fast forward your learning because a lot of people that are going to be entering crypto

currency over the months, years, decades are not going to know this and are never going to know this.

But essentially bull and bear markets, essentially when the market goes up or when the market goes

down, follow cycles.

So they last anything from 18 months to two years for a bull market.

You want to be getting into that cycle early or as early as possible in 2020.

The bull market cycle has really just started at this, the tail end of 2020 having been in a near two

year bear market cycle.

So this is the beginning of your if you're watching me right now, the end of 2020 and this is potentially

the beginning of a two year bull market cycle.

Now, what tends to be the indicator to whether you're at the top or the bottom of the cycle is euphoria

or despair.

Euphoria tends to be the top of the bull market, the absolute extreme, where it hits a crescendo.

And then despair is an indicator of the bottom of the bear market.

So ideally you want to enter in when there's despair and you want to be selling when there's euphoria,

that is basically what you need to know.

But I'm going to be showing you evidence of how long these markets last and how you can really ride

an enormous wave if you time your entry in perfectly.

Bull markets tend to be accelerated by the media and new investors.

The media will typically produce positive stories about cryptocurrency, a particular cryptocurrency

or Bitcoin, and then new investors will suddenly come rushing in and you will see that this can lead

to a gargantuan impact on cryptocurrencies.

And then bear markets are accelerated by fear from both outlets, both from the media and new investors.

Typically, new investors buy at the top because the media and the euphoria stage tends to all happen

in a very short space of time at the end of a bull market cycle.

And then people buy at the top, new investors buy at the top, they buy Bitcoin at an all time high.

And then what happens is, is that the price plummets and people sell an incrementally, although not

all of the new investors, but most new investors other than the ones that really stick with cryptocurrency,

will sell their cryptocurrency at a loss over time, and the media will start producing negative stories.

They'll say Bitcoin is going to die or cryptocurrencies are going to die or blockchain is going to die.

So this is what a market cycle looks like with annotation along the side.

You've got valuation, along the bottom you've got time.

So what happens is, is that the smart money get in at the bottom.

Vega in when there is despair.

All right.

So what happens is they get involved in the cryptocurrency.

Once it's had all of the negativity flushed out, they get involved, and then initially the cryptocurrency

prices begin to take off.

Then there's a sell off because people can't believe the prices are going up, up, up.

And so they are trapped.

And that's what's called a bear trap.

The people who are bearish, they get trapped, they sell off.

And what happens is then the prices begin to soar even more.

The price exceeds the first sell off of value, and it just continues to go up.

And once it reaches a new all time high, there is media attention.

The media attention builds enthusiasm.

This is when the public gets it.

They get in at the tail end.

A lot of the value has been realized.

And so they get in, they get in.

There's greed, there's delusion.

People think this is the next big thing.

It's taking off.

I'm going to be a millionaire or a billionaire after they think this is a new paradigm shift.

The price goes down.

There's denial.

At first, they're like, the price is going to go up.

It's going to go back up.

There's nothing to see here.

Everybody, everybody calm down.

And so there's denial.

Then there is a bull trap, the opposite of a bear trap.

This is where the people who are bullish are trapped.

They keep holding onto their cryptocurrencies.

There's a return back to normality.

They're like, Yes, I told you, you know, I told you the prices were going to go back up and then

bang, there's massive fear and then capitulation.

This essentially means people start to sell off as massive sell offs, and that sell off makes the cryptocurrency

almost go down to its previous price, where there's so much despair and everybody hates cryptocurrency.

At that point, all the people that got in the public, the guy at the top right here, they are going

to be the first to capitulate all the way down to the bottom and then eventually it returns back to

the bull market.

So this is a bull market.

This is a bear market.

And although it makes it look like a bull market last much longer than a bear market, actually, it's

around about the same amount of time, 18 months to two years.

What I'm going to show you here is essentially how these bull and bear market cycles have played out

in the past.

So if we go all the way back, all the way back to 2012, this is the price of Bitcoin.

So the price of Bitcoin at this point was about $4 and 91.

Unbelievable to think Bitcoin was out of that price.

And now it's 18 and a half thousand today, but $4.91 per bitcoin.

And what happened is, is over this 18 month period, it went from $4 to about $1,100, an incredible

rise in 18 months, $4 to $100.

And then bam, bear market took it down from 100.

All the way down to the two hundreds, right down to the 200, 206.

It had a low and then a bull market came.

There was a take off and then bang, look, it was going up to 400, then 600, and then it went up

all the way, all the way over an 18 month to two year period to $20,000 at its absolute high in December

2007.

Massive euphoria, huge media attention.

And then bang the the fall from grace occurred.

It was very instant, actually.

Literally a month after it hit its all time high, it went down to 6000.

It lost three quarters of its value.

And then over the course of nearly two years, the prices just continue to go down, hitting a low in

at the tail end of 2018 of $3,100.

I remember it well.

The fall from grace was enormous of 20,000 all the way down to low 3000.

Then the prices started going up and down.

And then the end, the despair was at the beginning of 2020 5100.

It wasn't the absolute bottom, but that was the indicator for the smart money to come in.

And since then Bitcoin has been on a tear.

But literally only the last six months it has gone from 5000 to now the high 18 thousands.

But this is the beginning.

This is the beginning.

Look, look, this is what we have got over the next 18 months to two years.

No one knows how high this could be.

Remember, we went from $4 to 1000, then we went from $200 to 20,000.

And now we've gone from 5000 to, who knows, 50,000, 100,000.

It all depends on how big cryptocurrency is blowing up.

Now, recently, the biggest news in cryptocurrency, and it tends to be when an event which is quite

huge, that kicks off the market is this PayPal.

This was kind of universal acceptance that a huge payment processing company has allowed people to buy

cryptocurrency on their platform.

You can buy Bitcoin and cryptocurrency at this time of recording in the US.

It's going to be coming into international markets over the coming six months.

So this is the first step.

PayPal allows Bitcoin cryptocurrency spending and they have opened that service up.

So it was initially announced in October and then they opened it out to US accounts in November 2020.

And so over 2021, this is going to be opened up to the UK and other international markets where PayPal

has customers.

So this is kind of the beginning of the bull market.

It's still early stages, bull market.

But what you can deduce is that bitcoin and cryptocurrency does follow cycles and each time it leads

to a violent upswing.

It leads to a dramatic fall ultimately.

But if you get in at the right time, you could be riding a huge wave in cryptocurrency.

But make sure you look out for the euphoria stage.

Euphoria stage tends to be and this is a rule that's true not only in Bitcoin, but other cryptocurrencies

as well.

When there's a euphoria stage and everybody is jumping on it, that's nearly the time to sell it.

### 14. The GOLDEN WAY to spot when it's time to sell & time to buy!

How do you know when to spot euphoria, stage and despair stage in euphoria stage.

That is the time when you want to be selling in despair stage.

That is the time when you want to be buying.

So there is a chart where you have the information so that you are able to make timely decisions based

on the sentiment of the cryptocurrency market as it stands.

So this is glassnode dot com.

This shows you tons of metrics when it comes to what is happening, particularly with Bitcoin and Etherium.

It doesn't concentrate so much on the altcoins, but given that Bitcoin is essentially the barometer

of the market, it's very important to kind of know where Bitcoin is at as far as sentiment is concerned

and glassnode gives you that information.

Now you can get a basic free account on Glassnode and that will show you the sentiment of the market

up to about a month before the present day.

Now I have got a premium account that means I get all the information up to around 24 hours before the

current time.

So just to show you here what we're seeing, this is Bitcoin net unrealized profit loss, right?

Well, this means is essentially based on the the current market of Bitcoin Hodlers.

What percentage profit are they in in their wallet?

All right.

So the more that the market is in profit, the closer we are to euphoria stage.

That means everybody that's buying is in profit pretty much.

And in despair, it means pretty much everybody is at a loss.

So you can see that indicated by the colors here.

All right.

So we've got a key right here.

So this pink red indicates capitulation or despair.

This more dull red indicates hope and fear.

Brown is optimism and anxiety.

Green is belief or denial.

So belief is before euphoria stage and green after blue is denial.

All right.

So it means that people are in denial, that the prices are going to go down continuously and they're

going to go back up.

And euphoria is indicated by this purply blue line, euphoria and greed.

So let's see it extrapolated onto the bitcoin price.

So what you've got here is the gray line.

This is the Bitcoin price as it currently stands.

And over on top of it is the net profit or loss of the entire market's wallet.

Okay, so.

When the market goes into blue, it is the biggest risk that is the top of the bull market.

Now, if we just go back and have a look over 2010 stroke, beginning of 2011, the market went into

euphoria twice.

And it wasn't until summer 2011 that was the actual peak of the bull market.

And from that point, literally it went into massive loss.

So people were in huge profit here.

If you had a sold here, you would have essentially missed the massive dip that then came.

You can see in the price reflected here, the price was the absolute highest here and then it went to

his absolute lowest here.

So you would have been able to sell a massive profit and then you would have been able to buy down here

when everybody was in massive loss.

That is pretty much the bottom now.

You can't time it 100%, but the best thing to do is buy when the sentiment is in capitulation.

All right.

So the next bull market, the end of the next bull market was here at the end of December 2013.

So in the blue line.

So that was the top $1,134 was the price of Bitcoin.

And then from that point, bang, it went right down.

So selling again in the blue would have made you in an advantageous position versus everybody else playing

cryptocurrency in the market and then buying back down here the massive, massive dip.

So you would have been able to get Bitcoin at $199 after it had reached 1100 dollars.

And if you would have bought in despair, sage, anywhere around here, the price was hovering around

about $200 in the main.

Then you would have been able to buy it and then you would have made a 100 X when the price of bitcoin

went to $20,000.

So if you bought at about 190 $200, then it would have 100 X when it got to the 20,000.

And again, if you'd have sold at the blue, you would have missed the massive dip that happened.

Now you're probably asking, well, why didn't you do that?

Like referring to me?

Well, because these charts didn't exist back then.

The great thing about cryptocurrencies, because the space is so underdeveloped, the information and

graphs and analysis comes with time and it comes with data.

So now we have got all of the data of previous market cycles and price action that we were able to see

what happened retrospectively but allows us to make an informed decision in the future.

So currently where we are at.

So if I take a more zoomed in view currently where we are at is we are in belief stage because we have

not yet entered euphoria.

When the sentiment is in green after euphoria stage, then it becomes denial.

All right.

So anyway, so we're currently still in belief stage.

We have not hit euphoria yet.

Now what is indicated to get into euphoria, that is when 75% of the entire market is in profit.

Right.

That is euphoria stage.

You can see point 0.75.

Is that where this dotted line is now?

Very recently, when the price of Bitcoin went to $57,400, we were just point to off of 75%.

So we didn't quite hit euphoria stage and then the price went down of the Bitcoin price and therefore

the sentiment cooled right down.

The price went down from 57,000 all the way down to about 45,000.

And it brought the sentiment from 74.8% all the way down to 66%, even though we were at $45,000.

So now it gives way more room to the upside for the Bitcoin price to hit higher prices in order to achieve

euphoria.

So at this point, we would just point to off euphoria, age of 57,000.

Now that the sentiment has cooled right down, if we were to get to 57,000 again, then it's likely

that would be around about this point here.

So that means there's way more room on the upside to get into euphoria, say so probably around about

80 to 100000 Bitcoin price to get into euphoria stage now and that will be nearly the time to sell.

So if we just go back, let's see how long the euphoria stage has lasted before.

So in the bull market of 2011, there were three times that euphoria was hit before the market went

down.

So that started on around about November 2010.

And then we hit.

Euphoric stage three times.

And then it kind of ended in June 2012.

So this whole euphoria stage, if we look at all three in combination.

That euphoria stage basically lasted six months before it actually ultimately went down.

Now, if you're sold at the first euphoria stage, the price was only kind of $0.34 when it hit that

first euphoria stage.

So that wasn't necessarily the best time to sell, right?

If you'd have sold it, this one, it was $1 eight.

And then if you'd have sold at this one, it was $29.

So if you'd have sold at the first euphoria stage, it would have been $0.34.

So you would have missed out nearly 100 X profit there.

It was quite a long euphoria stage back in 2017.

So if we just have a look at 2013, there were two euphoria stages in 2013.

All right.

So there was one in April 2013 and then there was another one in November 2013.

All right.

So again, about six months was the euphoria stage there.

Now, the difference came, so there were three here and two in 2013.

And then in 2017 there was one, so from 3 to 2 to one.

So basically it's shortened every time.

Now, euphoria stage back here started around about beginning of December and ended around about mid-December.

So although we had kind of six months here and six months in 2013, it was literally the space of two

weeks in 2017.

So data is kind of showing us that a you shouldn't sell, right?

The beginning of euphoria stage, but you should probably sell towards the end of euphoria stage.

And given the over time the euphoria stages has reduced, then it's very likely that this time we'll

just get one again.

And it could be even shorter than two weeks.

It could literally be just one week of euphoria stage and then bang, the market will go down.

But the most important thing to consider here is that if you have bought in despair stage at $3,000

or as close to it as possible, 4000 here, 4000 here, even if you have bought the in the beginning

stages or tail end of the despair stage, you would still be an enormous profit.

Now you'd be around about 15 to 20 x profit if you had bought all the way down here and sold here even

before euphoria stage.

So I guess what I'm trying to say to you is the best time to buy is in despair and the best time to

sell is in euphoria.

The worst time to buy is in euphoria, and the worst time to sell is in despair.

Stage.

Now I'm going to relate to you some personal experience of that.

So I want to relate to you first hand.

A big mistake I made.

So I sold a cryptocurrency in Despair stage.

I sold Ethos around about May June 2020, so that would have been around about $0.05.

I sold Ethos at now that was in the despair stage and look what happened as a result of that.

So it went from $0.05 and has hit as high as $7.404.

That is essentially from that point here a 300 x, right.

So if I had just put 1000 at this point, if I'd have bought instead of sold, then I would have made

if I had put 1000 in at this point out of me, 300,000.

And by selling at this point, I missed out on 300,000.

So this shows you live example.

And yeah, it makes myself look a little bit bad.

I'm not too despondent because I did put my cryptocurrency what I sold here.

I did put it into something which has also risen it hasn't risen 300 x.

Right.

But I'm just trying to show you that yet a selling a despair is the worst time to sell, right?

I did sell the lion's share of my ethos all the way back over here.

I sold it on around about that Sunday, I would say.

And so I'm not too despondent.

I only had a fifth left, which I then sold in Despair stage.

But look what I missed out on essentially near the all time high of Voyager or ethos, right.

That's what this this token was previously called.

So don't sell in despair stage unless something bad goes wrong with that cryptocurrency.

But if it's just a case of you wanting to just get rid of it.

Not because of anything particularly bad or anything.

You just want to get rid of it.

Then that could be a mistake if you are ignoring the long term benefit of holding that coin.

Because there was a reason I bought this in the first place.

I bought it because it was what I perceived to be a long term project and I never really lost sight

of it being a long term project.

But I did sell in Euphoria stage and I also sold in Despair Stage, and I've got a live example of why

this was good for me, because I was able to make massive profits, buying a $0.05 and selling all the

way at $13.

But I'm also showing you a massive potential profit I could have made if I'd have just held from $0.05

to $7.

But I sold in despair.

So I hope that you've learnt a lot from this.

I've hope you've learnt that you should be utilising the data that is available currently.

And Glassnode is one of those particular charts that you are able to see.

What is the current sentiment in the market and you are able to make your cells in a more informed fashion

and your buys in a more informed fashion.

But essentially this will show you when is the best time to sell and when is the best time to buy.

I hope that helps.

And I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 15. How to maximise your gains using Bitcoin & Altcoins together

I've just taken you through how to spot and sell at the top of Bitcoin.

But why is the relationship between Bitcoin and altcoins?

All coins are essentially every other coin but bitcoin or it stands for alternative coins.

Now, something that you will grow to realize in your cryptocurrency journey is that Bitcoin does well

first, then the altcoins do well, then bitcoin does well, then the altcoins do well.

So basically you've got an ebb and flow of Bitcoin season and altcoin season.

Essentially, if we go back two years, you can see there's always a flow.

When Bitcoin does really well.

Then we're in Bitcoin season.

This is when bitcoin hits its highs and then once Bitcoin has hit its highs, how does the whales make

profit?

The whales are essentially the top 1%.

Basically, what do they do to continuously make profits is they then sell their bitcoins when bitcoin

is at the top of bitcoin season.

So the lower it goes down, the more towards zero it goes down, as you can see down here.

And and then they start putting their money into altcoins.

And then when all coins reaches a high, they've made even bigger profits.

They then sell and then the flow goes back into Bitcoin and then to all coins and then to Bitcoin and

so on and so forth.

So that is how money flows in cryptocurrency.

Typically it starts from a position of fiat.

Either you as a new retail investor will typically use your Fiat, your dollars, your pounds, your

rupees, your euros or whatever you buy into Bitcoin, right?

Or the people that have been invested in cryptocurrency before, the whales, let's say they have sold

into tether, which is essentially fiat tether is like a stablecoin it's a crypto currency, but it's

designed to stay at $1 all the time.

So what they do, the whales, is they go from fiat and then when they spot an opportunity, let's say,

in despair, stage to buy the Bitcoin, they go into Bitcoin first, Bitcoin does well and then they

go into large cap.

So these are the most valuable coins.

So this is like the top ten, top 50.

We're talking about Cardano, Ethereum, Polkadot, Binance, all of the majors, right?

They go into those first.

Then as they make profits in those coins, they then go to the mid-caps, everything from 250 million

all the way up to about 10 billion.

Right.

So they invest in the mid-caps because these are a little bit higher risk and they have much higher

to go.

So they start making profits in mid-caps.

Once they have rinsed the mid-caps, then they go into the low caps.

These are the highest risk.

These are coins below $250 Million in valuation.

And if you go back to COIN market cap, that's how you see the valuations of all cryptocurrencies,

which is essentially the price times, the circulating supply.

Now, low caps is anything under 250 million and this can be 1 million, 300,000, 50 million.

But low caps are the highest risk.

You'll see here that it starts from low risk to high risk.

So Bitcoin is very, very low risk.

It's the most proven.

It stood the test of time.

It's continuously gone up.

It's essentially digital gold.

It appreciates with time and then the risk gets bigger.

The lower down, the caps you go.

So low caps are extremely risky.

Now, anybody investing in low caps is really a gamble at this point because large caps and certainly

the top end of mid caps are coins that have already done well.

All right.

They've already got a large community of investors.

They are more likely to do well versus the low caps.

The low caps, the relatively undiscovered ones.

These are the ones that people gamble on, on the premise that a low cap will eventually become a mid

and large cap.

Right.

And sometimes you can get it bang on.

Like, for instance, I did with Voyager Stroke Ethos, I got into it at 300,000 and it eventually went

to near $1 billion in terms of valuation.

And there was another one that I got into called BitMEX.

Again, I got into BitMEX when it was a low cap, right?

It was an exchange.

I saw it had a lot of promise and I got into it around about one and a half million dollars.

And it has since become 500,000, 500 million, which makes it a strong mid-cap, approaching large

cap.

So you can make a good gamble.

And this is the the game.

I tend to play low caps, but essentially what happens is you start from a position of fear.

You go into Bitcoin.

When Bitcoin does well, you go into large caps.

When large caps do well, you're into mids, then into lows, and then you consolidate your profits

by going into bitcoin.

And then Bitcoin rides a wave and then you go through it all again.

So there's a really nice ebb and flow.

So typically what you will see is that in any bull market is you will tend to see Bitcoin doing well

first.

That tends to be the first mover.

That's the one that has the first take off.

Then parts the CS, it's like Moses it parts the CS so that everything else can follow.

And then large caps, mid-caps, low caps follow.

And these are really good for speculation.

And sometimes you can get it bang on if you time it right.

If you buy these just after Bitcoin has taken off, you can be making such enormous profits.

Now, something else I wanted to let you know is that typically, like I've just shown you when the

top is in for Bitcoin, when it hits the euphoria stage, you'll typically see a big blow out, right?

You'll typically see the bitcoin goes down and then the coins go up immediately after Bitcoin goes down.

All right.

So once it hits its top, people go straight into the altcoins and then once the altcoins hit their

best, they then go into fear and the they freeze those profits which they've made from trading the

top.

So as you can see here, I'm going to take you back to 2017, ignore what's happened recently because

we're currently in another bull market.

But this is what happened at the end of the last bull market.

So Bitcoin hits absolute peak Monday, the 18th of December.

And from that point, Bitcoin just tanked.

Right.

It went absolutely down from that point.

Right.

So that was December the 18th.

What happened to Altcoins almost immediately after?

So let me just pick an example.

So we've got Icon, right?

So what happened from December the 18th is Icon went from $2.50 all the way up to $12.

Right.

So that was the big blowout.

All right.

So between December the 18th and January the ninth was when the whales went from Bitcoin to altcoins.

And, of course, the retail investors who were able to identify that that was happening were able to

make huge profits in the big blowout.

Right.

So they did that with Icon all the way back from 250 to $12.

They did it with Voyager.

So this went from mid-December.

This was 1.66 when all the way up to $13, it says here, 1081.

But you can see that big blowout happened literally a couple of weeks was that big blowout went from

euphoria stage bitcoin to euphoria stage altcoins.

And then it went there.

And then from that point back, it all went down.

Another one is Cardano.

So Cardano again, it kind of went from in mid-December from $0.21 to $1.24.

So that was about 56x.

So not necessarily as good, but but you can basically see the major point here is that there's a really

nice ebb and flow between Bitcoin and Litecoin.

So Bitcoin hits its top, then the money goes into altcoins.

Now whether we're in a bear market or not, the money will keep ebbing and flowing.

But in order to make the best profits use what I've shown you with Glassnode to spot the top of Bitcoin

to then be able to trade all coins in the big blow out.

Now, just because it happened before doesn't mean it necessarily will happen again.

But what I can tell you is that when Bitcoin hits a high, typically that high then goes into altcoins

and it becomes coin season, right?

So you may want to also bookmark this blockchain center dot net full slash or coin season index, right?

So yes.

So basically once Bitcoin hits its top, the ebb and flow would suggest that it's then going to go into

all coins and then bang, we're going to have a bear market.

And that bear market essentially happened with Bitcoin over this period here.

It happened definitely with altcoins from that after the end of that two week blowout and then similar

with all the other altcoins.

Right.

So you've got examples there that when you hit the top of Bitcoin, there's normally a last blowout.

You go into altcoins, there's a big old coin season, and then you then freeze the profits.

So what you've got there is essentially a showing of how money flows around crypto.

It goes from Bitcoin to altcoins, bitcoin to altcoins.

But particularly at the tail end of the bull market, you'll have Bitcoin hitting a euphoric top and

then that money will flow into altcoins for a euphoric altcoin top.

And then what you should consider doing is freezing that into fear or tether, and then you'll be able

to play the game again in despair season all the way through the bull market.

### 16. Going 'All In' on a single Altcoin!

What is one of the most effective but riskiest strategies there are to get rich in cryptocurrency?

That strategy is called the All in Cryptocurrency, so that will be like being the casino on the roulette

table.

You've got a million worth of chips and you go all in on a number.

Now it's very, very risky.

If you win, it's huge if you lose.

It's worse, right?

Because you have all this money that you may have built up over time, that you put all it in one coin

and then it whittles it down to virtually nothing.

Now I want to show you why it's effective.

Right.

But I also want to warn you that it's incredibly risky.

And I'm going to show you two examples.

One, where I did extremely well and one where I did very, very poorly and give you a tip on how to

maybe manage it if you want to do this route.

So Bitcoin, as an example, it's the number one.

Everybody's heard of it, right?

Bitcoin is is kind of like people's entry into cryptocurrency and then they learn about the magical

world of altcoins.

But Bitcoin, if you were to make a ten X and the multipliers is the gold, essentially.

So to make a ten X in Bitcoin, essentially you put 1000 in and and times that by ten and you turn it

into 10,000.

Then you would need for Bitcoin to go to 500,000.

Now is that realistic?

Probably not to be honest.

Not in a short timeframe anyway.

And anyway, that's a ten x like you come into cryptocurrency for more than a ten x.

So I'm going to give you an example going way back.

So on the 5th of July 2017 and my mastermind group, I announced people I was getting involved in Bitcoin,

which then became Ethos and then became Voyager.

A bit confusing, but I'm just going to refer to it as Ethos.

So I invested in the ICO, which means initial coin offering, which means you get into it before it

hits exchanges.

It's an initial coin offering to early investors.

So I said it's $0.05 a token, blah, blah, blah, blah, blah.

And I just informed people I was going into it and that they could also and I gave them a tip on how

to get into it anyway.

So I go into this at $0.05.

So when it hit the market, it was around about $0.05.

It did go down a little bit, but I'd already gone all in.

I'd put 20,000 into this, which I'd built up over my first few months in cryptocurrency.

So I put 20,000 into it outright.

And this went from $0.05 all the way up to $13.

It doesn't quite hit the top here on this graph, but it hit about $13.

Now, that was a 320 x, so 20,000 times 300 is well, it's multi anyway.

So that did extremely well for me and I only needed that big win.

And I've got a retirement fund essentially now on the bad side, literally about a month later, after

my success with Ethos, I went into a bit degree.

Now Bit Degree was another five cent ICO, right?

So they were launching a token sale before it went on exchanges so I could get it at $0.05.

And a lot of people also got into it at $0.05 anyway.

Initially, Betigeri did go up to $0.55 within a week, so that was a ten X in days.

So going all in, if I had sold then I would have been able to get out with 100,000, right?

If I had sold at that point.

However, I wanted more than that because I tend to want a 50 to 100 X from my investments.

That's my own personal strategy.

Don't follow it.

There was, I say, not as I do.

Right.

So anyway, so I tend to sell about 50 x gain.

So I didn't think this was a sell opportunity.

Anyway, my 10,000.

Went from initially 100,000 worth.

My 10,000 allocation was then worth 100,000 and then virtually nothing.

It just went down, down, down, down, down to a point now that is now 50 x less than when I invested

in it.

So my 10,000 has now become $200.

Right now, I can afford to lose that.

Don't get me wrong.

But did I want to know?

But it just shows you that going all in can sometimes be incredible and can sometimes be an absolute

disaster.

Now, I want to give you another example.

So BitMEX, you know, this was probably one of my more latest wins.

Now, I got into this at $0.01, it's now $0.72.

So this is 72 x, right.

Now, why did I get into this?

Why did I feel it was good to go all in on this?

So I put about 100 Etherium into this.

Why did I get into BitMEX?

Why did I think that was a risk worth taking?

Essentially, it was because of who invested in BitMEX.

So I turned into smart money.

You know, when you're a retail investor, you are officially classed as dumb money because you haven't

got much of it and you're way behind the whale investors, they're the smart money.

So retail investors are considered the dumb money.

But I then turned to smart money.

And how smart money works is it follows other smart money.

They operate on a no lose basis.

They only invest in sure things.

And I learnt that within my six months of being in cryptocurrency.

So I invested in BitMEX because they had amongst the best investors in the retail investor world.

They had Bitmain, which is the biggest miner of bitcoin in China, then Fbg Capital, which is a huge

institutional venture capitalist, and then Torque Ventures, Gen BLOCK Capital.

These allowed me to make up my mind that because smart money was in it from an early stage, therefore

is more likely to do well over time.

And as you can see it, did you know all of the venture capitalists going around about $0.01 or just

below $0.01 and all of them are in massive profits now because they operate on a can't lose basis.

So they don't want to lose and they are investing in something that signals to me that it may be worth

considering.

So something that you should do when making any investment, but particularly with low cap investments,

because low cap is where the risk really lies.

Like the more something that's been in the market, the more it's already got smart money in it.

But the low caps, the new projects or the low cap projects are the ones that are at most risk.

So the way to mitigate that risk is to invest where the smart money have invested.

To give you another example, there's this cryptocurrency here, Super Farm.

Now, this has very recently come out.

And if we have a look at who's invested in Super Farm, you can see some of the big venture capitalists.

You've got GBV, AEW 21 Moon Whale Bitcoin.com.

Now they got into super farm anywhere between $0.01 and two and a half cents.

Now Super Farm is absolute highest achieved $2.50.

So even if you had gotten in at 2.5 cents, that was essentially a 100 x straight from launch.

So because of who invested in it, it showed that there was going to be massive interest in this.

Now, in the first few days of this launching this about 30 million in volume.

That means in 24 hours, there was $30 million that went into or out of that cryptocurrency, which

meant it was highly traded.

So getting in at $0.01, two and a half cents, this then went to $2.50.

That shows you that it's who has invested in it that mitigates the risk and shows the potential likelihood

of it absolutely soaring when it hits an exchange.

So how the smart money work is, they follow up the smart money.

They make sure that they invest in something that mitigates risk.

They invest in a crypto currency where the big venture capitalists do not want to lose.

But it doesn't mean you can get into it at any point, but it gives a good signal of getting into it

early because if you're in early, you're just like the smart money.

They're in it early, and when it does well, which is more likely than not going to do well, then

just like the smart money you will benefit.

But going all in can lead to life changing wealth and it can lead to poverty.

So you've got to be very, very careful with how much you put in and need to mitigate risk at all points.

What is the pain point and are they likely to have a lot of relevance and liquidity and.

That will come from seeing who is backing it.

So I hope that you enjoyed this.

Don't don't take this lesson lightly.

Take it very, very seriously, and I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 17. How to spot the Hidden value for big multipliers in a future gem!

Researching the coin.

I cannot emphasize enough the importance of research because this will allow you to find the hidden

value in any crypto currency out there, and particularly to find the hidden value in cryptocurrencies

before they start spiking up.

And you can make massive gains.

Now I on my YouTube channel, I'm a massive researcher and I have found this is the best way to be able

to make money from very, very low cut cryptocurrencies and hopefully see them through their journey

from low cap to mid-cap to large cap.

So the first place you start with researching is either Coingecko or Coinmarketcap.

This is where you can search for cryptocurrencies and find out all the vital stats before going fully

into research.

So the other day in my YouTube video, somebody asked me to research sell free.

So you can see here that somebody has asked me and I look at it and it's $1.75 at the time.

Now, the first place I look for is I look for it on coin market cap.

This is my preferred one.

They tend to have better quality information on here, but they didn't.

So I then went to Coingecko looked on there and there it was.

It was there.

So here I can have a load of vital stats.

Now, as you can see, it's now 589, so it's gone from 175, which was a point.

I first looked at it and then suggested that this was a pretty good looking cryptocurrency and it is

now 589 and this was literally three days ago when I looked at this cryptocurrency.

So what was it that allowed me to identify that this had quality?

Well, the first thing I did was I looked at the trading volume.

So if we just go back here, you can see the trading volume is 15.9 million.

It is now 42 million.

Right.

But at the time, the market cap of sell frame was 10 million.

So the trade volume actually exceeded the market cap, which is very rare.

So typically what I tend to look at first port of call is how does the market cap compare to the 24

hour trade volume?

Now, typically, I look for a 5 to 1 ratio.

So if the market cap is 5 million, then I would be looking for it as a minimum, about a million in

trading volume.

That tells me that this coin is relevant and the relevance is high based on its relativity to its market

cap.

Right.

So anyway, so I typically look for that and the higher that ratio is, so let's say it's 2 to 1.

So the market cap is 5 million, but the trade volume is 2.5 million.

That tells me it's even more relevant now.

In this occasion when I looked at it on Coinmarketcap, I saw that actually the trade volume exceeded

the market cap, which told me that this is something potentially I need to find out more about it a.S.A.P.

Now, as you can see here, it doesn't actually tell me what the market cap is right now.

Typically, if you were a normal layperson that was researching the coin, you didn't see a market cap,

you would probably go elsewhere.

You probably just just quit and forget it and look at something else.

But don't do that right.

The more thorough you are about your research, the better results you can get.

So in order to find out the market cap, I need to find out the circulating supply.

So when a cryptocurrency applies to be on either coin market cap or coingecko, they provide coingecko

or coinmarketcap with the information.

Right?

So they will they will say that their supply is their maximum supply is in this occasion, 30 million.

They should also be telling coingecko what the circulating supply is, but they haven't or coingecko

just haven't been able to input it here.

Now, in order to find out the market cap, I need the circulating supply to times by the coin price

and that will give me the market cap.

All right.

So that information isn't here, so I need to find it.

And the best place to find it is in telegram.

So I have got telegram on my mobile, but I've also, for the purposes of this video, I have put it

on my computer, so I click on Telegram and then it will show me that this is their official telegram

group.

So I want to view it in Telegram.

So I click on it and it takes me to their telegram page.

So what I want to do is I want to click on the magnifying glass and I want to search circulating supply.

And then somebody says, hey, circulating supply is 5.4 million.

So now I have that data.

So I can go back to Coinmarketcap now and I can get the price and then I can calculate what the market

cap is.

So I will add that.

And then I put Time's 5.4 million.

So this shows me that the market cap presently is nearly 32 million, so 31.9 million.

So going back here, I can see that the market cap still is below the trade volume.

So the trade volume in the last 24 hours still exceeds the market cap.

So that's telling me that people are really loving this cryptocurrency.

Now, this is evident because if you go to Dex Tools and Dex tools shows you the most traded coins on

Uniswap, you can see that sell frame is actually the second hottest cryptocurrency traded on Dex tools.

So with those early indications from this video, I was able to find out that this coin was very, very

hot before it became one of the trending coins on Dex tools.

So you can see now the importance of research.

And all you have to do is just keep it simple.

Just go to their telegram and this is where the community is and you can find out that data quite simply.

So anyway, so I've now found out that it's highly relevant, it's trending, and this is potentially

going to be a big hit.

Now, why is it going to be a big hit?

So other things that I look at before I go to the website is I will look at the graph and I will see

how the coin has been performing.

Is it consistently going up?

And as you can see, it has been consistently going up in the last three days there has been out, so

it's obviously doing very well.

Then I will have a look at the historical data.

So what has been the trade volume over the last few days?

Because you want to make sure this consistency, you don't want days of, okay, there's like 10,000,

20,000.

Then all of a sudden it's a big day because it could have just been a big announcement, right?

So I look for consistency and volume and as you can see, it's basically been going up each day, right?

So now I go to see what is the coin about.

Okay.

Now it's very important to consider narratives when you are looking at cryptocurrency.

So the current narratives at this point I'm speaking is Defi NFT Binance, Smart Chain Cryptocurrency.

So those are the three key narratives going on right now.

Now sell frame I can see very, very quickly is none of those or could be one of those, but this is

basically an infrastructure, cryptocurrency.

Now, infrastructures are very, very popular in cryptocurrency no matter what the trending season.

So whether it's ICOs, whether it's security tokens, whether it's DEFI tokens, whether it's NFT tokens,

it doesn't really matter.

Infrastructures tend to do well no matter what market.

Even in bear markets, they tend to do well.

Why?

Because these are the operating systems where developers can build DEFI, you can build NFT platforms.

So they are popular because they allow for the narratives that are popular.

So anyway, so by looking at this, I can see very, very quickly without going into too much detail

that this is an infrastructure.

So it's a blockchain platform.

People can build apps on top of their blockchain.

And you can see here they provide an SDK, which is a development kit which enables for cryptocurrency

developers to build their apps on cell frame.

And it also said quantum safe.

So it means that it's it's safe from being hacked by quantum computers or being destroyed by quantum

computers.

And so I continue to look a little bit more, and I look that they have sharding, which is basically

a scalability quality of blockchain.

So in order to achieve fast transaction sharding is one of the kind of well known ways of being able

to do so.

And they also have sub chains, which is is very similar to Polkadot.

And Polkadot is a top five cryptocurrency and it essentially allows a sidechain to do a lot of a lot

of the work for the main blockchain.

So it palms off some of the congestion of the network onto a sidechain.

So very, very good scaling method.

And so I continue to look through this again.

They have Python, so you can build apps with Python like for instance with Etherium, you need to use

solidity and that is something you need to have knowledge of specifically.

But most programmers know Python.

It's quite a basic programming language.

So I saw that people are able to build easy apps and it's very, very accessible.

So I'm finding out that this is a very promising infrastructure with similarities to Polkadot.

And if I have a look at Polkadot.

We'll have a look at the market cap of Polkadot.

Now, Polkadot is essentially $33 billion, so I am going to now take this figure.

Puts it in my calculator.

I'm going to take off the commas because that ruins the calculation.

And then I'm going to divide it by the market cap of sell frame.

So polka dot is very slow.

Sell frame is very similar to Polkadot.

So I am now going to compare the market caps of both.

Right.

So this tells me that sell frame is a thousand times cheaper than Polkadot.

Right.

Which means that there is massive opportunity for gains.

So I've seen that sell frame is an infrastructure.

It looks like quite high quality infrastructure and I can see it's got similarities to Polkadot.

So I can see there's gains potential there.

Now the other thing that I really am interested in with cryptocurrencies is are they venture backed?

Do they have strong venture capitalists that have invested in them?

Because knowing venture capitalists like I do know them, they like to invest in things that have absolutely

no chance of losing for them.

They only invest in sure things.

So I get a great deal of confidence knowing that a venture capitalist has actually invested into a particular

cryptocurrency.

Now, you all know from a previous lecture that I tend to use Cypher Hunter to find out if a cryptocurrency

has venture capitalist.

So I'm going to have a look here.

I'm going to put sell frame and it says no results.

So that initially tells me that they have got no venture capitalists and that that decreases my confidence

a little bit.

But again, like I said, the more research you input, the more you get out.

Now it's not on Cypher Hunter.

So again, the layperson would think, Oh, that means they haven't got venture capitalists.

I'm not going to bother investing in this.

So why then did was I went and I had a look on their medium page.

Now medium is where the cryptocurrency posts their own blogs.

So sell frame, they've got a blog page.

So I had a look to see do they actually have any information about VCs on here?

And going down, I can see they've got a partnership with Union which has VCs behind it.

So that told me that there was probably indications that this was a partnership that had been put together

by voices.

So I look down a little bit more and there we are.

You can see there are VCs here.

You've got three commas, SPARC, Digital Capital.

Meanwhile, you've also got a series of others, but I don't really know the other names, but three

commas I know is a very strong name in the cryptocurrency VC world.

So if we just have a look.

So there we are.

So there's three commas, so let's have a look and see who they have invested in.

So they've invested in some what I call really promising cryptocurrencies.

They've invested in Shadow's linear finance mask, power trade serum and ensure these are really strong

cryptocurrencies and they are very selective.

Like they have only got nine investments listed on here.

So I can see they do not invest in rubbish.

Serum has done very well.

So is union, so is linear and and so is uni then so and musk, they have done really well.

So I know these guys don't invest in rubbish, but I also have found out through researching that actually

sell frame do have venture capitalists.

So I was able to find out all of this information and all of that culminated in me being able to identify

that this cryptocurrency had the ability to spike.

Now, I'm going to give you another example of something else that I researched recently.

So meta governance was one that I researched recently.

Now a lot of cryptocurrency YouTubers, and the reason I bring up YouTubers is because these are people

that are actually visible.

You can see what they are looking at and what they are recommending.

And most cryptocurrency YouTubers will not touch low or micro-cap cryptocurrencies.

There's too much risk at that level.

They tend to go for ones that are in the top hundred or are already blue chips.

You know, they really rarely tend to cover low caps, but low caps is my area.

Micro caps, low caps are my area and micro caps are anything from 0 to 50 million and low caps is from

50 million to 250 million.

So it's the lower you going cap, the riskier the investment is.

So I like to do my research in this area to avoid any chance of being burned anyway.

So I looked at meta governance.

Now this is a 1.95 million cryptocurrency at the time.

I looked at this and this was on March 14th.

Today it is March the 24th.

So this was ten days ago that I looked at this right now.

I looked into it.

And essentially what I do in my channel is I research it, I show you what I'm showing you right now,

but live.

So anyway, so I researched it now to.

Meta governance is $7.40 OC so ten days in ten days, essentially this cryptocurrency has ten xt nearly

ten x so if you put 1000 in it now be 10,000.

That's just in ten days.

And it's gone from being a $1 million to now a $17 Million.

So you can see that my research method really works and what it involves is essentially looking at market

cap as a ratio to volume, and it also involves making sure that the volume has been consistent.

It involves looking at the venture capitalists and looking through the telegram to make sure that I

am on the right track.

So one of the things I did when I looked at meta governance was, again, I looked through to see who

was invested in these guys.

So if I just put meter, you can see it right there and you could see who was invested in it.

Now it said AQ 21 Now again, that's just one venture capitalist.

It's a good thing because at least there is a venture capitalist that I am interested the IP that I

consider to be a relatively high quality VC.

Now I went into Meta to do more research.

So what I have found is this is essentially a defi cryptocurrency.

So this is part of the narrative, but they have got more than just a U 21.

They have got Pantera, which is one of the biggest VCs in cryptocurrency.

They've also got Lambda Capital, which is one of the mid eight, as I call them, or mid ten, and

then they've got Gbtc, which is one of the Big Eight again.

So this tells me that actually they've got backing from enormous names in the venture capitalist world.

So I was able to identify that even though it had a a market cap of 1.9 million, that given who was

in it and given the magnitude of those investors, because these are big investors involved in this

coin, I thought this is going to do well.

Plus, it is decentralized, it's fast and scalable.

And in the defi world, that is exactly what you are looking for.

All right.

So I was able to identify that this also had incredible promise.

And in this video, I said, I think this coin is going to do extremely well.

And you could see at the time you're using my ratio that 1.95 million as a ratio to 391 volume was basically

5 to 1.

So I could see there was relevance.

It fit in with the current narrative.

It was popular right now and they had the VCs and it was a low market cap.

So that meant that it had enormous potential for gains.

So research, research, research, I've taken you through a lot of what I do research and something

else that you should do is just keep it very, very simple, is to look for various articles on these

cryptocurrencies just to just to make sure that you are exploiting every available opportunity to do

so.

All right.

So what I would tend to look for is I would tend to look for news articles.

So I would go to news and have a look and see if there's anybody actually talking about it.

In this case, they haven't.

And I think it's because it's a low cap cryptocurrency and it's got very, very little in the way of

actual coverage at the moment, which is why it's very, very important to look at things in the early

stages.

So I will look across a lot of the websites to exploit and make sure that they're see what people are

saying about it in the various communities.

So I hope that this gave you a good indication of what to look for, how to find it, and use that to

aid what you invest in in cryptocurrency.

Because a lot of people that invest in cryptocurrencies, they don't do the research, they are lazy

and they will you know, they will listen they will listen to other people who may not know what they're

talking about and say, oh, what should I invest in today?

What should I invest 20,000 in today?

The best thing you can do is be your own research machine and be able to identify the opportunities

before they are brought up later on down the line.

So I hope that this educated you quite well and I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 18. What are the most profitable Cryptocurrencies to invest in?

The key to making money in cryptocurrency is understanding what technology people are interested in

right now and where is the big money going.

And for you to understand that, you need to understand narratives.

Narratives are basically the stories in cryptocurrency, the the emerging technologies that are coming

out in cryptocurrency that make the space more exciting and therefore are the best places for you to

invest your money in terms of making multipliers and gains.

So I'm going to take you through a little bit of a history so you understand why we have got to where

we are now.

So the first narrative was really Bitcoin.

It was the first cryptocurrency that was invented and people started speculating and buying into it

in the very early stages.

And the reason why this was a narrative is because of what it offered the world.

Essentially, it was a completely digital form of cash.

It was completely uncontrolled by governments and centralized entities.

And so that's how it came to prominence.

That is how it has essentially led to the cryptocurrency ecosystem that we have now.

Really, it's decentralization and you have in control of your money and you having custody of your

own money and it not being subjected to interest rates, inflation, all of that kind of thing.

So Bitcoin was the starter kind of trend.

And then we got Etherium.

Etherium offered a whole heap of features that you could add to cryptocurrency.

So Bitcoin was really a digital cash.

It was really a currency natively, but Ethereum was more about technology ethereum's the second, still

the second, most traded and most popular cryptocurrency.

Most valuable cryptocurrency, because different to Bitcoin essentially enables for businesses to grow

out of cryptocurrency.

It enables for businesses to gain funds through the Ethereum blockchain and the Ethereum ICO process.

But also it gave technology for people to develop, to develop businesses, to develop businesses on

top of blockchain or or develop blockchains so that it could enable business activity.

So Ethereum was kind of the key cryptocurrency in 2015, 2017, and Ethereum led to the birth of the

ICO boom, the initial coin offering boom, which was at its best in 2010, 2017, 2018.

And that essentially was Ethereum enabling these new industries to come into the market.

So we had electric companies, car companies, banking companies, even adult website companies, gambling

companies and all of that.

So all of the industries that are previously in the normal outside world and now coming into cryptocurrency

using blockchain technology.

So this gave birth to utility tokens, so tokens that could be used on particular platforms and also

scaling, right?

So this enabled for businesses to start being able to get large because of the blockchain ecosystem.

So that was really the ICO boom.

It led to a whole host of new tokens, a whole host of new technologies, even a load of Ethereum competitors

who even to this day still are Ethereum based tokens or ERC 20 tokens until they launch their own blockchain

and main net and therefore have their own native token.

So yeah, if they're in a series where the big narratives and then there was a bear market in 2018,

then nothing really soared in that period.

And then 2020 really gave birth to decentralization in technology, not necessarily in the money.

So you had the birth of decentralized exchanges or dexs, but most recently the biggest hype wave is

in Defi and nfts and FTX stands for nonfungible tokens.

I'll talk more about it later, but essentially fungible means the same as something else.

So one bitcoin is the same as another bitcoin in essence.

It has the same value and it does the same thing, whereas nonfungible means it's different.

There's a difference.

So it's a little bit like an artwork.

So a painting, one painting is different from another.

This designed that there's never going to be exactly the same.

So that's what Nonfungible Token is.

And they are essentially digital collectibles, right?

But Defi is like the big difference in decentralization.

So how Defi has all of a sudden changed everything is that it enables people to be their own bank.

Right?

So decentralization with Bitcoin was about owning your money and having custody of your money and defi

is about being your own bank.

So you.

Of savings, you have yields, that kind of thing.

Right now in the traditional world banking services, they offer a whole heap of different services.

They offer loans, they offer interest rates or high, high, high interest rate savings accounts and

ISAs.

They also offer outside of that more to the wealthy.

They offer the ability to trade stocks, to trade bonds options.

And what DEFI is doing is essentially enable people to do exactly the same, but without having to have

any barriers to entry.

So having to be have to have a certain amount of net worth, you can do it no matter who you are, as

long as you are of age to be able to deal with cryptocurrencies.

So, you know, 18 plus.

So anyway, yes.

So Defi has enabled people to be their own banks and be able to get much higher yields than you can

get out there in the world.

So, you know, some some banks, it's like 0.6% or sometimes 3% that you could make in a year.

On what your savings amount is in.

Cryptocurrency is completely different.

It kind of starts at ten, 10%.

And there are some yield farms which again you're going to learn about, but it's essentially digital

farm where you state your cryptocurrencies and you get a high yield on top of that.

So let's say that you you stake 10,000 and the yield is 500%.

You essentially can make 50,000 based on putting 10,000 in a yield farm.

So the yield is so super huge and NFTS is basically just given birth to these digital collectibles,

which now, you know, the space is really, really blown up in a few short months.

In 2021, you've got like some big celebrities, Mark Cuban, Logan Paul getting involved in in Nfts

and selling their own collectibles using the cryptocurrency marketplaces or NFT marketplaces like Opensea.

So it's, you know, the narrative at the moment is definitely defiant.

Nfts any cryptocurrency that is a defi orientated or an NFT orientated cryptocurrency is doing well.

They may not have done well literally two years ago when they were the same cryptocurrency they are

now.

But because the narrative is defi and everybody wants, there's demand for Defi, those cryptocurrencies

that were Defi before that didn't have any interest, have that interest now and have actually blown

up into kind of the top 20 cryptocurrencies.

Funnily enough, even though a couple of years ago they were well down in the top 500.

So yes, so this is an exciting period where it's like a constant quest of finding unique and very,

very beneficial defi and NFT cryptocurrencies, ones that look special and have the ability to boom

in the long term.

There are sub narratives also going on that you need to be aware of.

So some narratives are, for instance, polka dot cryptocurrencies.

So pretty much every polka dot cryptocurrency that has launched has at least ten.

XT now since Etherium because Defi is mainly hosted on the Ethereum blockchain and that has led to high

gas fees.

When people are wanting to trade or when people want to interact for lending and borrowing, then the

gas fees are very, very high.

For Etherium, the transaction fees essentially.

So people have started moving to Binance Smart Chain because the fees are very, very minimal, if not

pretty much free.

The other narrative is speed and zero gas fees.

So that is not only Binance Smart Chain, but that's leading to interest in other blockchains such as

Harmony, Cosmos and Avalanche and hashgraph and all sorts.

So there is a constant quest of finding the best exchanges that are very similar to Uniswap.

Uniswap is ethereum's decentralized exchange and everybody is looking for the next uniswap that is part

of another ecosystem.

So if chain, any swap, pancake swap, trust swap, people are looking in all sorts of different ecosystems

to find the next gem.

So what's good about this is that people are either searching for what's popular now or what's likely

to be popular in the near future.

And then STOs, which is security token offerings.

This is an ability to get involved in security tokens.

Security tokens are designed to give you an appreciation of value.

They're designed to give a financial benefit, unlike utility tokens, which is what came out of the

ICO boom.

Utility tokens are not there to.

Give you profits.

They are there to have a utility on the platform that they serve, but they go up in value because of

demand.

But STOs are designed to actually give you value so you are able to tokenize various appreciative assets

like real estate or cars, for instance, exotic cars.

So what happens is with these STOs is you can essentially own a fraction of an exotic car or you can

own a fraction of a property, and they're designed to give you money.

They're designed to go up in value.

So these are now I would say these are kind of like a near future trend.

STOs, you know, where there's a new cryptocurrency coming out maybe, oh, by the time you watch this,

but it's called convergence.

Finance is coming out late March 2021, and it's basically going to be a security token exchange.

So it is going to pave the way for security tokens to be available in the cryptocurrency market.

And then you've got various tokens like Starbucks and Labs Group.

These are security token offerings that are likely to thrive in this period.

So what I'm trying to say is, is that there are 8000 cryptocurrencies available for you to buy, but

the ones that are likely to have the best multiples or gains potential are ones that are trendy, popular

and where the money is going.

Now, you know, over time, you know, amongst those 8000, the narratives that they serve are probably

going to go up.

You know, we're in a bull market.

They're probably going to go up regardless.

But the ones that have the best chance of making money are ones that fit perfectly into the narratives.

And sometimes you can take a combination of narrative.

So, for instance, a cryptocurrency that utilizes both Defi, Nfts and Binance Smart Chain is absolutely

flourishing.

So for instance, there's a cryptocurrency coming out soon called Refiner Oil that is essentially going

to be utilizing Defi, Nfts and Binance Smart Chain.

So if you are able to get a combination of what is relevant right now, you could make explosive gains.

### 19. The absolute BEST way to invest in a coin for the long-term!

The best investments I have ever made are in cryptocurrencies that have been venture backed right from

the beginning.

Now I'm going to be telling you the reasons why, but I want to show you a few examples.

So BitMEX was a 200 X for me.

This is now worth roughly $2 and I bought this for $0.01 linear finance, which is a defi synthetix

platform.

This was heavily backed by venture capitalists right from the very beginning, and this was a 100 x.

I bought this for 0.3 of a cent and it went to $0.30 very recently.

Matic is arguably going to be one of the best ever cryptocurrency projects with regards to scaling,

and they also were venture backed.

Now there's a reason why I go for venture backed cryptocurrencies.

The reason why is because the money flows the smart money in the long term, like in terms of short

term dumb money does take a cryptocurrency quite high.

You've got an absolutely rubbish project that can do really well, has no venture capitalists can do

really well from retail investors, but it dumps and in the long term they die, right?

But venture backed cryptocurrencies do the absolute best.

And I would always recommend that if you are looking to invest in cryptocurrencies for the long term,

that you invest in cryptocurrencies that have got good venture capitalists.

So why should you go with a cryptocurrency that's got venture capitalists?

The main reason why is for confidence, because venture capitalists do not like to gamble.

I like to get involved in very, very low cap cryptocurrencies.

Like when I make a sizeable investment, I tend to go for a cryptocurrency between one and $5 million.

And when I do, I make sure that venture capitalists are in it, because that gives me the confidence

that I can see this through for the long term.

It's no guarantee, but it does ensure a level of liquidity going into that cryptocurrency and money

going into that cryptocurrency, certainly for the foreseeable future.

So it gives me confidence because venture capitalists don't gamble.

A lot of retail investors out there, they invest in rubbish coins because they like to gamble.

They don't gamble.

They get involved in sure things.

Now venture capitalists are connected.

They're connected to whale investors themselves.

So even if other whale investors that they are associated with didn't get involved in that cryptocurrency,

they may do ultimately because of the network effect.

You know, smart money follows smart money.

Now they've got connections all over the place in the cryptocurrency sphere.

Like I've been to parties that had venture capitalists there, and they are well connected.

They're connected to the heads of exchanges, they're connected to the heads of the best cryptocurrency

projects, and they are connected to influencers.

So YouTubers, crypto tweeters, crypto bloggers, crypto vloggers, every they are connected to the

people that matter.

And that means that they can get coverage for their cryptocurrencies.

So because they're well connected, they'll be like, Hey yo to a YouTuber.

They'd be like, Fancy doing a partnership with this cryptocurrency that I've backed.

Yeah, sure.

And then, you know, then there'll be an exchange and then they'll do a video.

And that's how it works, you know, that's how the coverage happens.

And that's how more and more money goes in.

And that's how these cryptocurrencies grow, the ones that have got venture capitalists.

So the venture capitalists themselves, they don't just put their money in.

They also provide expertise, business expertise, operational expertise, expertise in forging partnerships

with heads of exchanges or heads of big cryptocurrency projects.

And they also help with marketing.

They can help get word out.

They can they're connected to the cryptocurrency news outlet so they can make sure that news gets out

there and gives the cryptocurrency coverage.

Now, caution, it does not guarantee long term returns, but it mitigates risk.

If you go into a cryptocurrency that doesn't have venture capitalists, it's got more chance of failing

than one that does have a venture capitalist.

There's also a little bit of a risk with venture capitalists in the sense that when they invest in cryptocurrencies,

they are normally locked up.

They tokens are locked up for about a year, sometimes eight months, sometimes two years, sometimes

five years.

But once that that lockup ends, then if the price has gone, you know, 30 X or 100 x, then there

is potential for a big dump when the venture capitalists start to liquidate their profits.

So who are the venture capitalists you need to look for and what tier are they?

So I'm going to firstly cover what I perceive to be the Premier League, the top tier of venture capitalists.

These are ones that are selective with who they choose, but they put in major investment and they have

a major influence.

So the top venture capitalists are as follows Pantera and GC, otherwise known as neo global capital.

So you may have seen the cryptocurrency Neo.

They have gone arm that is responsible for investing in promising projects.

Fen Bucci Fbg Capital G.

Big Polychain, Andreessen Horowitz and Arrington XRP.

These are the big eight crypto VCs.

You may see me talking about them.

If you watch my YouTube videos, I will say that's one of the Big Eight.

So these are the Big Eight, but there are two more.

They aren't traditional crypto VCs.

However, they are considered to have as much magnitude as the top eight, and that is Coinbase Ventures

and Coinbase are the number one Fiat onramp in cryptocurrency retail investors that want to buy Bitcoin

with their dollars or pounds or whatever their fiat currency is.

Coinbase is the number one platform for that.

And then the number two, I would say is Binance Labs.

This is the number one retail crypto exchange.

And both of these like to invest in projects and when they do, those projects tend to be very promising.

And Matic is one that had both of these in it.

Then we move to the mid ten B.C. So these are a lower tier one tier lower, but they still make very

good investments.

Like if you look through their investments and I'm going to show you how to spot them in a little bit.

If you look through their investments, they're kind of nine times out of ten.

They do well.

It's very rare that you pick a dog.

Right.

So we've got Kinetic Alameda Research, Genesis BLOCK or GBV, Moon Whale LD Capital three Commas Paradigm

AEW 21 CMC Holdings and X 21.

These again are well connected VCs I've had interactions with with a lot of them and they make very

good investments and then I would say the lower tier, but they're still successful.

It's kind of a little bit more hit and miss.

Like sometimes it's more kind of 6040, but you will tend to see the lower level.

Investors tend to get involved where there's a couple of mid tens or at least one of the big eight.

So these are Spark Digital Capital, Woodstock, Morningstar Master Ventures, Hashed, Delta Hub,

Low TRG Capital, M&A Vendetta and Moon Rock.

You would see a low ten and only a low ten.

You don't see any of the mid tens and you don't see any of the Big Eight then.

May not go perfectly if you tend to see one of the big eights with a yellow ten.

It will probably do a lot better anyway.

So how do you find out if a project has VCs?

So number one is going to the actual cryptocurrencies website.

So let's say on linear, after you go down and go past the features of the site, then they would normally

say who their partners and backers are.

So as you can see, most of who I have mentioned are actually in linear, and that's a surefire way

to know whether you're onto a hit or not.

So linear had pretty much one of every tier.

At least they had one of the big amid ten amidst ten, another mid ten, another mid ten, a low ten

and another low ten.

So they had a mixed bag of all of them.

All right.

So you could see this is pretty much going to be a hit if you have got almost consensus from the crypto

VCs that this is a good investment.

And another one here, Change Guardians.

Typically when you just go down and go past all of the features and the roadmap and everything, then

you will see the list of the people that have supported them.

Also, what you should look at in tandem is the partnerships.

So as I was saying, big VCs are well connected with top projects.

So these are top projects Chainlink, Decentraland, Elrond, Polygon and Opensea is a top market place

for selling Nfts and this is an NFT project, so this shows you what is unlocked when you have got good

VCs.

The other way of being able to see who's invested is by going to Cypher Hunter.

So let me just check again linear finance.

So there they are.

So going down, you can see it, right?

So if if that information was not displayed on the website, it is displayed here.

Let me just look at another one.

Plot eggs.

Now, this is a very low cap crypto currency at the moment, actually, and they have got Delta Hub,

NGC and Fenix VC.

So although these guys are about 2 million, I've got confidence is probably going to go up in the future

because they have actually got VCs.

I've been telling you about cryptocurrencies I've done really well with and I also told you about one

I got burnt with when I went all in and that was bit degree.

Now let me see if they have got venture capitalists.

So they are here.

I know they don't.

Now, I'm not saying that just because they didn't have voices, they failed.

But the lack of connections, the lack of partnerships they were able to make by having voices increase

the chances of this failing but not having voices is not in itself a reason why a crypto is doomed for

failure.

If we have a look at a project that a lot of people have been very interested in economy.

You can see here that there is not one single VC in it.

It can still do well, but the chance of it doing well when it's got a VC are far more improved.

But there are a lot of cryptocurrencies that don't have VCs and I tend to go with ones that do because

I like to mitigate risk.

### 20. Crypto Top VCs List January 2022 (Look out for these in projects)

**Crypto Top VCs List January 2022 (Look out for these in projects)**

#### **Venture Capitalists (updated in December 2022)**

**Premier Tier (Top 10)**

* Pantera
* Fenbushi Capital/Digital
* FBG
* Arrington XRP
* Polychain
* GBIC
* Andreesen Horowitz (A16z)
* Binance Labs
* Coinbase Ventures

**Tier 1**

* Jump Crypto
* Kucoin Exchange
* NGC
* OkX
* Huobi
* Circle Ventures
* Multicoin Capital
* Animoca Brands (Premier brand in NFT & metaverse)
* Kenetic
* Genesis Block Ventures (GBV)
* Spark Digital Capital
* 3 Commas
* Skyvision Capital

**Tier 2**

* Gate Exchange
* Maven Capital
* Everse Capital
* GD10 Ventures
* Master Ventures
* X21
* Hashed
* LD Capital
* CMT Digital
* Dao Maker

**Tier 3**

* Seedify
* Halvings Capital
* TRG Capital
* Woodstock
* Vendetta
* Moonwhale
* Morningstar
* Cinchblock
* AU21
* CMS Holdings
* Raptor
* Kyros

**VC Watchlists (Who are they invested in?)**

I put these together for you to view the projects invested in by the top VCS in the space. Enjoy!

Pantera: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a2a740805be113dbf2bc7>

Fenbushi: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a2d2fb8643c029944458f>

FBG: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a33b7cd4fef3281745eef>

NGC: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a371b586ef05d87d7d2eb>

Arrington XRP: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a327de01d687d66037ce4>

Polychain: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a6e24cc9fe7171e2f0b7d>

GBIC: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a6fa6cd4fef3281747a33>

Binance: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a3efb6cf2006c3885534c>

Coinbase: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a3d163152ac5f2e715e0f>

GBV: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a2f89c59849568a6b00ea>

Kenetic: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604b6bd673aee43ca82e1863>

Spark Digital Capital: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/60578ddddeb336125b29d65e>

LD Capital: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a667eedcd1512aca19118>

AU21: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a3080015bc37d1658c629>

x21: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604a3be2f192b80589b0aca5>

Moonwhale: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604ac9fcaddce518245ae4f5>

Morningstar: <https://coinmarketcap.com/watchlist/604acb40dad2d176f80744b5>

### 21. MOST Important lesson to Build your Retirement Fund

Taking profits.

This is arguably going to be one of the most important lessons you are going to learn in this course.

Oh, I've learned the hard way.

Many investors have learned the hard way.

Every investor probably has.

Even the big venture capitalists that have gotten involved in cryptocurrency have learned the hard way.

Taking profits is one of the hardest things to do.

For instance, on a day like today, when the market has reached a local high in the last two years,

546 billion market cap, the volume is 216 billion.

There is a certain wave of euphoria coming in.

You are seeing prices.

This is the 24 hour increases in cryptocurrency prices.

Some are as high as nearly 40% there.

Some heavy green today.

And it's a very difficult thing to do to see the prices going up.

And you think the prices are going to go up forever.

But taking profits is a very important thing to do because in your cryptocurrency lifespan, there are

going to be times that you wish you had taken out even some profit in a cryptocurrency.

So why do you want to take out profits?

And essentially the objective is for protection, protection of your money and hedging yourself against

the volatility, the violent price action and price swings that occur in crypto currency.

So when should you take profits and how much?

Well, you should consider selling your initial stake?

What you've invested in the cryptocurrency when it has 3 to 5 x so unknown coin you've invested $1,000

in unknown coin.

The price of unknown coin goes from $1 to $3.

It's three X or it goes to $5.

It's five x.

Take out your initial thousand.

That means you've got 2000 to 4000 that is staying in that cryptocurrency, and you can allow that to

make further profits down the line.

But you keep that thousand that you initially stayed in to that cryptocurrency.

That means that at worst you break even if it should suddenly plummet and go down to $0.50, you've

got that thousand dollars break even when should you sell the rest?

So sell all at 20 x to 100 x.

This is my personal strategy.

I tend to get involved in crypto currencies to ride a massive wave and get a big win.

You won't get this necessarily in Bitcoin, but you can get this in altcoins.

You can get 20 X's to 100 X's.

They aren't common, but it can happen if you've invested in a promising project when the smart money

invests in it, right?

The euphoria and then you sell at 20 to 100 X.

Now at the moment Bitcoin is at 18,600.

At the time of recording, the smart money will have gone in at the bottom.

They will have entered in when all the despair had flushed out all of the weak hands, essentially.

So they get in when they know there isn't going to be much more downside to the cryptocurrency.

So they get in at the bottom and then once the crypto currency goes up in value, then institutional

investors get in the PayPal's, the banks with their clients.

They get in at this point because they want to be able to sell cryptocurrency when the price goes up

at a profit.

So if they bought it at $8,000, they can sell one bitcoin today to one of their clients at $18,000.

So they made a $10,000 profit per bitcoin that they sell.

So the institutional investors get down here.

Now the public and media have started to jump on crypto currency.

The media outlets are talking about PayPal and PayPal allowing people to buy cryptocurrencies on their

platform.

And as this becomes more international, the price will go up even more, right?

So the public and media have just gotten started.

All the people that bought at this point and at this point, there is a danger that those people are

going to sell because the media have gone in.

Maybe not now, but at various points, let's say they've bought 1000 bitcoins at this point, they

may want to sell 20 or 50 or 100 bitcoins.

That can have an impact on price.

And I'm just looking at Bitcoin here, but this is typically what can happen with any cryptocurrency.

The smart money get into the bottom and then it rides a wave.

And then the smart money and institutional money over time begins to sell when the bear is public euphoria.

So this is why you want to take profits, because at any point the price could go down to institutional

break even.

This is the risky time.

So you want to be taking profits to make sure you don't get burnt.

When the smart money and institutional investors and some of the early public investment retail investors

start to sell off.

So selling at the right time could net you.

If you get into the right time and you sell at the right time, a 20 to 100 x profit use peoples over

enthusiasm or too good to be true emotions or remarks in the cryptocurrency community as times to sell

OC A Because there's a lot of demand that means you will get the target price easily.

Let's say unknown coin has gone up to $30.

There is demand there.

If you want to sell at $30, that sell order will be fulfilled pretty much immediately.

If you try to sell when the price is going down, it's going to be much more difficult for the demand

to be there for your exact target price.

So when people are saying it's too good to be true and they're very enthusiastic about it and it's already

done a huge multiplier, that could be the time to start taking profits.

And what you do when you take profits is you've got two choices.

Really, it depends on your end game.

Do you want more bitcoin or do you want more fear?

Do you want more dollars, more pounds, whatever your local currency is, and then you sell into either

Bitcoin or USD?

T Now sometimes you may want to increase your position on bitcoin and you sell into us anyway.

Usdc is basically US dollars.

It freezes your profit.

So let's say you made a 30 x multiplier.

Let's so you've made 30,000 from a $1,000 investment.

You pay that 30,000 freeze it into USD always pretty much stays a dollar.

And then if bitcoin goes down, you can use that usdc to buy more bitcoin on a dip or you can use that

usdc to buy another cryptocurrency down the line.

Or you just keep it there for as long as you want to.

Maybe you want to cash it out into your bank.

So these are your tactics, but this is a very important lesson.

Taking profits is one of the hardest things to do.

But what I have found when I take profits is I tend not to look back.

When I take profits, I'm happy I've made a profit.

You can't be too greedy in cryptocurrency when you're overenthusiastic like a lot of retail investors

are.

That is when you are at the highest risk of getting burned.

Because when something has reached a hype that you think is too good to be true, you never saw it coming.

That may be the time where actually was too good to be true and you sold it at exactly the right time.

Now sometimes you're going to sell at the right time.

Sometimes you could have made a bigger profit.

But you shouldn't be disappointed if you make a huge profit in cryptocurrency.

Sometimes you only need that one big winner.

Now, my biggest winner was with Ethos, now called Voyager.

I bought this at ICO, so I bought this before it was launched on the exchanges.

I bought it for $0.05.

It did go down to about $0.02, but only momentarily.

But eventually it went up to over $11.

And like I said, on some exchanges, over $13.

Now, I sold at $10.

I could have made a bigger profit, but I was happy with $10.

I hit my buy price.

I hit a 300 X on this and all you need is that one winner.

I've lost a lot of money in cryptocurrency hodling cryptocurrencies.

I miss the opportunity to take massive profits and in fact took losses.

But sometimes all you need is one big winner and that can cancel out all the losses that you've made.

But on a consistent basis, if you want to make consistent money and a consistent retirement fund,

you need to be taking profits and always building that bank.

You always want to be multiplying.

When I first started in cryptocurrency, I put 1000 in.

I have made over seven figures in cryptocurrency from an initial 1000 stake, and that was because I

was always multiplying, always I was making multiples, moving on to the next thing, making multipliers,

moving on to the next thing, making multipliers.

There were some losses down the line, but this cancelled out all of those losses.

You just need that one big winner and you only get that big winner if you take profits.

There are so many people.

This is $0.14 today.

It's only three X from the price I bought.

There's lots of people that put 1000 in that 1000 is now 3000.

Not too bad, but that 1000 could have been 300,000 if they took profits.

So have a strategy in mind.

And really what you want to be doing is making sure that when you do sell that you have enough money

to pay the bills with the initial stake.

So sometimes you may want to take out your initial stake, plus a little bit more to take the bills

and then leave the rest to ride a wave.

### 22. List of All websites/graphs covered in this section

List of All websites/graphs covered in this section

All Section 2 websites & sources

Coin Research Websites:

https://coinmarketcap.com/

https://www.coingecko.com/

https://nomics.com/

Centralised Exchanges:

Spot exchange index: https://coinmarketcap.com/rankings/exchanges/

https://www.binance.com/

https://www.binance.us/ (for US customers)

https://www.coinbase.com/

https://www.gate.io/

https://www.kucoin.com/

https://ftx.com/

Decentralised Exchanges

Ethereum: https://app.uniswap.org/#/swap

Binance Smart Chain: https://pancakeswap.finance/

Solana Tokens: https://raydium.io/swap/

Technical Analysis Chart

https://www.tradingview.com/chart/?symbol=BITSTAMP%3ABTCUSD

Sentiment Graph (Euphoria & Dispair)

https://studio.glassnode.com/metrics?a=BTC&category=Favorites&m=indicators.NetUnrealizedProfitLoss

Altcoin Season graph

https://www.blockchaincenter.net/altcoin-season-index/

Venture Capitalists & Institutional Investors

https://www.cypherhunter.com/

# **Section 4:** Course Update (Bear Market 2022/2023): All-Time Best Time to Buy Crypto?

### 23. Cryptos are 90%+ down, and why this is a great thing!

Welcome to this cryptocurrency investment course.

Update 25th of November 2020 to the crypto and global financial markets are in a devastating bear market.

Currently we are seeing 90 plus percent drops in cryptocurrency from a year ago.

So to show you Bitcoin today is 16 and one half thousand per bitcoin.

Etherium 1200 dollars per Bitcoin and Solana $14 per Solana.

We have a look at a year ago, 21st of November 2021, Bitcoin was 58,003 times higher than it is today.

Etherium Four times higher than it is today, and Solana over ten X higher than it is today.

Now, this is a potentially fantastic opportunity to get into cryptocurrencies that are 90% down from

their all time highs, and you're buying it.

Lower than 99% of people have bought cryptocurrencies to date.

Now the reasons why are multitudinous and I'm going to go through them in the next lecture.

However, it's likely that this bear market will last for some time.

Goldman Sachs, one of the top investment banks, said that the bear market will last in 2023 and there

is a likelihood that it could go beyond 2023.

And what I will say is that currently there is a lot of fear in the market.

There are two emotions that drive crypto prices.

Greed and greed typically exists in a bull market, and that is where you see that prices are going

up astronomically.

Fear exists and increases during a bear market.

And as you can see right now, we're in extreme fear and we have been for some time.

If we have a look for the last year, we can see that particularly since around about March time, crypto

has progressively gone down in terms of greed.

So people are now fearful and they have been since around about March.

And the reason why is because of quantitative tightening and I'll talk more about that in a little bit.

But what we can see over the course of time is that Bitcoin typically experiences a 75 to 85% drop in

a bear market.

So we had a bear market all the way back in 2014 which saw the price of Bitcoin go from 1200 dollars

all the way down to $196.

In 2017.

It went from $20000 to $3000.

And currently we are in the process of seeing how this current bear market plays out.

And what you normally see is after a big rise, big rise, you have this descending triangle which plays

to the downside.

Now, in previous bear markets we have seen a drop out of the descending triangle and that led to a

bottom.

All right.

So we saw the bottom of the bitcoin price two months after it fell out of the descending triangle in

2014.

It took one month after falling out of the descending triangle in 2018.

And we have just fallen out of the descending triangle in 2022.

Where it ends up, it could be 15,000, 12,000, 10,000 or less.

We don't necessarily know, but I'm going to be showing you my investment strategy in a few lectures

time.

But what I will say is, is that the best times to buy cryptocurrency is when people are fearful.

The worst time to buy cryptocurrency is when people are greedy, because this was a period when people

were greedy.

So people were majorly buying here because the greed was in abundance.

People are majorly selling here, even though the prices are so significantly low compared to where

it was a year ago.

People are selling right now and people were buying at this level.

And what you need to do is be a contrarian.

You need to be buying when people are selling and you need to be selling when people are buying.

So if you sold when the greed was in abundance, you'd be an insane profit.

So there's lots to be learned about cryptocurrency in bull and bear markets.

But what I will say is that crypto right now, they have fallen substantially since their all time highs.

And most of these all time highs were achieved a year ago today.

So Bitcoin 69,000 was the price around about a year ago.

That's a 76% drop where we are today.

If you have a look at this website, which is all time high coin index, you can basically see all cryptocurrencies

and their fall from grace.

So you can either just cast down this list or if you have a particular cryptocurrency in mind, let's

say Moonbeam, which is a cryptocurrency I particularly like, then you can see that it has come down

98% from its all time high, which was achieved nearly a year ago.

So we are in a period where cryptocurrencies could be getting to the absolute Best Buy opportunities

that we have ever seen, especially in relation to the drop from their all time high.

Now, if you are wanting day to day guidance as to what I am doing in this bear market, you can find

me on Twitch.

So it's Twitch.tv forward slash Superman crypto and I am doing videos around about three times a week,

2 to 3 hour live streams where I'm taking you through the coins that I'm buying, why I'm buying them,

the price I'm buying them at, and why I'm expecting prices to go lower or higher.

So make sure that you follow me on this channel.

And in the next lecture, I'm going to take you through why I believe we're in a global financial bear

market.

### 24. Global financial markets are in meltdown, and why?

Bitcoin, as well as all financial markets like the Dow Jones, the S&P 500 and the Nasdaq are all in

bear markets.

Why?

These are the key reasons why we are in one of the most devastating bear markets the world has seen.

First of all, Russia versus Ukraine.

Russia versus Ukraine led to widespread panic in the global markets.

Why?

Because Russia are a supplier of oil and energy by all the sanctions that have been placed on Russian

supply.

Basically, the world now has to buy more expensive oil and energy, which means they have to charge

higher for it.

And this has led to a lot of the meltdown.

Ukraine supply a lot of food to Africa.

Again, we probably haven't seen the full repercussions of this war, and this probably won't play out

until some time has passed.

But Russia versus Ukraine certainly caused a lot of panic in global financial markets.

The second reason is the dollar value.

So if we have a look at the Dixie the Dixie shows the rise of the dollar.

Ever since March, we saw a turbo rise in the dollar.

Now, the dollar is inversely correlated with the stock market and the crypto market.

Basically, anything priced in the dollar will go down if the dollar goes up.

So stocks are priced in the dollar, cryptos are priced in the dollar.

Gold and silver are priced in the dollar.

Therefore, if the dollar goes up, these assets go down in relation.

So because of the strength of the dollar, we can see that the Dow Jones this year has been going down.

So it's been going up and down in this channel, but this channel has basically been going in a downward

direction.

Same with the S&P.

Same with the Nasdaq.

And crypto is no exception.

So we can see that the price of Bitcoin was $48,000 in March before quantitative tightening happened.

Quantitative tightening means money taken out of the economy.

So when money was taken out of the economy from the point that started, Bitcoin went from 48,000 all

the way down to 15 and a half thousand.

That has been the bottom for Bitcoin so far, but it could go much lower.

The third reason is high inflation.

So these are the inflation rates for countries around the globe.

So to give you some examples, Australia 7.3%, the eurozone 10.6%, UK 11.1% and the US 7.7%.

The target is 2% inflation.

So most countries have exceeded this target by a long, long way.

Inflation equals money printing.

If more money has to be printed, that means the currency experiences inflation.

Now, when a country prints too much money, the purchasing power of that money goes rapidly down and

goods and services goes up, which means that it's harder to afford goods and services in a high inflationary

period.

And that's where we are right now.

Energy prices and gas prices are sky high and inflation is so high people cannot afford to pay for these

high energy prices because their purchasing power has been significantly reduced.

And I take you back to one of the initial lectures in this course about how crypto is a solution to

inflation.

The fourth reason, which is actually related to the third reason is over printing of money during the

pandemic.

So this is the US money supply.

So as we can see over the course of three decades, it's been growing, growing, growing quite consistently.

However, when the pandemic started in March, April 2020, there was a significant increase in money

printing.

Now, actually, what happened during this period is, is that a quarter of all the money in circulation

was printed in 2020.

So over all the years that money has been in circulation, 25% of it was printed in one year.

And the reason why is because of the pandemic.

Lots of people were working from home, lots of people were out of work.

And so governments provided stimulus for the people of their countries to survive during the pandemic.

And that is why money printing went up so high.

But this is what caused inflation.

Too much money printing, taking down purchasing power.

Now money supply has now contracted.

So what we've had over the course of decades, ever since the nineties, is that we have seen money

printed consistently.

But after the turbo printing of money during the pandemic, we're now seeing a contraction.

And when there's a contraction, there is less people spending.

So we are seeing the opposite of what happened here.

Right now, people are discouraged to spend to bring inflation down.

And so people are not spending on luxury goods, on cryptos, on assets, on investments.

People aren't doing that because money supply is contracting.

The fifth reason is quantitative tightening.

Now, quantitative tightening has come as a result of all of these.

So quantitative tightening is taking money out of the economy.

So if we go back and have a look at the money supply, this is money being put into the economy.

The stock market has been going up for many years.

It has been in a bull market for the last 13 years.

So money being pumped into the economy has been instrumental in stocks and cryptos going up.

But now that we have got the reversal of that, now that we have got money being taken out of the economy,

there is a sizable reduction in the amount of buying of these assets.

So when money was being printed into the economy, quantitative easing, then people were buying stocks

and cryptos and gold, etc..

Now that there's quantitative tightening, less people are spending.

And this brings me to the last reason, which is US interest rate hikes.

So interest rates are a way of curbing or reducing spending.

So if banks are charging high interest rates, less people take out loans, there's less money available

and people are just discouraged to spend.

Now what we can see here is that in 2022 we have got the largest interest rate hike.

So rates are rising higher than any other time in recent history.

And this is going back to the eighties, which was the second to last fastest time.

That rate hikes were increased the mid nineties and earlier in the 21st century.

So what we've got right now is we have got a dramatic decrease in spending happening right now and all

of these are resulting in less people buying cryptos and less people buying stocks.

People are selling them because money is tight and as a result the prices go down lower.

And this is a trend that's likely to continue for maybe a year or two.

So the world is currently in a global meltdown, which could last for a while.

But this opens up fantastic opportunities because as cryptocurrency prices go lower, that means that

if you buy close to when cryptocurrencies bottom, you are likely to make the most astronomical profits

in future.

### 

### 25. 2023 could be worse for Bitcoin and Altcoins - why?!

2023 could be the worst year for crypto.

And I'm going to show you why.

Now, what we have had in the past is we have had crypto specific bear markets.

So I just showed you in the last lecture how the stock market has been going up over the last 13 years,

but crypto has had specific bear markets, so it typically rises for a year and a half and then for

two and a half years we're in a bear market and then we go back into a recovery mode.

So we've had that in the last three cycles.

Now we are currently in a period where crypto and the global financial markets are in a bear market

together, and so we could be seeing an even worse drop for Bitcoin than we have seen in previous markets

until inflation is dramatically reduced down to 2% across the globe, then it's unlikely we are going

to see a slowdown in interest rate hikes and people wanting to buy again.

And until that happens, I imagine that cryptos are going to continue going lower.

Other bearish events that I think will provide headwinds for Bitcoin are as follows.

An announced recession.

So the US are in a technical recession.

They've had two consecutive quarters of negative GDP growth, but the government has said we're not

in a recession, the jobs market is strong.

So I believe when they do announce a recession, which could come early in 2023, this will lead to

a panic sell off and a potential bottoming.

Then we've got the Mt. Gox bitcoins.

So Mt. Gox was an exchange back in the early 20 tens where people bought Bitcoin at around about 200

to $300.

Mt. Gox got hacked, subsequently went bankrupt, and users felt they had lost all of their bitcoins.

However, they are likely to be credited back to the bitcoins.

They bought $200 and they are going to be receiving their bitcoin at 70 x higher than they bought it

at.

So this is likely to bring a lot of sell pressure to bitcoin once these Mt. Gox bitcoins are released,

which is due to happen in January 2023.

So these two could cause for bitcoin to go down further, maybe to that ten K area.

And of course we've got some white swan events such as China versus Taiwan War, big banks, insolvency,

the winter energy costs and the rise in goods and services costs, which could lead to a bigger asset

sell off rent and housing rates going up.

The China crisis, including the property crisis and regulation coming to crypto.

All of these things in conjunction could cause bigger sell offs in Bitcoin.

And then something else is minor capitulation.

So the difficulty level to mine bitcoin is causing for electricity costs to go up for miners, which

means that if the electricity and production costs actually exceed the price of bitcoin, then miners

will be forced to sell off.

Now we have seen some minor capitulations where miners sell their bitcoins off to pay for their bills.

We have seen two days of that happening, but other than that it's been quite consistently low.

So if the price of Bitcoin goes down whilst energy prices and the mining difficulty of Bitcoin goes

up, then it's likely it's going to trigger minus to sell off more of their bitcoin in droves, which

will lead to a lower bitcoin price.

Now something separate from the macro picture is, is that crypto as a market is suffering painfully.

What we have had in this bear market is that we have had a number of key players going bankrupt because

of the bear market.

Essentially a lot of companies were over leveraged because of the bull market and when the bear market

struck, they were left unable to pay back their debts and as such went bankrupt.

So Tera Luna is a cryptocurrency that over a year ago was worth over $100.

Today it is worth less than a 10th of a cent three areas.

Capital is an investment fund that went down during the bear market.

Celsius was a platform where you could earn an interest by locking up your cryptos on the Celsius platform.

They went down, they went bankrupt, and everybody who had put their funds on Celsius were left unable

to get their funds out and subsequently lost their funds.

And same with FTX X, So FTX was the third biggest exchange and they went bankrupt because of problems

within their business.

And this has led to a wider question.

Does crypto need?

Regulation and regulation is something that's likely to come to crypto as this bear market plays out.

The likelihood is, is that we haven't seen the full contagion die off in all of these bad events that

took place in crypto.

So once the damage has been fully done, we'll probably get regulation and then crypto will start to

rise again because the market will feel less fearful of more devastating events taking place in the

cryptocurrency landscape.

Now, as far as I'm concerned, I am looking as an investor to buy at the best possible prices.

So I don't mind this crypto bear market playing out and more devastating events happening because ultimately

I want to buy cryptos at the best price and I'm going to be showing you in the next lecture what my

plan is for buying cryptos in this bear market.

### 26. My personal strategy Investing in Cryptocurrencies for next 6-8 months!

What is my investment strategy during this bear market?

I have got here a spreadsheet which you can do very similar to.

And what I'm doing here is I'm outlining what prices I'm looking to buy cryptos at.

So what we've got on the left hand side are the cryptos.

I am looking to buy.

I've done research on and I want to own these at the best possible prices.

So what I've got here is this is the lows that each of these cryptos have achieved during this bear

market.

So to give you an example, Etherium, at its lowest point, has reached $1,083.

This is $200 away from my minimal buy in.

So I'm looking to buy at the minimum point at $800 for Etherium if it continues to go down low.

This is my optimal buy in price.

This is where I'm going to put the lion's share of my money.

So how have I come to these prices?

Well, these prices are based on Bitcoin being between 12 and 14,000.

Should Bitcoin go down to 12 to 14000 range?

These are the prices I expect these assets to be at that point in the lead up to going down to that

price.

These are what I expect the minimum prices to be.

So let's say Bitcoin goes down to 15,000.

I would expect for Etherium to be on or around about $800.

But as it goes lower, I expect these asset prices.

Now, if worse comes to the worst, because there have been some predictions that Bitcoin is going to

go to ten K, this to me would be the worst case scenario.

So should bitcoin go down to ten K, then prices for these assets will likely go down to these prices.

These are the prices I'm looking to buy at, but these are the prices that I think these cryptos could

go to in the next bull rally.

Now, these are predictions.

This is my personal prediction.

You may have a different idea.

So I believe that Solana could go up to $500 after it's bottomed in this bear market and when it reaches

a peak in the next bull market.

So if I was to buy at $5 as the optimal buy in price and it goes up to $500, that represents a 100

X.

What I can see from here is what would my multipliers be if I was to buy at the optimal buy price?

And then these assets went on to make these prices during the peak of the next bull rally, which could

happen in 2025 2026.

So on an assumption that I buy during 2023 and it'll typically take until after the halving for Bitcoin

to experience the start of a bull rally.

So 2024, then 2025 to the beginning of 2026, we could be seeing a fantastic bull market, which means

that these prices could be hit at the peak.

So these are the gains that I am looking to make.

So you can see here I'm predicting that Algorand could make a 111 X up tusk could make a 120 X if I

buy it on 125 and it goes up to $150 and so on and so on.

What you can see on this table here is this is what would happen if you invested 1000.

So if you are looking at this and you're interested in particular assets based on my predictions, then

if you put $1,000 into Etherium at the optimal buy in price and it does reach this bull prediction,

this bull price prediction, then you would make 38,000 from $1,000 if you were to put $1,000 into near

protocol.

So I predicted that near protocol could achieve 180 X from its optimal buy in price, which is $0.97.

So currently near protocol has gone to $1.47, $1.49.

So it's it's most of the way there.

So if it should go down to here and reach a peak of $175 is a B 180 X, So from $1,000 invested, this

could turn $1,000 into 180,000.

If you were to put $10,000, this could turn 10,000 into 1.8 million.

If you were to put 100,000, it would turn it into 18 million.

All right.

Now, if we go into my allocations folder, then this shows you how much I'm looking to invest.

So, for instance, in Solana, I'm looking to invest $100,000 in near protocol.

I'm looking to invest 100,000.

So I'm looking to make sizable increases in this next bull market.

Now, I'm I like doing predictions.

I like charting the momentum of cryptocurrencies.

So I like to have an idea of what prices need to be hit for me to activate a buy at that point, how

much I will put.

Into it.

Should we hit the optimal buy in prices?

And how much I stand to make based upon how much I will invest.

So this is my strategy and I would encourage you to have a similar strategy.

I would employ you to do your own research on cryptocurrencies that you want to own, that you see the

long term value in, that you see longevity in that it can last multiple cycles that will give you goals

and discipline.

It will allow you to make sure that you're not buying too early and you're not FOMO going in when everybody

else does.

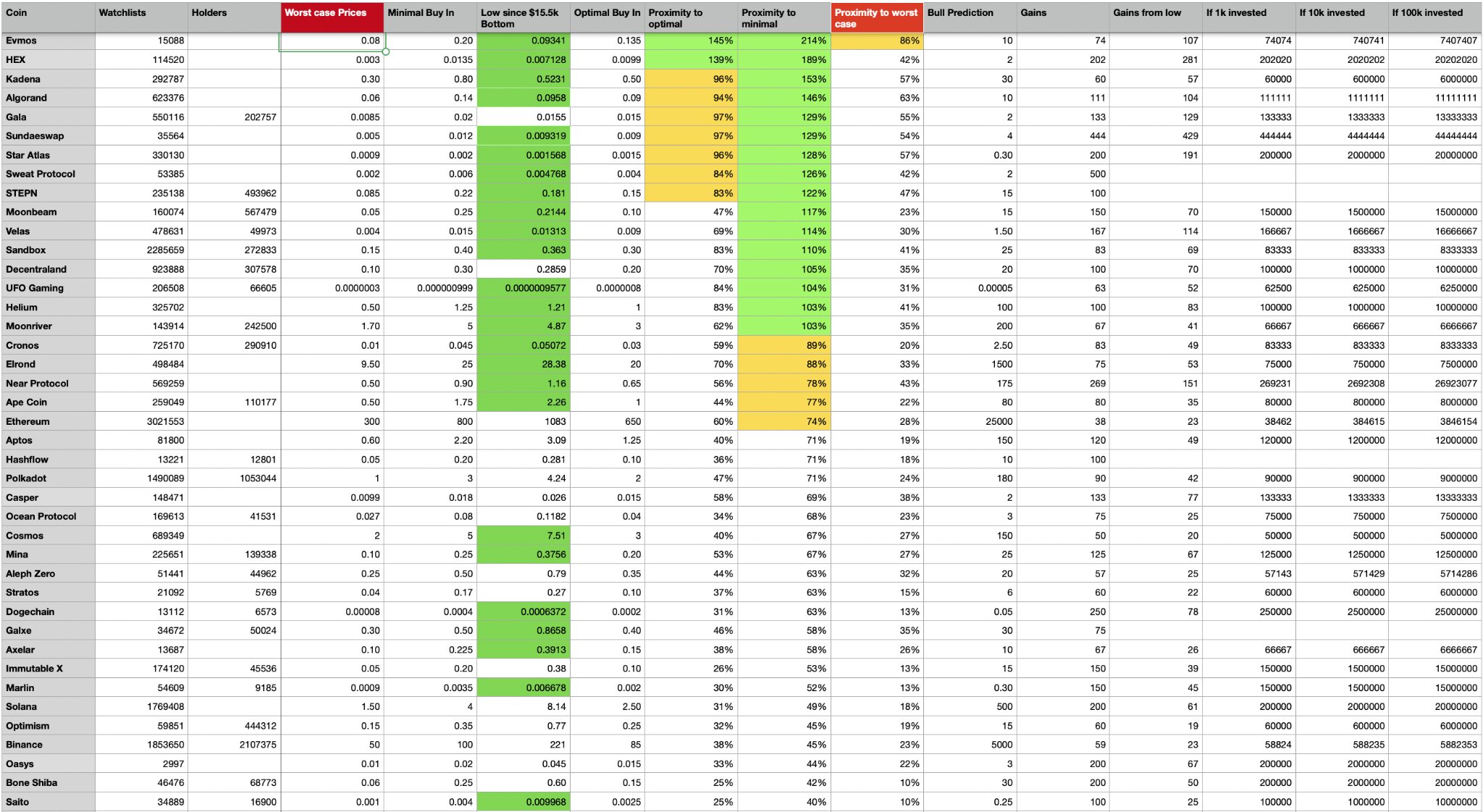
So I hope that this has taught you a lot, and I'll see you in the next section.

### 27. Investment Spreadsheet Resource - June 2023

Investment Spreadsheet Resource - June 2023

Dear student,

For your information, this is my Investment spreadsheet as of 10th June 2023. This has potential for change, but this gives you an example of what you can use for your own Investing strategy



### 28. When will a Bull Market Return, and why it could be the BIGGEST of all-time!

When is Bitcoin and the crypto market going to go bullish again?

How are we going to re-enter a bull market having been in a violent bear market?

Well, for this, I'm going to take you to how Bitcoin has gone back into bull markets in the past.

So if we look at the economics of Bitcoin, 92% of all Bitcoin has already been mined and is already

in circulation and it's taken 13 years to my 92% of all of Bitcoin supply.

The remaining 8% is going to take 120 years.

So it's going to take 120 years to mine the rest.

How does that make any sense?

When a new block is produced and every 15 minutes a new block is produced, more bitcoins are put into

circulation.

Now, between when Bitcoin was first invented through to November 2012, Bitcoin would release 50 bitcoins

into circulation with every block that was produced.

But Bitcoin has got written into its code that it halves every four years.

So after the 50 bitcoins that would be produced every block in this period, we have the first halving

event that happened in 20 and of 2012.

After 2012 we had 25 bitcoins being released every time a block was produced.

Then the second halving came four years later.

And that meant that in this period 12.5 bitcoins were produced and then the period we're in now 6.25.

So with every halving the mining rewards, every time you produce a block, the amount of bitcoins put

into circulation halves, that creates a supply shock.

That supply shock mixed with a consistent demand means price goes up.

Now the next halving is to take place in around about March or April 20, 24.

Now we're currently in November 2022, so we're a year and a half away from this.

That's a year and a half by which we can achieve a bottom.

I don't think we've hit that bottom yet.

That bottom typically is about 50% down from when we fall out of the descending triangle.

So we fell out of the descending triangle in 2018 at 6000, and we bottomed at 3000.

We've fallen out of the descending triangle at around about 1920.

K So bottoming realistically at ten.

K or thereabouts.

And then after we bottomed a recovery until the halving and then that will create a supply shock.

So Bitcoin has been consistently getting more and more adoption with every single cycle.

There's more institutional players that join and more mainstream players that join it mainstream.

Your average person that comes into crypto wants to be in on the action.

That demand should allow for Bitcoin to increase in price.

A consistent demand versus a decreasing supply should cause for Bitcoin to go up in price, and that

could be the first catalyst to a bull market.

So post bitcoin halving there will be a supply shock and this can naturally cause for price to go up

and a recovery to all time highs.

Then we have regulation.

Now this may come after or it may come before the bitcoin halving, but regulation I feel is important

because this is going to set the standard for the crypto industry moving forward.

Up until regulation comes in, it's wild.

Wild West is an unregulated space.

There's not really any rules and that's a good and a bad thing.

It's a good thing because one can take self custody, one can take matters into their own hands, and

there's not many rules governing that.

Once there's regulation, then I should imagine that there's going to be all sorts of controls.

But this should be a net positive thing because people will feel more safe going into crypto.

Up until now, Crypto's got a little bit of a reputation for being a criminal currency, which is a

load of rubbish, but that's how it has been in the past.

It's been how criminals transacted maybe is the reputation.

It's got all the reputation that it's always going down and it's always losing people money.

So regulation should bring safety, infrastructure and trust to the space.

Then we've got central bank digital currencies.

These are going to be launched soon.

So instead of there being a physical dollar or even the dollars existing in your bank, a central bank

digital currency is coming out, that's going to be a crypto currency, but it's going to be issued

by a central bank, whether that be the US, the UK central bank, Indian central bank or whatever.

And there's going to be a whole host of these opening out next year, 2023.

And so this is going to make governments potentially encourage cryptocurrency adoption where you actually

have a crypto.

That is your digital fiat currency and you can use this to go in and out of crypto currencies, cash

in and out of and make it a lot easier potentially.

And I think that central bank digital currencies will be more comfortable coming into the market once

regulation has been put in and potentially rid the space of the current stablecoins such as tether.

Then a bitcoin spot ETF from the US.

So an ETF is typically how an institutional investor will invest in an asset is that of owning the actual

asset and taking custody of it.

Another body will have the custody of it and they'll just have exposure to the price action.

So they will essentially be purchasing Bitcoin, even though they won't be holding it themselves, they'll

be purchasing Bitcoin without any of the process of having to buy self custody as a bitcoin.

This is going to open Bitcoin up to wealthy clients and then an Etherium spot ETF is likely to follow

straight after.

All five of these, I imagine, will happen in quite close succession.

All five of these could invite a new wave of institutional adoption, more trust, more mainstream adoption.

So this is where I think that the next bull market could be the most life changing of all.

So getting in during these generational lows and potentially being exposed to an institutional based

bull market next time could be unlocking the best ever multipliers.

So if one is able to invest a round about where the bottom should sit, whether that be ten k 12 k 14

k, then they should be exposed to potentially life changing gains once all of these events happen.

And I think these events will be viewed as a good thing, even though for cryptocurrency purists these

four are a bad thing.

Now we don't know if next time round we're going to replicate previous cycles, you know, because for

the first time we're seeing Bitcoin behaving in a recession, behaving in global financial meltdown.

It might be a different story.

It could take years for the price to recover.

If we have a look at the S&P 500 back in the last recession between 2007 and 2009, the all time high

was hit around about 1st of October 2007.

It took six years to refind that all time high.

So when a recession happens, it could lead to a longer term dip and a slower recovery.

But it remains to be seen.

But there are certain triggers that I think will unlock the next bull market, and it could be one of

the biggest waves of adoption we've ever seen and the biggest multipliers.

### 29. Dollar Cost Average Buying will get you BEST returns in bull market!

Dollar cost averaging is a very effective method of investing during a bear market because it takes

the guesswork out of cryptocurrency investing.

Dollar cost averaging is a strategy in which investment positions are built by investing equal sums

of money at regular intervals, regardless of the asset price or what is going on in financial markets.

The intervals can be weekly, monthly or yearly, or whatever suits an individual's investment plan.

The best one of the best ways I have found is monthly.

The idea behind this strategy is that when prices are high, you can only afford a certain amount of

coins.

When prices drop, you can buy more coins with the fixed amount that you are investing in each period.

Then when the market recovers, you benefit from having more coins when you bought at the low price.

So essentially if you bought bitcoin at 69,000, you are sitting on a massive loss.

If you bought a tiny bit of bitcoin at 69,000 and bought more bitcoin at 15 and one half thousand,

which the price reached a month ago, then you've spread the overall cost to 30,000.

So if you had been buying $100 of Matic since April 2009, so this would have covered the bear market

of 2018 to 2020, the bull market of all of 2021, you would have bought $3,400 worth of Matic throughout

all of those different time periods, the peaks and the drops.

But the total value of what you would have bought would now be worth 216,740.

So you can see that the gain you would have made is virtually 100 X just by purchasing every month in

regular intervals the same amount regardless of the price, regardless of what the market is doing.

You can see the immense value in investing in this way.

So investing in bulk during a bear market is an effective strategy, but you do have to do a lot of

analysis.

You have to you have to wait for a bear market to happen and you have to guess on when the lowest points

of that bear market will happen.

But take all the guesswork out to invest regardless of what is happening in the market.

Dollar cost averaging is by far one of the most effective strategies.

And if I show you just with Bitcoin as an example, and Bitcoin is probably the least volatile of all

assets.

So if you had done the same, then you would have had a3x.

So investing 3400 regardless of what the prices were doing in between that time you'd be sitting on

a3x.

Most people in the market right now are reeling with losses.

A lot of people would have bought during the peak of the bull market because when greed is in abundance

in the whole crypto environment, everybody is buying and no one is thinking about the consequences.

Nobody is thinking about how long a bull market's going to last.

They don't care because the environment is all about buying and people will just say, Take my money.

So dollar cost averaging is a much calmer, more intelligent, more strategic way of being able to invest

in cryptocurrencies.

So regardless of what my investment strategy is, what I would recommend is, is that you do pick out

certain cryptocurrencies that you're interested in and invest at regular intervals, for instance,

over a monthly basis.

Now, during this bear market, I have been doing the exact same thing.

So although I have got my optimal buy in prices and my minimal buy in prices, I have been doing some

micro buying.

So I have been investing around about $200 in each cryptocurrency listed here on a new low basis.

So my investing during this bear market is actually investing with every low.

So I don't just invest every month regardless of what the price is doing.

I invest at every low I micro buy.

All right.

And this means that the lower it goes, I am averaging down my purchase price so it is as close to the

bottom as possible when you are buying at regular intervals, when you compare your lowest average price

to the current price, you won't feel FOMO.

So for instance, the lowest I have bought, Solana is $11.50 the current price of Solana.

Is $14.

The lowest price I bought Aptos was 375.

The current price is $5.14.

And it would be easy for me to go, Oh, why didn't I buy when it was lower if I hadn't been doing some

dollar cost averaging?

So by doing dollar cost averaging, you negate that feeling of FOMO.

You don't feel it when the prices go up.

You're like, Oh, I should have bought, I'm going to buy now.

No, you can be calm about it because you know that you are averaging your price down every single time

and you are not falling for what is the market doing and what the asset price is doing.

You are just literally buying at regular intervals regardless of those two factors.

So I hope this shows you how dollar cost averaging, particularly in a bear market, can lead to very

fruitful returns in the future, particularly when we go back into a bull market and then you will see,

wow, I bought 1150 and the bull market peak is $500, which is a 43 x.

You will not regret buying those regular intervals with every low.

### 30. 100X Simplified: What Cryptos to invest in during a Bear Market!

100 X's simplified.

Now I have made multiple 100 exes in cryptocurrency, even a couple of 1000 exes.

And I can say that it is certainly not easy.

But in order to increase your chances to make a 100 X, I'm providing you with two methodologies.

The first one is the slow but easy way.

The second one will be the fast but risky way.

But let me take you through this method first, because this is the one that I would advise that you

pay attention to.

So the super easy way is DCA into strong projects during the depths of the bear market.

So if you're watching me now in December 2022, we are currently within the bear market.

We're currently in the depths of it, so most cryptocurrencies are 90 to 100% down.

So this is roughly the time where you start DCA, you DCA, you buy at regular intervals and by doing

so you catch the bottom and then you sell at the top of the bull market.

Or when greed is in abundance, what you want to be investing in is strong tech.

So a layer one, for instance, that offers fantastic tech for developers, i.e. a simple programming

language that most developers know end user experience, which is cheap transaction fees and fast transaction

throughput.

Then you want hype.

So does the team have an ability to create hype?

Do they market a certain message which brings the community in and gets them excited?

Do they have good tokenomics?

So by this, it's not high inflation.

What we don't want is a repeat of what's happening all around the globe right now, which is inflation.

The more inflation there is, the less purchasing power the tokens have.

So what you want is either a low inflationary cryptocurrency, i.e. something 5% or below, or a deflationary

currency where it's reached its max supply and now the supply is decreasing.

These allow for demand to overtake supply and then we come to demand.

We need to invest in something that solves a pain that's better than anything else out there, and ideally

a cryptocurrency that's multi narrative.

So layer one cryptocurrencies, i.e. blockchains are multi narrative.

If let's say Solana has a very good performing game, then that will make Solana more valuable.

If it's got a very good metaverse, it'll make Solana more valuable.

If Solana bring out a fantastic defi, it'll make Solana more valuable.

So Solana benefits from multi narrative spikes in its value, whereas a single narrative would be investing

in a crypto game.

For instance, you rely on a gaming trend to make that cryptocurrency perform really well.

Now if a trend does come and you've invested at the bottom, a trend comes and it takes it to 50 x 100

X, then that's fantastic.

But if that trend doesn't come, then there is no multiplier.

Then you want a cryptocurrency that's got a good network, good network of VCs, venture capitalists,

people that put them in contact with influencers, heads of exchanges, other projects that enables

for a cryptocurrency to be able to form partnerships and deliver more value to the investor and then

of be available on many exchanges.

So that's what's meant by liquidity.

So the more liquidity is opened out to a particular cryptocurrency, the more chance it has of flying.

So if it's on Binance, Coinbase, Gate, Kucoin and all the other exchanges, and that means that tons

of retail investors can buy into it.

So if you're investing in something in the depths of the bear market, if it's opened up to a lot of

liquidity, it should rise up pretty fast.

Now there's an asterisks by strong projects, so the asterisks means that newer non pumped coins with

great fundamentals do better, i.e. coins that come out after a bull market has ended a typically classed

as newer non pumped coins because it hasn't had a bull market to show what is the potential ceiling

price for that coin.

So because they are uncharted territory, they can do so much better.

And certainly the coins that did the best in the last bull market were ones that came out after the

2017 bull market.

So anything that was new in 2018 had a chance of doing better than an aged cryptocurrency that had been

out prior to 2017.

And then we have got the fast but risky way.

So the fast but risky way means investing within a bull market.

So from the beginning of the bull market to the end of the bull market is the period you can invest.

So you don't have to wait for the whole trajectory from bottom of the bear market all the way through

to a potential recovery, all time highs, then a market top.

This is just within the bull market period know and these do really well.

And how you get involved in these is really via eidos so initial Dex offerings.

So you go and via a launch pad you can invest in that cryptocurrency and then it just go straight to

a Dex.

Then you've got EOS, that's initial exchange offerings.

So Binance offer these.

So this is a chance to get into a Binance cryptocurrency before they put it on their exchange.

And then there's presales and presales tend to be reserved for the people with a network in cryptocurrency.

So those who are attached to influencers or attached to VCs, they offer a benefit to the cryptocurrency.

And so in exchange for that benefit, the crypto currency will offer them the chance to invest at pre-sale

price.

And then the other really risky way is investing in meme coins with strong keywords.

Now, this is typically a short term investment, so you will typically be in this for a week, a few

days or a few months.

This could end up being a long term investment, but more than likely it won't.

Now, meme coins are arguably the most attractive cryptocurrencies to invest in because they're fun.

It's easy to understand for the retail noob coming into cryptocurrency understanding blockchain layer

ones, proof of work, proof of stake.

All of these are alien concepts to the newbie.

Something that's not alien is a dog face or a cryptocurrency named after a dog.

That's why Dogecoin always does really well.

So why Shiba is the greatest trade of all time?

Because this went up a million X.

Now everybody wants to replicate Shiba.

All right.

So they like to invest in meme coins that have got a bit of substance.

So to give you an example of a few short term cryptocurrencies that did well on a keyword.

There's the die protocol.

Now die is pretty much dead.

There's hardly any volume and there's no market cap.

But this was relevant back in October where it basically did a 500 X in one day.

So Vitalik Buterin, the founder of Ethereum, joked about die cryptocurrency and as a result of that,

someone created the DAI token and it went up 500 X in 24 hours.

So he did this tweet where he said, Actually, now I think about it.

Calling a cryptocurrency die is even funnier in Chinese.

So somebody created the token and it did incredibly well.

Another example is this coin, which is called Fable of the Dragon, and the ticker is Tyrant.

So if Vitalik on his Twitter account put it in his description Fable of the Dragon Tyrant, not mine,

but it's important.

And you go into it and it's just a video.

So somebody created a cryptocurrency called Fable of the Dragon Tyrant, and this also did incredibly

well.

Look, earlier in November, it basically had an incredible rise.

So it went from one half a cent all the way up to $0.95.

That is a 200 X over the period of days.

So this is an example of a meme coin based on a keyword.

So Vitalik put these key words Fable of the Dragon Tyrant.

And so a meme coin came out which exploited that keyword.

Similar with Die Cryptocurrency Vitalik put a tweet that said Die would be a funny crypto currency to

have and somebody created die protocol and it made a 500 x.

So these are ways of getting money fast, but you have to have cotton in at the beginning.

You have to be connected.

You have to be within the de Gen community in cryptocurrency to know about these unless you have got

vitalik tweets with notifications on.

So every time he tweets, if he tweets some kind of keyword, which is unusual, somebody will make

a cryptocurrency about it.

So now that you know these two effective ways of making 100 X, what I will say is that the slow but

easy way is the one that I would typically recommend to anybody, right?

It's the easiest because you don't have to react so quickly.

All right.

With these fast but risky ways, you've got to be very, very quick.

You've got to be agile.

You've got to be willing to bite and sell with no emotion and know exactly when to do it.

And that can be very difficult.

Whereas with the super easy way, it's much calmer.

You wait over a period of years, you invest when the market's low, you sell when the market's high,

and you've got a long period of watching your investments increase without having to worry about it

going to zero because it can very easily happen with meme coins, they can go to zero very quickly.

But if you get into something with strong fundamentals, it should last.

### 31. Analysis of Best Performing Coins in 2021: What to look for when Investing?

What coins perform the best in a bull market.

I have analyzed across the top 1000 cryptocurrencies a sample size of 100 coins.

And what I have done is I have looked at the various qualities of these cryptocurrencies to charter

why they did so well.

So how I have got it presented is in multiplier order.

And as you can see at the very top we have got Shiba Inu with a 511,000 multiplier.

That means if you put $1 into Shiba at this price on the 1st of November 2020 and then you sold it at

the all time high in 2021, you'd have made $511,000, so $1 would have turned into $511,000.

This is the most incredible multiplier that has ever been seen in cryptocurrency, but how could you

have predicted it?

What are the qualities that make something more pump a bull in a new bull market?

This will set you up hopefully for the next bull market, whenever that should come.

Hopefully it begins at the end of 2024 and runs through 2025 to maybe 2026.

So let me just take you through this spreadsheet.

So obviously what we've got on the left hand side is all of the different coins that I have analyzed.

Were they exposed to a bull market before?

It's either going to be no yes or partly so no means it released after the 2017 bull market?

Yes.

Will mean it was around for the full duration of the bull market in 2017, partly means that it was

around for part of the bull market, so it was within bull investment.

So in the case of Decentraland, this came out two months before the bull market ended.

So it had two months of a bull market to have some price action.

So that's what bull market exposed means.

Then we've got age.

So what I've done with this is that I'm looking to see at what point were they created before the pivot

point?

So the 1st of November 2020 was the pivot point at which there was a confirmed bull market about to

happen.

Right?

So these were the prices just at that pivot point.

So what age were they before that pivot point?

So were they relatively new, like Shiba Inu, who was only three months old before that pivot point

cost, which was one year and three months.

So I wanted to see, does it matter how new you are coming into that bull market or could you have been

launched right at the beginning of that bear market type means?

What category does that cryptocurrency fall in?

Meme Metaverse Gaming Layer one.

Layer one DAG infrastructure layer two Privacy, ET cetera, etc. What position were they in at this

price and this market cap?

So at that pivot point, what position were they?

And this will help me determine were these coins that were already in the top 100 or were they outside

the top 100?

Because typically when people come to cryptocurrency, they invest in Bitcoin and Etherium because they're

the top two.

They're the most well known crypto currencies out there.

But the further down the ranking you go, are there better opportunities?

What was the volume?

So what money was going into and out of that cryptocurrency on this particular day?

What was the price as in the actual cryptocurrency price?

What was its market cap and then what price did it get to during 2021?

So 2021 was holistically a bull market year and then what was their multiplier from their price in November

to their all time high?

So the first things to cover is that I have made some headline observations from doing this analysis.

The first headline I have gotten from this analysis is, is that cryptocurrencies that are new to a

bull market do better.

So as I've got this in multiplier order, you can see that the ones that got the best multipliers have

mainly nose.

Okay, if we go down towards the bottom, you will start to see more yeses.

So yes, yes, yes, yes, yes, yes.

So these are coins in the top 100 that have been around for a while and they've been exposed to multiple

bull markets and as such, they actually produce the worst multiplier.

So as you can see, eight, nine, seven, six.

So the longer you've been around, the less multipliers you make in a new bull market.

Another shocking headline is, is that the coins that perform best were actually rank 500 or.

Our on coinmarketcap.

So the best performer, Shiba Inu, was actually ranked 1950 the fourth Most was ranked just outside

the 1000.

And then we've got 967 551 824 801 723.

So if we look at the the kind of top 20 here, we can see that the most predominant color is red, and

red basically means 50 to 1000.

Orange is 300 to 500.

Yellow is 200 to 300.

And green is top 100.

All right.

So you can see that the ones that perform the best are the ones that are lowest down.

So it's red, then orange, then yellow, then green.

There's only two greens really in the top top 19 here.

So that just goes to show you that actually the best multipliers come from being low down the ranks,

therefore a higher ceiling from where they are in terms of price.

Another headline observation is, is that actually single narrative cryptocurrencies have the best multipliers,

so layer ones are exposed to multiple narratives.

Every time a single narrative cryptocurrency does well, it makes the layer one that they belong to

have more value, but actually means gaming and Metaverse were responsible for the three biggest pumps

in 2021.

So you can see that obviously at an extreme level we've got 511,000, but we've also got 911 x 580 X,

So these were single narrative plays.

Axie Infinity is a game that was a gaming trend in 2021 and Axie Infinity went from a price of $0.18

to $164, thus equaling 911 x, which is unfathomable to be honest.

And then we had VR, which was our metaverse play.

So when Mark Zuckerberg announced that Facebook would be rebranding to Metta to create a Metaverse,

what happened was, is that all cryptocurrencies that were virtual reality based, including Seek VR,

went up dramatically and of course VR went up 580 X, So it went from being a quarter of a cent to $1.19.

So if you'd have put $1,000 into this, that would have turned that $1,000 into $580,000.

So single narratives do better than layer ones.

The false headline is, is that it looks apparent that most of the cryptocurrencies that have achieved

100 X did have a lot of zeros in it.

So for instance, Shiba had ten zeros before the one CO cost had four zeros, a03003 zeros, two zeros.

So what this means is, is that people who invest in these feel like they get a lot psychologically

for their money.

All right.

Whether or not the market cap is is high or not, people feel like, oh, if I put $100 into this,

I'm going to get thousands of tokens versus if you put $100 into Bitcoin, you get 0.01 of a Bitcoin.

So you get hardly anything for your money.

But people think, Oh, if I put $100 into this, I get millions of Shiba Inu by putting $100 into this.

So they feel that when they've got like 2 million coins on their wallet, they're thinking, God, if

this goes to a dollar, I'm a multimillionaire.

So it's a psychological feelgood factor of investing in something that's got a lot of zeros in it.

And you'll see that the ones that in the dollars don't do so well.

So there's only two that are in the dollars here.

So we've got Solana, which was $1.44, and we have got Ruben nomics, which was for 62.

So these are the only two amongst these 20 that gained 100 X or more in the bull market of 2021.

And if we go down to the bottom, then we can see not only do we see more of the higher ranked cryptocurrencies

not doing so well, but you also see the bigger prices.

So you see Monero $126.

Bitcoin $13,000.

Litecoin $55 file coin $31.

So there's more dollar values here.

Whereas if you go to the top, the ones that perform really well is more sense or quarter of a cents

or fractions of a dollar, and that's why they do really well.

Another thing to note is, is that volume is a good indicator of future potential veracity.

Which you can see was 1.9 million in market cap and the volume was nearly half a million.

So the volume to market cap ratio was 4 to 1.

So the market cap was worth four times more than the volume, but that shows high relevance.

So this also did really well.

So if volume is a good precursor to future success, So when you are deciding what to invest in, the

considerations for the next bull market should be that newer non bull market exposed coins do best in

the next bull market coins outside of the top 100, especially 500 below perform the best out of these

newer coins.

Single narrative cryptocurrencies offer more multipliers than layer ones, but it is more risky.

You have to be somewhat of a predictor of trends.

You have to understand where is the energy, Where is the overall movement of the market going?

From a technological point of view, it couldn't have been easy to predict that metaverse was going

to become a big thing.

So that was a huge win for anybody who was in Seek VR.

So if you're investing in something that can only pump in a single narrative, then you have to have

a lot of patience to wait.

And it can offer better multipliers than investing in Layer one.

But if that trend doesn't come, you don't actually get the big multipliers.

Then psychological value of zeros within the price preceding any number achieves more multipliers because

people feel much happier psychologically investing in something that gives them plentiful amounts of

coins in return.

With $100, you couldn't buy a single affair.

You couldn't buy a single Bitcoin, but you can buy millions of a meme coin.

So the psychological value of zero is really helps achieve multipliers.

And then volume is an effective precursor for the bull market.

So whatever you're interested in, whatever you're looking at, if it's a very low ranked coin, then

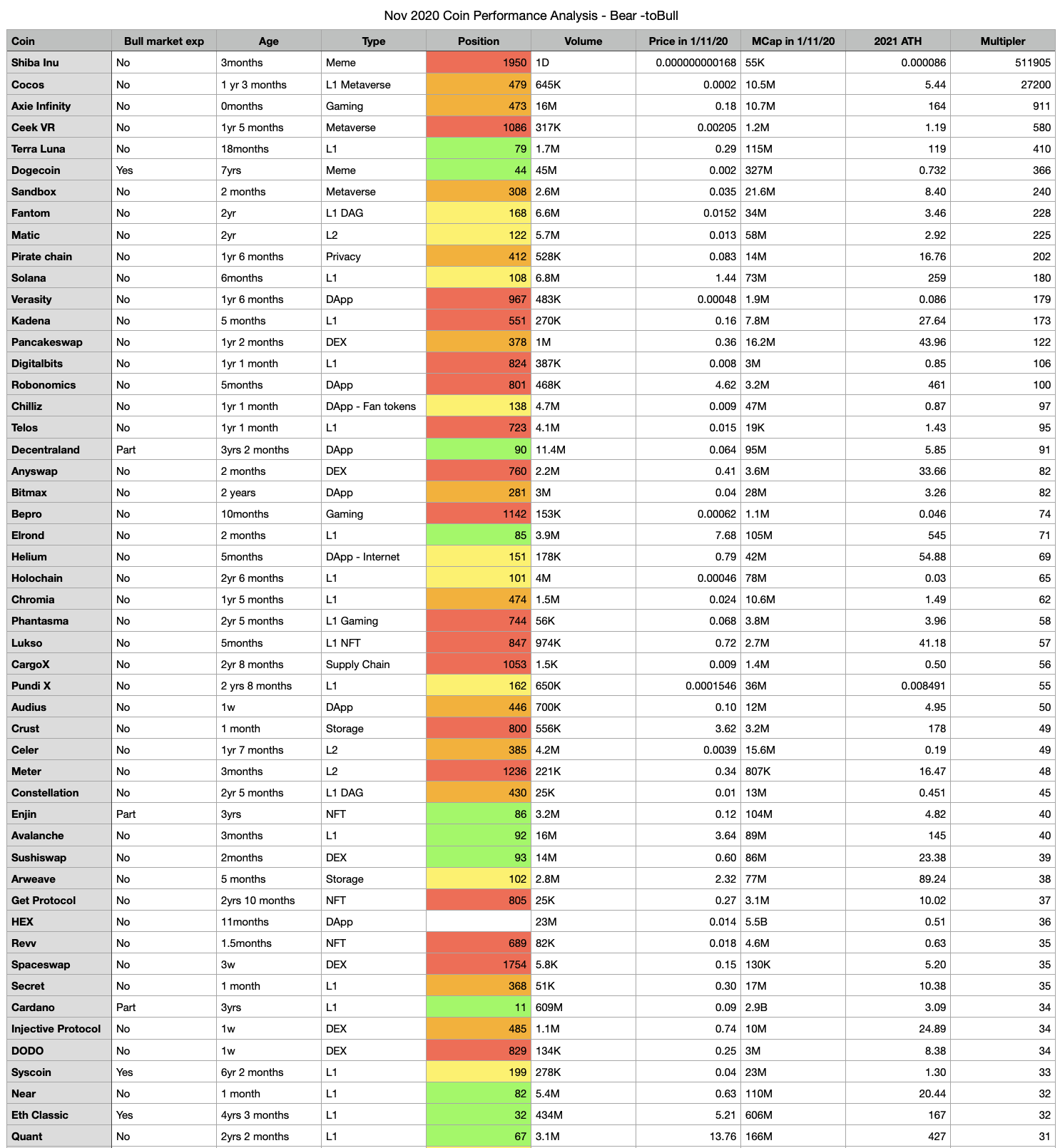
make sure that it's at least got very good volume because that could be a precursor to how well it will

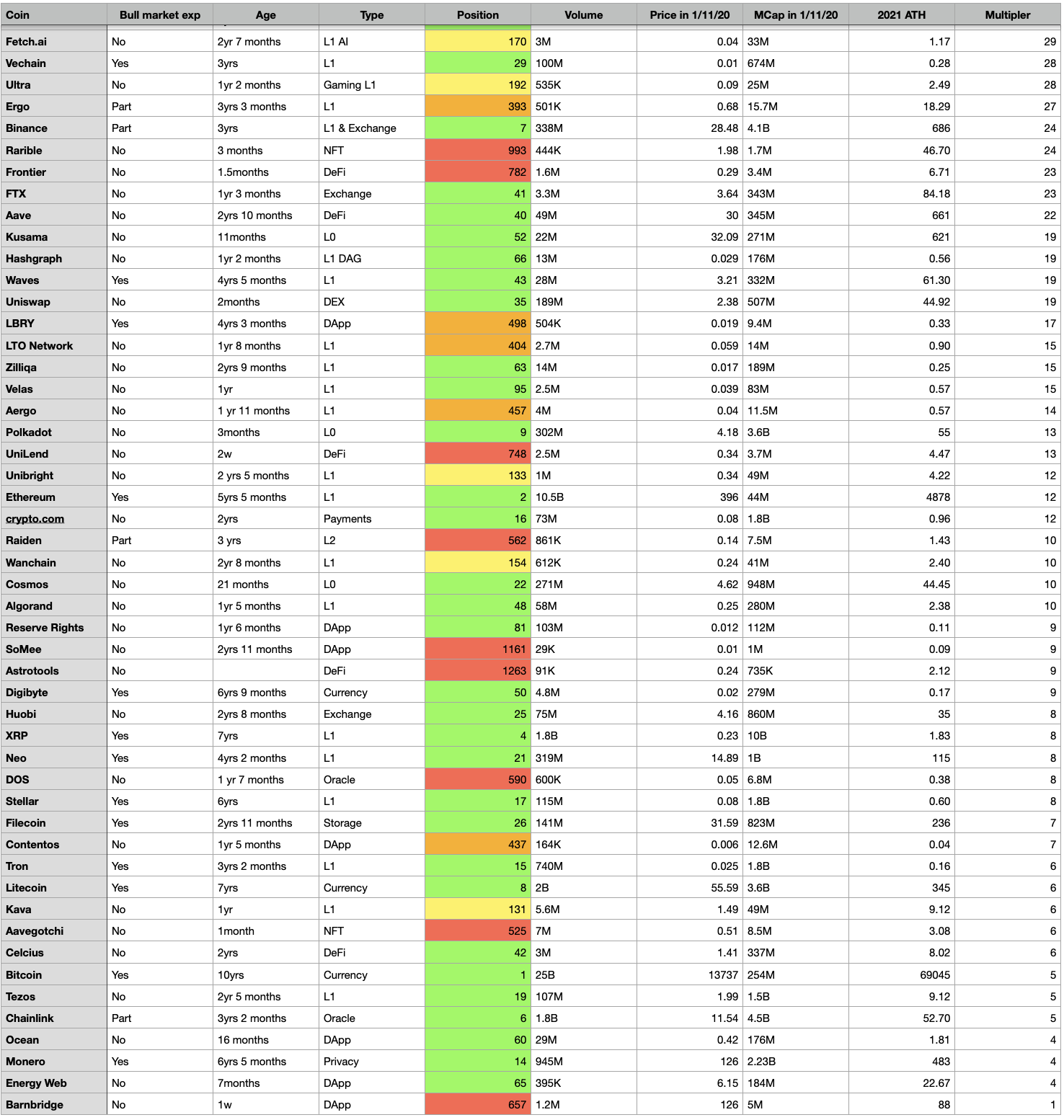
do in a bull market.

### 32. Analysis Spreadsheet In Full

Analysis Spreadsheet In Full

Here is the full spreadsheet of the 100 Coins I analysed (as explained in previous lecture)





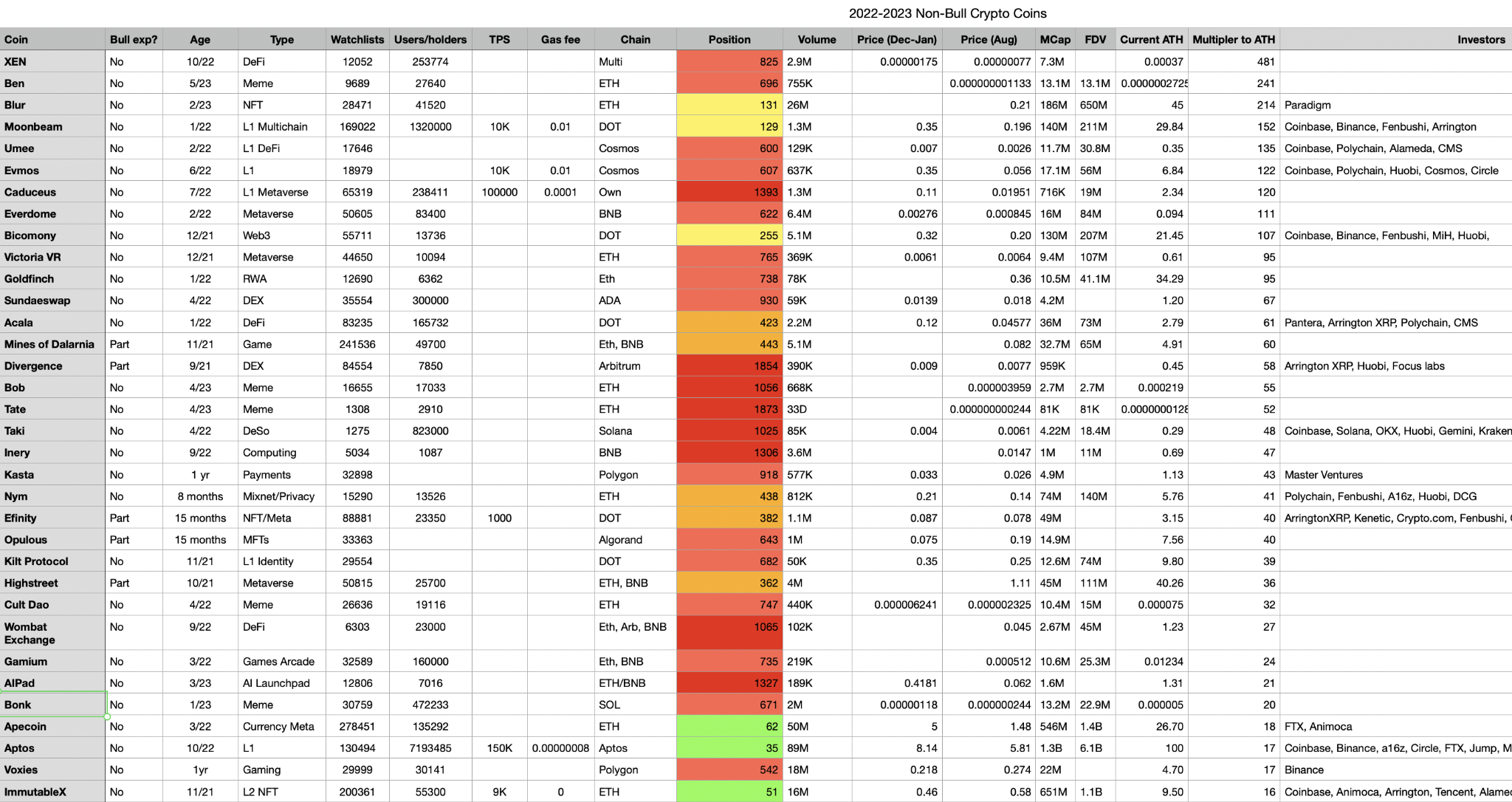
### 

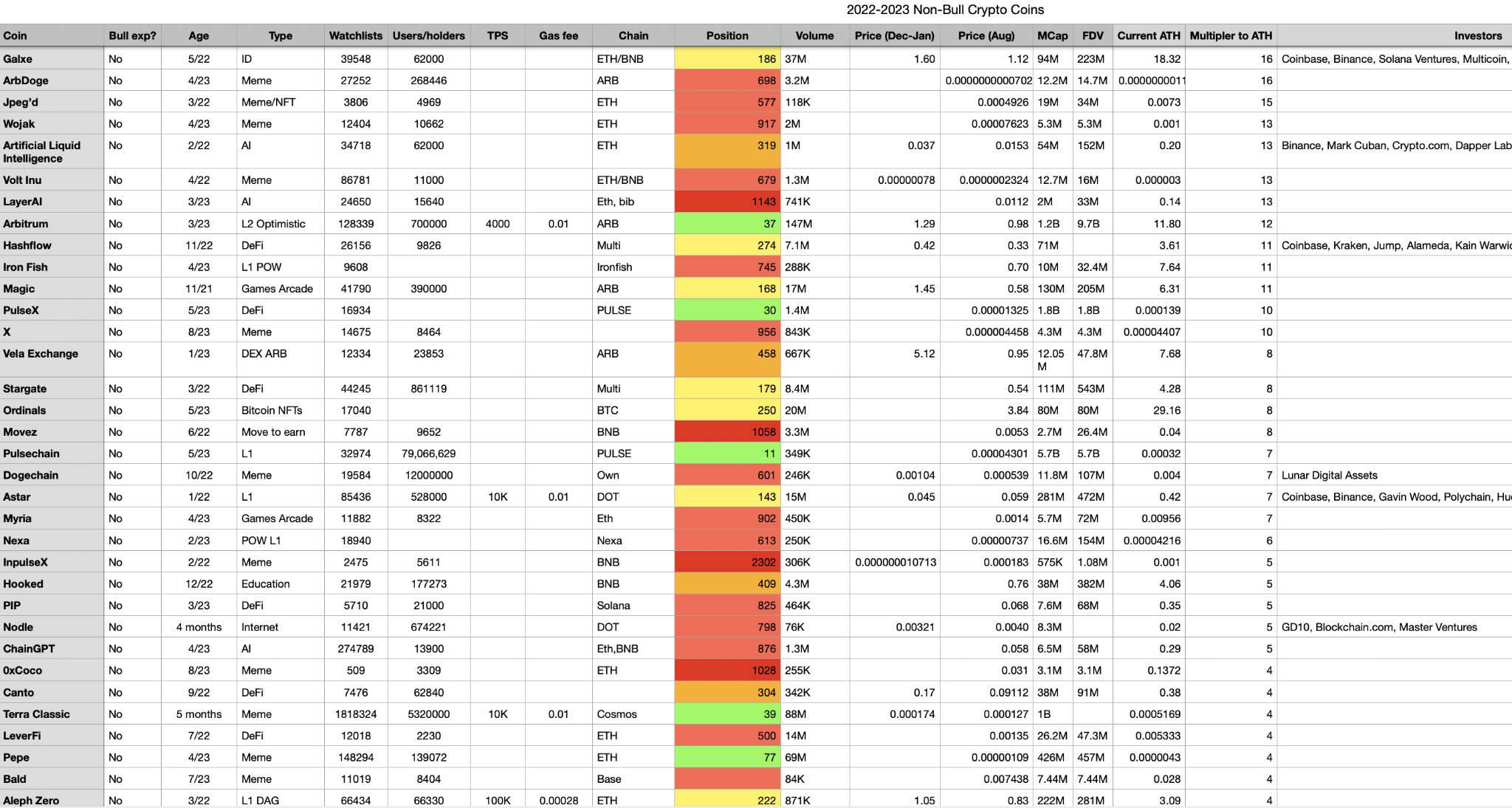
### 33. NEW Coins for the next bull market with metrics!

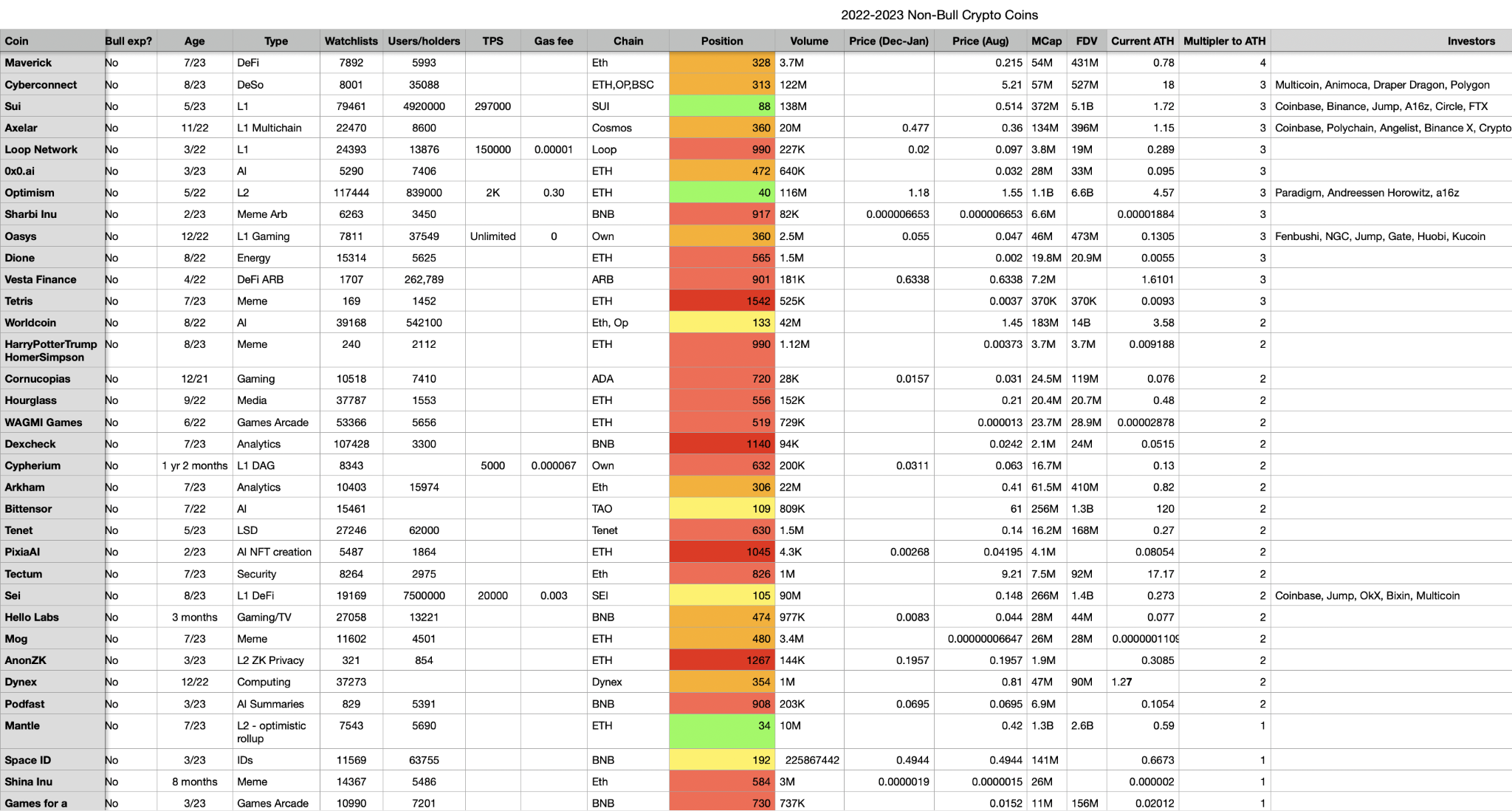
NEW Coins for the next bull market with metrics!

Below are my spreadsheet screenshots (as of August 2023) of New, non-bull market exposed Coins that I am considering for the next bull market.

This provides you with a whole series of data and research by which you can make decisions from or research further.









# **Section 5**: Understanding Cryptocurrency, Bitcoin & Alt coins!

### 34. What are Cryptocurrencies?

So now I'm going to try and answer as best possible this very broad question What is cryptocurrency?

Well, the easiest way to put it is it's digital cash.

It exists only in the form of digitization.

So it's not created to be physical.

It's not something you can touch, you can smell, you can give to somebody else and therefore spend.

It is purely digital and all transactions happen via what's called a blockchain.

Now it's decentralized, which means it's independent of banks.

You own it.

That's the difference.

You own the bank doesn't own it, you own it.

You are the central entity when it comes to ownership of your money.

Now it's stored on the digital ledger, which is known as the blockchain.

The blockchain is a record of all transactions, and basically there is a distributed network of people

running computers which act as the consensus.

So all of these digital computers will agree that you have sent money from one party to another, and

then that transaction will happen.

Now you own that cryptocurrency based on a private key.

That private key is what owns the cryptocurrency.

So decentralization is at the forefront of cryptocurrency.

So it removes third parties.

This gives more trust.

How much can you trust banks?

The trust in banks and centralized entities is dwindling and going.

So let's just have a look at two main central entities, banks and Facebook.

Two different types of centralized entity.

But they show why you may not want to trust them.

So with a bank, when you are storing money in a bank, they use that money to trade.

They use your money to trade it and make more money.

Facebook, they say you own your data, but actually they own your data and they can sell it to third

parties, which is something that they have been accused of.

So really, these entities lie to you.

They make you think one thing, but actually in another aspect, they're doing something else.

So with decentralization, you own the asset.

Third parties are removed and third parties can't take a nice chunk out of your money.

Now there are two types of supply when it comes to cryptocurrencies.

So, for instance, Bitcoin has 21 million coins out there.

So there's 21 million that are going to be eventually mined.

So how it's mined is through miners.

So they are mining the supply, they are creating the supply on a daily basis and then there's minted

supplies.

So when you are creating a cryptocurrency, generally you decide what the maximum amount is and you

can produce it on demand.

Now, cryptocurrency in itself is viewed as an asset class.

I've spoken about it as an innovation in technology, but really many people view it as an asset class.

So like the stock market stocks, stocks are an asset class.

You invest in them.

Hopefully the price goes up.

And they are expendable.

That is one of the myths of cryptocurrency.

People don't know you can actually spend your cryptocurrency.

So if you've got three Bitcoin, you can spend that currency online and there are more and more mechanisms

being developed where you can spend it using a cryptocurrency debit card, and that converts the Bitcoin

into fiat currency, which is basically what is currently known as money fiat currency.

So that's dollars, pounds, euros, yen.

All of the different currencies is known as fiat.

And that is how merchants accept money, which is in the form of fiat.

So when you are spending it at the point of sale, although it comes out of your debit card as a bit

of bitcoin spent, how the merchant gets it is fiat.

So it's a perfect system.

It's the system integrating with what's out there at the moment.

You can see it works.

So that is cryptocurrency.

In essence, it's digital cash that is decentralised, stored.

You own it via a ledger.

So I hope that that has explained it and I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 35. What is Bitcoin, and why do you need to know about it?

Right.

Let's now go into detail.

What is Bitcoin?

Bitcoin is the original and main cryptocurrency.

Bitcoin was the first created cryptocurrency.

It was like almost like the proof of concept that digital cash and a digital cash system can work that

can work.

Exclusive of banks.

Now, Bitcoin was actually thought up in 2009.

The white paper was created.

The White Paper is essentially the blueprint of what the project is all about.

Bitcoin was the first one, so it's the original and it's the main cryptocurrency.

It's classed as digital gold.

It continuously and consistently appreciates in value.

It has been worth nearly $20,000 per bitcoin.

So seen as gold, as cryptocurrency, as an asset class thrives, so does Bitcoin because it's the original

and it's the one to use to buy everything.

Which brings me on to the next point.

It's the main buying cryptocurrency for altcoins.

All coins is every other coin than Bitcoin.

Bitcoin is the original and everything else is an altcoin, even a theory.

It's an altcoin.

Now, in order to buy any of the old coins, one of the main buying cryptocurrencies is Bitcoin.

So if you wanted to buy it, you can't buy it with dollars or pounds.

You buy it with Bitcoin or Ethereum or Bitcoin cash or Litecoin.

But Bitcoin is the main buying one.

You can buy most cryptocurrencies if not all cryptocurrencies.

With Bitcoin, it's the one most likely to be adopted by mainstream.

Why?

Because it's the one that at the moment has the largest amount of transactions on a daily basis.

It's the most well known and therefore the most credible.

Therefore, investing in Bitcoin is a relatively safe investment because it's going to last whilst everything

else has the potential to fail because bitcoin has been around for the longest time and it's the most

valuable and also it's the one that's got the most consistent growth versus all of the other altcoins.

All of the other altcoins.

They experience probably higher volatility, which means it can make significantly better gains.

You can get significant multipliers on your investment with altcoins, but you can also get very significant

losses with altcoins.

Or as Bitcoin is stable, a lot of the wealthy people invest in Bitcoin for the future and therefore

it holds its value and grows in value.

So that is what Bitcoin is the main cryptocurrency, the most credible cryptocurrency and digital gold.

### 36. What is Ethereum (King of Alt Coins) and why is it No2 most valuable?

What is Ethereum?

So now I've spoken about Bitcoin.

I'm going to speak about the second most expensive cryptocurrency, because this is what has led to

the technological revolution that we see today.

This is what has led to so many ICOs, so many projects coming into cryptocurrency.

It's the Etherium.

So what is the theory?

Ethereum is the main coin, the second most valuable coin to Bitcoin.

It's a currency of value.

I can send you a theory.

And Ethereum today is worth $600.

So if I send you one Ethereum, that's essentially $600 I've just sent you.

So it's a currency of value.

It's also a way in which to buy altcoins.

So you can buy most of the altcoins with Etherium as well as Bitcoin.

And it's a way of investing in ICOs.

So ICOs are the initial coin offering.

I'll be speaking about them later, but that's the early stage cryptocurrencies.

And typically an early stage cryptocurrency will build their project with Ethereum software and on the

Ethereum blockchain.

So in order to invest in that, you need Ethereum so you can invest in ICOs.

With Ethereum, it's a software platform.

It's not just a currency, it's not just a blockchain, it's a software platform.

You can create software, you can create services for everybody out there, and they are decentralized

services.

This is what dapps are, dapps are decentralized applications.

So if you look at the App Store, like getting online, Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, Facebook

as the app on your phone, that is an app.

But Dapp is a decentralized version of the app.

So decentralized application and then platforms.

So platforms like Facebook, social networking platforms, you can create platforms like that.

Using Ethereum, you can create your social networks, you can create all of the services out there

are software platforms.

So if you wanted to create a lending service where if you lend somebody money, that person then has

to pay you back, you can create that with Ethereum smart contracts is what Ethereum has also brought

to the market.

Smart contracts are essentially a software that runs on its own.

It runs in an automated way, and you create it so that a contract is created.

So if somebody gives money, the smart contract will return something in return.

So that's how a contract normally works.

It's something for something.

So smart.

Contracts are an automated software.

Smart contracts are what tends to run when you are investing some money and you get a result on the

back, you get a result.

As a consequence, you will get the output that you have paid for.

That is what smart contracts are, and it allows for all these projects to build smart contracts into

their platform so that they can work automated.

It doesn't need human control.

And this smart contract is what enables this decentralization to continue because it removes a third

party.

And then it's a crowdfunding platform for ICOs.

ICOs can get funding for their ideas using Ethereum.

So like I said earlier, you invest in ICOs with Ethereum and ICOs receive that funding so they can

build the platform with that Ethereum.

So that is what Ethereum is.

That's why Ethereum is a great investment and why it has returned such amazing multiples on people's

investment because ICO, this was $0.28, now it's worth $600.

And you can see the reason why, because I've brought so much to cryptocurrency with Bitcoin, you couldn't

create a software service like you can with a theory.

So that's why Ethereum is so important.

And while you will hear a lot of it in your journey in cryptocurrency.

### 37. UPDATE AUG 2022: Why Ethereum Will be the Number 1 Crypto in 3 years

What is the Ethereum merge?

Ethereum has existed since 2015, but it's about to undergo a change that is incredibly significant

and changes the trajectory of this asset for the future.

And this is important to note prior to the merge.

So what is the Ethereum merge?

The Ethereum merge is Ethereum switching from a proof of work cryptocurrency, i.e. a cryptocurrency

that requires miners to generate new Ethereum to proof of stake where you need to stake Ethereum on

an Ethereum wallet in order to maintain the network.

So it is completely changing how Ethereum is issued into the world.

So how does Ethereum change as a result of the merge?

Well, we can see it through how ETH is issued currently.

So currently 13,000 Ethereum are produced every day due to the mining of Ethereum and there are staking

rewards at present and this constitutes 1600 Ethereum being produced on a daily basis now as proof of

work is changed into proof of stake, it eradicates mining rewards completely.

This 13,000 new Ethereum is minted on a daily basis, is going to be stopped now as a result of the

1600, which will remain after the merge, there is going to be a burn of Ethereum.

So 1600 E plus is going to be burnt every day, therefore changing Ethereum into a deflationary asset

rather than an inflationary asset.

This is a process known as the triple halving.

So Bitcoin every four years has its mining rewards cut in half.

Therefore, the amount of Bitcoin going into circulation halves every four years and therefore less

bitcoin goes into circulation.

Now Ethereum is essentially going to have three elements to the halving, so reduced issuance plus burning

plus staking Ethereum.

So that takes Ethereum out of circulation, puts it in a staking wallet so that the people who are staking

Ethereum earn a reward on that.

So essentially the amount of Ethereum going on the open market is going to drastically halt.

Going into proof of stake is going to introduce sharding.

Sharding is a scalability process for the blockchain.

What happens is, is that you've got thousands, if not millions of transactions on a daily basis with

a highly utilized blockchain like Ethereum.

And that opens up scalability issues where you have to pay a lot in gas transactions to get your Ethereum

transaction fulfilled.

So what they are doing is they are now bringing in sharding that is going to take the transactions per

second of Ethereum from 35 to once it's developed 100,000 transactions per second.

So a drastic change.

Now, what sharding means is instead of having one central blockchain, doing all of the transactions

is you are splitting the blockchain into multiple chains and all of these chains get through all of

the transactions much quicker.

So sharding is going to change the game for Ethereum.

So not only is it going to be deflationary, but it's also going to be scalable, which is one of the

biggest problems Ethereum's had to date.

It's going to have deflationary and increased scarcity as a mechanism, so it's going to have negative

issuance per day.

So currently it's got 13,000 positive issuance, so it's going to be 13,000 every day of new Ethereum,

and that is going to be erased and it's going to be 1600.

It's going to be created for the miners, but over 1600 that is burned each day, therefore turning

Ethereum into a store of value.

So what has set Bitcoin apart from Ethereum is, is that Bitcoin is a store of value because it's got

a fixed supply and a lower inflation rate than a theory.

But now Etherium potentially becomes a better asset than Bitcoin because bitcoin is only a store of

value.

It's not really seen as a fast transaction.

Currency is not seen as a forward thinking technology because you can't build smart contract or decentralized

dapps with Bitcoin that you can with Ethereum.

So Ethereum has got multiple utilities.

It's been deemed a commodity by the SEC, so it doesn't have any future regulatory problems of being

deemed a security by the SEC.

So as a result of that, Ethereum now becomes a very strong asset.

And my personal prediction is, is that come 2025, 2026, is that Ethereum will actually move ahead

of Bitcoin.

And I will explain a little bit more about why in a second Ethereum now becomes an ESG asset.

That means environmentally friendly, social and green now.

G assets are on the rise because of their sustainability.

Big businesses and investment banks want to offer this to clients because they have got sustainability

built into their system moving forward.

So the likelihood is, is that ESG assets are going to hit 53 trillion by 2025, which is a near 20%

increase on where it is today.

And Etherium, after the merge being a greener asset, is therefore going to be way more commercial

and investable for big institutions.

Now, in 2021, there was a massive drop in the price of Bitcoin because Tesla said they would no longer

accept Bitcoin over climate concerns.

So because of the use of fossil fuels in Bitcoin mining, Tesla decided to drop Bitcoin as a method

of payment for their assets.

So this shows you how big a businesses want to be involved and want to be seen to be involved in more

green, sustainable infrastructures, which is what Ethereum is looking to be.

And this commercial element is going to potentially give it more of an advantage of investing in it

rather than Bitcoin.

And then the last reason why this is very important to know is because the Ethereum merge now gives

a very investable asset as a second chance for institutions.

The real best time to have gone into Bitcoin was in the period of 2011 to 2013.

Now institutions were too scared of Bitcoin.

Certain institutions may have been buying discreetly, but certainly I would say institutions missed

out on the growth of Bitcoin.

Ethereum is ten x lower than the price of Bitcoin and therefore the best opportunity for institutions

to have that second bite of the cherry because they missed it with Bitcoin.

So in the future they are going to be Bitcoin ETFs.

They're are undoubtedly going to be Etherium ETFs, because essentially all that needs to be done is

a copy and paste of the particular instrument over to Ethereum and therefore opening out Ethereum to

more institutional investors, therefore making Ethereum a better asset for gains than Bitcoin, and

therefore Ethereum having rapid growth over the coming future.

And there are going to be more and more institutional offerings.

BlackRock have recently created a Bitcoin fund, which they are doing in partnership with Coinbase,

and it's very, very likely that in the future you will see the same kind of institutional adoption

coming for Ethereum.

So Ethereum I think is a very strong play for the number one crypto asset in the future of the crypto

space.

### 38. What are Alt coins?

What are the coins?

So all coins are any cryptocurrency other than Bitcoin.

They are less well known and less well established.

They're not as old as Bitcoin.

They are newer.

Some are newer than others.

Ethereum is now about four or five years old.

And then you've got ones like, let's say Chain, which is literally a week old.

So you've got a broad mix, but it's every coin other than Bitcoin.

Now these can be bought with Bitcoin, Ethereum, Bitcoin, cash, Litecoin and Tether or USD.

Usdc is essentially a stablecoin.

It pretty much stays all the time at $1.

All right, so it's like the digital replacement to fiat currency.

If you didn't want to invest in something that goes up and down, you put it in tether and it stays

still.

Now it's got potentially higher volatility and multipliers than Bitcoin.

As I've already explained, Bitcoin is now $7,600.

It requires a lot of money being invested in it to make it go up higher.

However, a coin that is worth $0.01 or 0.0000 $0.01 is therefore much more likely to achieve higher

multiples.

So if you buy something that's $0.01, it doesn't require a lot of money for it to go to $0.02 for it

to get a $0.10 to $0.20.

Now, if it goes from $0.01 to $0.20, that's 20 times multiplier.

So if you have put 1000 into a coin that is worth $0.01 and it becomes $0.20, you've just made $20,000

in that transaction.

Now in order for that to happen with Bitcoin, it would need to be worth $140,000 for you to make 20

times your investment.

Therefore, there's greater multipliers with the coins and every coin has its own community.

Bitcoin has its set of evangelists, its community, the people that really promote Bitcoin and tell

everybody about it.

And every altcoin has its own community.

You can go on Telegram for any cryptocurrency, for instance, cork chain, which I just explained to

you, it's got 80,000 people in their community.

So every single cryptocurrency has its own fan base.

And that's the exciting thing with cryptocurrencies, is that when you get involved in it, when you

buy your first cryptocurrency, if you haven't already, you become a fan of that cryptocurrency.

You become part of the community.

You help that cryptocurrency grow.

So it's all fun in cryptocurrency and in all coins.

So I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 39. MULTIPLIERS: Why you are here!

So why is cryptocurrency hot?

Why is it being written about so much?

Why am I creating a course on it?

Why is it a technological revolution?

Well, the main reason is because of freedom.

There's no need for a third party anymore.

So we've got services like banks, services like the government.

These are third party centralized entities that you do transactions through.

This is removing them so that you have the freedom to do what you want, put data on a platform that

you want and you own that data and there is no one managing it.

So there's all these rules and regulations like for instance, on YouTube the other day I put video

on YouTube and they took it off YouTube.

Eventually I got it reinstated, but at that point they took it off.

I was thinking, Well, the reason why they've taken off is because there's an overlord, there's a

third party, there's a central authority that's decided that video shouldn't be on there.

And then they took it off.

And that left me in a position where I don't have the freedom, I don't have control.

I can't do anything until that centralized entity makes a decision in my favor.

But with a decentralized service, I can put something on a platform, I can put a video on a platform,

and nothing can be done about it because there's no central authority.

So it's freedom gives freedom to the people.

Volatility.

This is why everybody comes to cryptocurrency in the first place.

There's a there's a saying in cryptocurrency, come for the gains, stay for the technology.

When people actually learn about cryptocurrency and learn about the innovations or the freedoms being

created, they stay.

But the thing that brings them in is the multipliers.

It's the volatility.

It's making significant gains on your investment returns, on your investment.

It's innovation.

It's innovating.

It's changing how banking and payments are done.

It's changing how software platforms are run with their, you know, central authorities that decide

what's what and what the rules and regulations and all of that.

And it is changing currency.

It's changing how currency is controlled, how currency is managed, who is owned by and how it's transacted.

It's changed the system.

It's created an alternative system which is likely to grow and grow and become part of mainstream.

And it's early and new.

It's like the dot com era.

Like I've said, you are early.

If you are watching me now in 2018 and even 2019, you are still early to the party.

Only 1% of people generally in the population are in cryptocurrency.

1%.

Now, eventually that's going to go to 20 to 30 to 40 to 50.

And at the moment you're still in that 1%.

So it's early.

It's like the dotcom boom.

The boom hasn't really started, the bubble is still growing.

So this is why cryptocurrency is so hot right now.

### 40. The HARSH RISKS of Cryptocurrency!

Why is cryptocurrency not hot?

Why is it that certain people, when you talk to them about cryptocurrency, they're like, Oh, I don't

like the sound of that.

Well, let's go through it in this chapter.

So the volatility, the significant and fast ups and downs.

So let me just give you an example of a conversation I had recently.

So in December, Bitcoin went up to $20,000.

I got into Bitcoin when it was 1200 dollars.

Now, over the dinner table, when I say that I own some Bitcoin, they will say, Oh, that thing that

goes up to $20 and the next day it could be worth zero or it could be worth $100 or $200.

So it's the volatility.

It's scary because you put your money into something and if you put your money in at the wrong time,

you could lose it.

So because of those significant fast and fast ups and downs, it's the beauty, but it's also the beast

of cryptocurrency where you can get significantly burned.

It's unreliable and unpredictable.

You know, the way the price of cryptocurrencies are going up and down is unreliable.

You can't rely on certain crypto because he's to always go up.

This is why people get scared off and you go into communities and people are like, I'm selling, I'm

selling, I'm selling because unreliable people get in at $0.07, it goes up to $0.17.

And people are like, Yeah, yeah, yeah, yeah.

It's going up, it's going up.

And then the moment it goes down to $0.03, people are like, Oh, I hate it.

I'm selling it, I'm selling it.

So it's very, very unreliable.

It's very, very unpredictable.

Even Bitcoin, you know, when Bitcoin was at $17,000 back in December, people were thinking it's only

going to go up to 80,000 and $100,000 and all that.

And then it came right back down to where it is right now, 7600.

And so people hate that unpredictable nature.

They hate the ability to lose money so quickly.

The security infrastructure, it's not so it's not developed yet.

The cryptocurrency infrastructure is not yet developed.

There are hacks happening all the time, scams happening all the time, where people are losing their

cryptocurrency because they go to a malware website, they go to a website that contains a virus, or

they accidentally give their their details to a phishing site, which is like one of these websites

that you go to thinking it's the real one.

You enter your password, you give them your password, they then go to the real website and take your

money out and all sorts.

There's all sorts of security flaws in cryptocurrency right now, but something that is immutable is

the blockchain.

The blockchain contains the record of all of the cryptocurrencies owned, so you will own it.

Really.

The problem is, is when you are accidentally or inadvertently or mistakenly giving your private keys

to someone else so they own it and you don't own it.

So the security infrastructure needs to develop so that it takes out the hacks.

It takes out the scams, it takes out the spam.

I think gambling people look at cryptocurrency as like a sophisticated form of gambling.

Now, as much as I give you a a criteria by which you can assess a cryptocurrency and look at it for

its long term potential, it's still gambling in one form or another.

You're investing your money, hoping that it will keep on returning.

Returning value.

Returning value.

Keep on delivering and delivering as a project.

However, some don't.

Some go bust.

Some just disappear.

In which case is gambling.

Because you could lose your money in an instant.

In an instant.

So because of the speculative nature of it, people are speculating.

For instance, Bitcoin is worth $50,000.

They speculate it, so they buy it up.

And because of that speculative value and sometimes it's not based on real, tangible businesses, yet

people see it as a form of gambling.

You're putting your money in, hoping you'll get a return, but sometimes you could lose it.

So that's why cryptocurrency is not hot.

But I'm hoping that the more you get involved in this world, that you will see that everything can

survive and also see that a lot of the people in the market are sensitive.

So when they have invested in something, they're all bullish.

At first, bullish means they're positive.

They're positive about buying, and then they become bearish, which means they get negative.

They want to sell.

And that is a reason why a lot of cryptocurrencies fail is because they fail to keep their holders and

their community happy and satisfied.

So anyway, I'm hoping that over time you will learn to identify that this is still the beauty of cryptocurrency,

is that you've got these features that allow you to make a lot of money and if you get out of the right

time, then you have a lot of money.

So I think that's helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 41. Fiat Vs Satoshi Prices of Cryptocurrencies

Okay.

Now we are going to talk about something that's a little bit more advanced, just to push you a little

bit, to challenge you a little bit.

Now, when we look at cryptocurrencies, the traditional way in which it's displayed on Coinmarketcap

is in USD.

So US dollars.

Now you can have this show it in whatever currency you really want to.

However, there are other ways of looking at this.

So there's Fiat, which is USD, or you can look at it in Satoshis.

So if we look at the BTC price of everything, you will see, all of a sudden everything looks different.

Okay, so let me explain what satoshis are.

So the person who founded Bitcoin is called Satoshi Nakamoto.

And so the way in which a Bitcoin is looked at from a price perspective is called SATs.

So instead of dollars, it's SATs, right?

So Bitcoin is the bitcoin price and everything else is expressed in SATs.

So you can see here that Etherium is 7.8 million SATs.

Now, if we go to the bottom of this, then you can see that drop.

L, for instance, is 91 SATs.

So while you will occasionally see in cryptocurrencies, people talk about things in its SATs value

rather than its fiat value.

So people will say, Oh, it's 8100 SATs at the moment.

So if we have a look at the exchange, so this is where you buy cryptocurrency.

I'll show you how you can buy it here in a second.

But as you can see here, this is silica.

Silica is a etherium like cryptocurrency.

It allows people to build software.

And this is expressed in SATT.

So you can see the last price here is 1665 SATs, otherwise known as $0.13.

But on other exchanges, you won't see the sense.

You will just see the SATs.

So that is how you understand what this number is.

It's like this is the Bitcoin price satoshis.

Now we go back to Coinmarketcap.

You can also see that ether price.

So this is the Etherium price.

So for ether you will see it's worth one Etherium.

Everything else is in ether.

E t h e r ether.

So as you can see, this is 111,000 ether.

If we go down and look at Tron, 9000 ether.

So you can see the difference in how it's expressed.

Now, you may think, well, why is something that is, you know, 2 million ether almost as high as

something that's 48,000 ether.

Well, it all comes down to the market cap and as you can see, it's all done by market cap, but that

is the ether price and each of them has its own price.

So XRP, this is Ripple.

This is another cryptocurrency that can be used to buy other cryptocurrencies.

You can see this has gone ex up value.

So this introduces you to two different ways of looking at value of a cryptocurrency.

Now, why is this relevant?

Well, the reason why it's relevant is because sometimes in USD you are making a gain.

So sometimes if Etherium goes up to 1200 dollars, that is essentially a2x gain in fear.

However, this is this is based on the price of Bitcoin at that particular time.

So if Bitcoin stays the same, you have also two X on Saturday value as well.

But Bitcoin is constantly moving.

So if Bitcoin is 10,000 worth $10,000 and Ethereum has gone to 1200, the fiat value is the Etherium

has gone up twice in fiat value.

But in Satoshi it will have gone up maybe 1.6 because Bitcoin has gone up.

So as Bitcoin goes up or down, the value of every cryptocurrency changes.

Now this is only relevant if you care about the bitcoin value of things.

Okay, so if you are looking to get rich in fiat, so if you are looking to put 1000 into a coin and

make 1000 x, then that is a fiat gain.

You don't care about the gain because you've just made $1,000,000 and that is what counts.

However, if you are wanting to be richer in Bitcoin and the people that are whales in this game and

buy whales, I mean, really rich people, they want to get richer and richer and richer in Bitcoin.

They want to own more and more Bitcoin.

So what they are hoping for is that they get a higher SATs multiplier than a higher fiat multiplier,

so they don't care if they go to X in fiat.

What they care about is do they get a2x in satoshis and if they do, that means they can buy more Bitcoin.

And that's the real goal of a lot of whales in this game.

They want to buy more and more Bitcoin and they want to be Bitcoin rich rather than fiat rich.

So it's not a decision you have to make ever, and it's not something you have to think about now.

But you may want to decide that as cryptocurrency gets more and more relevant, as it becomes more and

more mainstream, that the value of cryptocurrency is actually higher than the value of fiat in your

personal opinion.

And you probably want to get richer in Bitcoin.

So I hope that's explained it in a simple way as possible.

It is something to get your head around when you hear it.

The first time may not make a lot of sense, but it makes more and more sense the more involved in cryptocurrency

you get.

So I hope that's helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 42. Coins Vs Tokens - What is the difference?

While we are on the subject of challenging you, I am going to be telling you the difference between

coins and tokens.

Now, as you get more and more invested in cryptocurrencies, you do more research.

You will see there's a difference between coins and tokens.

So currencies exist in cryptocurrency, and bitcoin is one of those currencies.

So it's looked at as a transfer of value between you and another person.

In which case every Bitcoin is a coin.

All right, so this circulating supply means there are 17 million coins out there that are to be bought

and to be mined.

So there's still another 4 million coins to be mined of Bitcoin, but they are coins.

Now, if we go to another one called Ethos, ethos is just an example of tokens.

So ethos is not a coin necessarily.

You will use ethos in the future as a utility token.

So what do I mean by utility token?

Well, essentially, ethos is creating a platform so that you can hold cryptocurrencies in a universal

wallet.

You can hold every cryptocurrency in one wallet.

And in order to use that platform, you need to have tokens.

A token is essentially what powers the network.

So let's say, for instance, it's a bit like when you go to an arcade machine in order to power up,

you need to put a coin in.

So a $1 coin or a £1 coin and then it will fire up and you can play it.

Same with ethos.

The token is to make it work.

So if you want to put a deposit into ethos, you will need an ethos token.

If you want to do a transaction via the Ethos platform, you will need an ethos token.

So these are tokens rather than coins.

You don't look as as me paying you in ethos, even though it is a transfer of value.

I can pay you ten ethos and that ten ethos will be worth $23, but it's mainly used as a utility token.

So what you will see is the difference is typically the currencies are known as coins and the dapps

where you use tokens to power them is tokens.

So that is the difference between coins and tokens.

So if you are investing in an ICO and it says to you, if you put in five Ethereum, you will get a

million tokens.

That's what it means.

So it doesn't normally call it coins unless it's a currency.

So I hope that that helps you and again, helps you understand the difference between coins and tokens.

And I'll see you in the next lecture.

### 43. Millionaires have been made with these Crypto Coins!

While we are on the subject of challenging you, I am going to be telling you the difference between

coins and tokens.

Now, as you get more and more invested in cryptocurrencies, you do more research.

You will see there's a difference between coins and tokens.

So currencies exist in cryptocurrency, and bitcoin is one of those currencies.

So it's looked at as a transfer of value between you and another person.

In which case every Bitcoin is a coin.

All right, so this circulating supply means there are 17 million coins out there that are to be bought

and to be mined.

So there's still another 4 million coins to be mined of Bitcoin, but they are coins.

Now, if we go to another one called Ethos, ethos is just an example of tokens.

So ethos is not a coin necessarily.

You will use ethos in the future as a utility token.

So what do I mean by utility token?

Well, essentially, ethos is creating a platform so that you can hold cryptocurrencies in a universal

wallet.

You can hold every cryptocurrency in one wallet.

And in order to use that platform, you need to have tokens.

A token is essentially what powers the network.

So let's say, for instance, it's a bit like when you go to an arcade machine in order to power up,

you need to put a coin in.

So a $1 coin or a £1 coin and then it will fire up and you can play it.

Same with ethos.

The token is to make it work.

So if you want to put a deposit into ethos, you will need an ethos token.

If you want to do a transaction via the Ethos platform, you will need an ethos token.

So these are tokens rather than coins.

You don't look as as me paying you in ethos, even though it is a transfer of value.

I can pay you ten ethos and that ten ethos will be worth $23, but it's mainly used as a utility token.

So what you will see is the difference is typically the currencies are known as coins and the dapps

where you use tokens to power them is tokens.

So that is the difference between coins and tokens.

So if you are investing in an ICO and it says to you, if you put in five Ethereum, you will get a

million tokens.

That's what it means.

So it doesn't normally call it coins unless it's a currency.

So I hope that that helps you and again, helps you understand the difference between coins and tokens.

And I'll see you in the next lecture.

# **Section 6:** Understanding 'Blockchain' - Why this Tech could replace banks!

### 44. What is a Blockchain?

What is the blockchain?

Blockchain is the underpinning technology of a cryptocurrency is what enables me to pay another person.

And for that transaction to be secure and for it to be decentralized and to not need a bank.

But it is very technical, so I'm going to try and put this as simply as possible.

So the blockchain is a growing list of records, so it's constantly growing.

There's more blocks added in seconds, in minutes, and the records are contained in a block, and each

block is linked in a chain by a hash cryptography.

It serves as an immutable digital ledger of data, various bits of data.

It's immutable, you can't edit it.

It's permanent.

Once the block has been complete and it's got its data, that data can never be changed.

And that's what's so powerful about a digital ledger.

So if you have the deed to your house containing a blockchain, nobody can steal that data and then

you can't prove it.

So it's always there and can be proved.

Now what data does the blocks contain?

So it contains by and large financial transactions.

So for instance, the Bitcoin blockchain is mainly a record of transaction.

So if I pay you one Bitcoin, you will receive one Bitcoin and one Bitcoin will leave my account and

that data is stored on the blockchain.

It also contains software transactions.

So let's say Facebook was actually attached to a blockchain.

So if you edited your profile, that data would then go into the blockchain and say, Michael edited

his profile and that information will be stored forever.

And then you've got documents.

So this could be any document, but particularly for you and for the future of blockchain when it comes

to official documents, say, for instance, the deed of your house.

Like I have said, a lot of the world still operates in written ledgers which could contain the deeds

to your house, which a local authority might have.

And what happens if, for whatever reason, a page gets lost out of the deeds?

Well, you're in trouble then, but having a permanent digital, immutable record of that deed means

that can never happen, and it's safe and secure.

So it can have a range of documents.

Now it's decentralised.

So what runs this blockchain is a load of nodes on a network.

So just imagine dot, dot, dot, dot, dot, dot, dot, dot, all linked together.

Those are nodes and they are individual computers.

They're all there as a peer to peer network.

So person to person network, right.

So it is random is distributed so people don't necessarily know each other, but there's a logic by

which they can agree and that is the consensus.

But they are essentially nodes and these are the people that have to agree with each other that such

a transaction has happened, and that is called the consensus protocol.

So how do they reach agreement?

What is the mechanism or the logic that enables nodes to agree with each other without having to know

each other?

So what happens is, is that they all get a record of the transaction and they will verify that I paid

you.

So let's say I'm Mike and you're John or Jane, right?

So it will.

So each of them will get a record of the transaction where one bitcoin leaves my account and one bitcoin

enters your account.

They will all get a record of that transaction and because it is essentially the same, they will reach

a consensus and because they are on the Bitcoin network, because they are mining, these are the people

that get that record.

And essentially it is all done by computer logic.

So that gives the speed because it happens very fast.

You've got all these nodes agreeing because they get the same information and then they reach consensus

that that has happened.

And also the security, if you had only one person verifying it, that person could have the wrong data,

in which case you may not receive that Bitcoin or that Bitcoin may come out of my account but not go

into your account and then get lost somewhere.

So you need consensus and an agreement between the nodes that the transaction has happened, whether

it's financial software or documents, and then a new block is created.

When the previous block has been completed, the chain moves onto the next block, a new block is created,

and that is how the chain works, and that is how the underpinning of technology, of cryptocurrencies

just continues to work because it's software and it doesn't rely on manual intervention.

And it just carries on.

The chain carries on.

### 45. What is the SHA256 Algorithm and how does it secure Bitcoin?

What is sha 256.

So sha 256 is the hash algorithm that protects the bitcoin blockchain.

The reason why it's immutable is because nobody can get into it and edit it because it's secured secured

by computational power.

So sha 256 is the bitcoin hashing algorithm.

It's never been cracked.

There are hash algorithms like MD5 that have been hacked and if you see a cryptocurrency saying they

use MD5 hash algorithm, don't trust it.

So SHA stands for secure hash algorithm and the t56 is the 256 bytes it takes up in memory.

Now it consists of 64 hexadecimal characters.

So hexadecimal means numbers and letters.

Letters, it's a2f and four numbers.

It's 0 to 9.

It's basically a digital fingerprint.

It's a unique identifier for each block.

So think about your thumb.

Obviously contains your thumbprint and that is unique to you.

It cannot be matched by anybody else.

No one else should have the exact same fingerprint as you, and that is used to verify who you are and

it's similar with the blocks.

So each block has its own fingerprint.

Now the block contains certain amounts of data, and I'm going to show you that in the next lecture.

So the block contains the block number, the nonce, the data that's contained in there, whether it's

financial software transactions or documents, the hash from the previous block and the present hash.

That is what's needed for a complete block now, minus need to solve the nonce part of that block.

They need to solve the nonce in order to create the current hash, and then that will complete the block

and it will protect it from hacks in the future, and it will protect the data and the transactions

happening within that block so it can move on to the next block and contain more transactions.

Now, in order to solve the nonce, miners are putting in tons of computational power into their mining

rig in order to solve this nonce.

And what happens is, is that creates a big network of computational power to protect Bitcoin.

All of these miners trying to solve the non supporting computational power into Bitcoin in order to

solve the puzzle.

Now, in order for a blockchain to be hacked, it would have to undergo a 51% attack.

So that means that over half of the network is attacking the actual block rather than protecting it

and trying to solve it.

So with all of these world's resources, I mean, there are hundreds, if not thousands of miners out

there in order to have enough power to hack, that system would take so much money, resources and hardware

in mining rigs to actually do so.

This is how it how it gains the protection and why Bitcoin has never been cracked and why there have

not been double spend.

So when I say double spend, what I mean is if I am sending you one bitcoin, then a hacker could essentially

double spend that one bitcoin and give himself one bitcoin.

So this is making sure only one transaction happens.

Double spend is why people use banks so that banks make sure that only that single transaction happens

and that there is no fraud and no one else is getting your money or double spending your money.

All right.

So this is a way in which it is protected, right?

So there we are.

That is the SHA256.

I hope that that is explained it as simply as possible.

And in the next lecture, I'm going to show you visually what that looks like.

### 46. How does Bitcoin Mining work?

What do blockchains look like?

What data does it contain and how does mining work to make the blockchain operate and complete blocks

and mine new blocks?

So this is a visual interpretation of what goes on on a blockchain.

So what we've got here are two blocks.

This block has already been completed and as you can see, this chain here shows them being cryptographically

linked.

So as we've discussed of what is contained on the block, we've got the block number, we've got the

nonce, which I'll come to in a minute.

We've got the data.

This is what's contained on the block.

So we've got Mike Ping.

Jim 56 Bitcoin.

Derek Ping, Karen.

Lisa Playing pain.

Christine Then we've got the hash from the previous block contained as previous hash.

That information is there and that's how it connects it to the previous block.

And then we've got the the hash of block two.

Okay.

And so this gets completed by the miner.

The miner finds the nonce that is connected to the hash and then moves on to block number three.

And then this is created and then this stores new data, new financial transactions.

I've got the same people in here, but you get the basic point.

You've got more payment transactions in here.

It's got the hash from the previous block, so it's there as the previous hash.

And now what we've got to do is we've got to find the nonce that creates the current hash.

So what happens is, is the miners are putting tons of computational power and competing with other

miners in order to solve this block, in order to find the nonce that creates the current hash.

And what creates the current hash is finding a nonce that creates a hash that has four zeros at the

beginning.

Okay.

So what happens is, is the miner is essentially trying to find the non so they may put in here nonce

32 and then what nonce 32 brings out is perhaps yellow 555 Okay.

So that is not the correct nonce.

So then they have to go to nonce, let's say 17,000 and that may create two zeros at the beginning.

So what you've got here is all of the possible hashes that can be created when you try and find a nonce.

So as you can see, it starts with basically all of the different hashes, all of the different numbers

are zeros.

And at the very top, all of the different hashes are.

FS Right.

And in between you've got billions and billions of combinations.

And this is why it's so difficult for a miner to create a block and to get the block rewards because

they need all this computational power to find out in minutes what the hash is via putting in nonsense,

constant nonsense into this box here to get a hash that has four zeros that is the target has to have

four zeros.

And when it has four zeros, then the challenge is complete.

The miner gets a reward.

So they've got to keep on putting in nonsense and it's completely random.

So there's no way of cracking it.

This is why it has existed for so long.

It's existed because you can't crack this.

This is what sha two, five, six brings to blockchain.

It's very hard to crack.

And this is why tons and tons, hundreds, if not thousands of miners are out there all trying to figure

out what the nonce is that creates the current hash with four zeros at the beginning.

If it doesn't have four zeros, it won't complete the hash.

So they have got to put all this computational power to find the right nonce that creates the right

hash.

So let's say 21 creates the right hash, and there we are.

We get the right hash.

And then the person who figured out that the nonce was 21 gets the reward and then it moves on to block

number four.

BLOCK number four will have this as its previous hash.

It will have all of the data and it will be cryptographically linked.

And again, they have got to try and find the nonce that gets into this target zone here.

So as you can see, it has to have four leading zeros.

All right.

And as you can see, there's so many zeros, but you have to find four.

And it's why it's so difficult and why it requires so much computational power and why you got so many

people mining competing to find that nonce.

And this is why it's protected, because you would need to have computational power to counter all of

the miners in order to hack this block, which is virtually impossible, which is why Bitcoin has never

been hacked but also goes to serve as an example.

Y sha t56 is such a powerful hashing algorithm and why proof of work.

Which proof of work is essentially a mining algorithm?

Why that is so important for bitcoin and decentralised cryptocurrencies.

# **Section 7:** Let's get started buying your first Cryptocurrency!

## 47. All you need to get Set-up!

Right now we are about to start the juicy stuff.

How do you buy cryptocurrencies?

How do you buy Bitcoin?

I'm going to show you all of this in this section and it's super easy to understand.

So first things first.

We're going to go to Coinbase.

Coinbase allows you to set up a basic wallet and it has a basic exchange.

So a wallet you can essentially send store and receive cryptocurrencies in and in exchanges, you can

buy various cryptocurrencies.

So what you're going to be able to do on Coinbase is convert your Fiat money, whether that's dollars,

euros, pounds into Bitcoin, Bitcoin, cash, Etherium or Litecoin.

So it's very basic.

There's four cryptocurrencies available that you can buy on this exchange and then you can store cryptocurrencies

there.

You can send the Bitcoin, Bitcoin Cash, Etherium or Litecoin that you have bought to an exchange,

and you can also receive cryptocurrency in the wallet.

Once you've done that, I'm going to show you how you can buy any of the 1600 plus cryptocurrencies

that exist.

Later, I'm going to show you how to apply criteria to these so that you're not just buying it based

on a name.

You're buying it based on data and based on certain attributes that's going to allow certain cryptocurrencies

do better than others.

And then I'm going to show you how to buy from an exchange specifically.

So once you've sent your Bitcoin to an exchange, you are going to be taken through the process of how

to buy a cryptocurrency with that Bitcoin and then where to store that cryptocurrency post exchange.

So once you've bought it on the exchange, the exchange is not the best place to store them because

there are always hacks on exchanges and you never know when that hack may target you.

So where do you put it so that it's in cold storage?

You can't touch it.

It stays invested and it's secure.

So that's what I'm going to go through in the next lectures.

It should be super simple that anybody, anybody can understand, and once you've done it, you will

be versed in the process of buying cryptocurrencies.

So I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 48. Getting Started: Buy Bitcoin with your normal currency (USD, GBP, EURO etc)

Right.

So first things first, let's go to Coinbase.

So it's Coinbase dot com.

And as I've said, it's a simple wallet and a simple exchange and it's really the beginner's area to

get into cryptocurrency.

I call it beginners because it's the easiest way of turning your fiat money into cryptocurrency.

This is where a lot of people have not gotten into cryptocurrency, even me.

It took me years to get into cryptocurrency because I didn't know how to buy it.

This is where you buy it.

All right.

So what we do firstly is we sign up.

So you go to the sign up page.

Now, in this instance, I'm going to set up an account as an individual.

You may want to do it as a business, but I'm going to show you the individual way to do it.

So now my details are input.

You have to put in a good password.

Really, it should be a mixture of uppercase, lowercase letters and maybe simple and a number if you

can.

And it will tell you that it's good.

It's good to go.

They're going to try and keep you as safe as possible here on Coinbase.

So now we've done that confirm I'm not a robot, certify that I'm 18 years or older because really you

shouldn't be buying cryptocurrencies if you are under the age and then create account.

So once you have entered all that detail, then you will be asked to verify your email address.

Simple.

So you just go to Coinbase, go to the email right here, verify email address, and then open up another

tab.

It'll take you back into Coinbase and it's going to ask you to set up your mobile phone.

So now you've got your mobile phone here, you just type in your number, you send a code to your phone,

and this just keeps your access a lot safer.

So once you have verified your phone number, I'll ask you to input a code and then you will be sent

to this screen.

But it's not all done just yet.

Okay, so you've got the basic interface.

So what you've got to do is you've now got to verify your ID.

So if we click here, then the different forms of ID that you can submit are passport, driver's license

and photo ID.

I always go on passport.

I've added my passport to my computer so I can just simply add this as an ID option.

So all you do is you just take a photograph of your passport if you've got a scanned copy which is in

the computer even better.

So once you've uploaded your passport, it will verify your ID.

And really, depending on the quality of the ID that you have submitted, it will verify you quite quickly.

So when I have done this before previously, it gets done in a couple of minutes.

And there we are, literally just minutes late moments.

They are less than a minute.

My ID has been verified, so that's brilliant.

Continue.

Now you have to add a payment method.

This is how you convert your fiat currency into cryptocurrency.

So there's two main ways.

Bank account.

This is for large amounts.

Now, if you do your bank account, you need all of this detail, name of the bank, name on account,

see per transfer amount, the currency that you use.

And then you press continue and you try and do that kind of bank account.

Additionally, you've got the credit or debit card.

This is the one that I have chosen and you add your billing address and all of that good stuff.

You normally add your card details as well, and then your payment method is also verified on Coinbase.

So instead of going through all the rigmarole of setting up my card, that's a basic overview of how

you can do it.

And now we are in my proper account.

This is the account that I have been using for quite a while.

As you can see, there's very little in it because most of my money is sent either to an exchange or

is in my wallet.

I don't use this as the place where I store cryptocurrency because it is very, very basic, but you

can use it as long as you keep it relatively secure.

So now just to give you a quick overview of what you can see, the first screen will show you your portfolio

overview.

It will show you the price in the currency that you are in for the various cryptocurrencies that you

can buy Bitcoin, Bitcoin, cash, Ethereum and Litecoin down below is your recent activity and then

what is in your portfolio at the moment.

So the area which is most of interest to you is buying Bitcoin.

So I am going to go to buy and sell here.

And then this is the interface that you are faced with, so you can buy Bitcoin, Bitcoin, cash, Ethereum

or Litecoin.

You can also sell it if you have some already in your account.

But I'm just going to show you really how to buy it at this point.

So you want to select the payment method that you have just set up, so your bank account.

So I'm going to choose my bank account right here.

Now, as you can see, it says here that my weekly limit is £6,000.

Now this goes up based on how much you use Coinbase and it starts from about £250 or about $300, depending

on where you are.

That's roughly what you start off with.

The more you use it, the bigger your limit is, and then the more you can buy.

So just to show you an example, I am going to buy £100 worth of Bitcoin.

Now, this will show you exactly how much Bitcoin you can get for £100.

Now, if you wanted to.

If I wanted to spend my whole allowance of £6,000, then I can nearly buy a whole bitcoin.

So it shows you the price that Bitcoin is around about £6,000 or around about seven and a half thousand

dollars.

Okay.

So then you just buy Bitcoin instantly.

So like I said, I'm just going to buy £100 worth, buy bitcoin instantly.

Okay.

Now if I just cancel that, you can actually buy any of them.

So you can buy Bitcoin cash, you can buy Etherium and you can buy Litecoin.

But what I will say to you is that Bitcoin is the main buying cryptocurrency.

Okay, so if you wanted to buy any cryptocurrency, pretty much all of them are available to buy using

bitcoin.

So if you buy a Bitcoin cash or like Bitcoin, the chance of you being able to buy any other cryptocurrency

is far less because there's less you can buy with these two currencies.

Ethereum You can also buy most cryptocurrencies, but bitcoin is the main one.

Okay, so like I said, go back to it, £100, buy bitcoin instantly and then it will ask you to confirm

the buy and it shows you that there is a little bit of a fee attached to it.

So they will take from me £3.84, which is quite a small amount, it's about 4%.

And then what you do is you just press, confirm, buy it authorises your transaction and then there

we are.

Purchase was successful, all done in minutes.

Now just to let you know if for whatever reason you can't actually buy Bitcoin on the desktop app,

try signing in from your mobile app.

So download it on the mobile and try doing it that way.

I found the first time that I tried to buy cryptocurrency with Coinbase, but this was quite a long

time ago, is that it didn't work on Coinbase initially on the desktop version, but it did work on

the mobile app.

So if it doesn't work on the desktop, try the mobile app.

But it should work now because Coinbase have gotten much better.

So now that you have got your Bitcoin bought, now what you do is you go to accounts.

So now that you're in accounts, what you see here is you.

You see all of your wallets.

So you see how much you own of any of the particular cryptocurrencies.

So this is now stored in a bitcoin wallet.

I can keep it here now.

I can just if I just want to have bitcoin, I could keep it here.

Okay.

Also I can do is I can send that to another location and I can receive it.

So if somebody wanted to pay me bitcoin, if I press the receive button, then it will give me an address

that I can send to somebody.

So if somebody says, I'll give me your Bitcoin address, I copy this, I send it via messenger or whatever

and tell them, Right, this is my address, so you can now send me Bitcoin.

And then also what you can do is you can send Bitcoin.

And that is what I'm going to show you in the next lecture.

This is how you buy other cryptocurrencies on an exchange, so I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 49. How to buy any of the 25,000+ Cryptocurrencies that exist right now

Welcome to another lecture.

Now you've bought your bitcoin.

If you want to, you can just keep that bitcoin stored and that's that.

Okay, so you've now turned your Fiat into Bitcoin.

You own a bit of Bitcoin.

What do you do next if you want to buy any of the 1645 cryptocurrencies now? Okay.

If you want to do that, you simply go to coinmarketcap dot com.

This will show you all 1645 cryptocurrencies.

Now it will initially show you the top 100, but all you have to do is just put view all and then you can see a holistic view of all of the different cryptocurrencies.

So let's say right now you wanted to buy Ethos.

It's very simple.

You just type in Ethos in here, press enter, and then you are presented with the price, you're presented with all the stats.

Now if we go down, you can see there's a tab here called Market.

So if we go and have a look on markets and we go down, we can see everywhere that ethos is listed and Binance is one of them.

Okay, so that is how you find out how do you search for any cryptocurrency? You go on coinmarketcap.com and to find out what exchange is available from you, click into the cryptocurrency, you go to markets and it will display all of the various exchanges.

So that is how to buy any cryptocurrency.

This is based on an assumption that you know what you're looking for.

If, however, you just want to see generally where is a cryptocurrency, let's say something like fusion.

If you're interested in fusion, you've heard something about it and you just want to know where it is.

Simply you just click on it.

You go down to markets and it will show you once again where to buy it.

Okay.

And then the the main place to buy this is by box.

So this is another exchange actually.

It looks a lot like Binance.

So in the next lecture I'm going to show you is how do you get set up on an exchange? And I'm going to show you the best exchange to go to.

So I'll see you in that lecture.

## 50. Sending your money to an exchange to buy Cryptocurrency

Welcome to the exchanges.

So the exchange I'm going to show you in the first instance is Binance, because Binance is arguably

one of the most popular exchanges right now.

It's popular because it's super user friendly.

Plus it has most of the cryptocurrencies on here to buy most of the main ones.

So if I just give you a very quick overview, nothing too major.

What you can see up here, I kind of like the main traded ones at the moment.

It's BTC markets is obviously Bitcoin markets and this will display for you the main cryptocurrencies

that you can buy here with Bitcoin.

So all of the popular names are right here, all of the ones that you may be interested in, the ones

that are in vogue at the moment, they are all here.

All right.

So that is the exchange.

That's how it looks.

And the first thing that you want to do is you want to go to register and register an account.

Okay.

So it's very, very simple email password.

Confirm your password.

If somebody has referred you, somebody has given you a referral ID, you can put it here.

That person will get some bonus tokens and then you agree to their terms of sale.

You register.

Okay, now what you will have to do is you are going to have to verify your ID on here.

So I'm just going to do it as an example.

Greta to Binance, these terms of use press register.

After drag the slider across.

Was going to ask you to verify your email address.

So we're just going to go back here, confirm your registration, and then you verify your email.

And then now it will take you to Binance.

So say your account is activated, please log in to trade.

So I'm going to use the exact same credentials that I signed up with and then log in, slide this thingy

across yet again and then it gives you a little bit of a safety notice.

I suppose so it just makes sure you always make sure you're visiting Binance dot com.

Okay, because sometimes it could say Binance and it has like a small dot on top of the a small dot

on top of it.

E That means you're on a phishing site or a phishing site, which means that people could potentially

hack your exchange because you're on the wrong page, you're not on Binance dot com, you're on this

phishing site, and then you enter your password for Binance.

And then the people who you have just tried to sign in with now have your Binance password, will go

to Binance and could hack you.

So always make sure you are going to Binance dot com.

Don't install any browser's plug ins associated with Binance.

Never make any phone calls to anybody that claims to be a Binance support representative.

Never disclose your password, never make transactions, or send funds to anybody who claims to be a

member of Binance support.

You've got to make sure that you take all of these and you are understanding of them because safety

is such a important thing on cryptocurrency.

Then it's going to ask you to set up Google Authentication.

Do this, okay?

If this means you're going to need your mobile and your email address and password to log in each time,

because let's say somebody was to hack your account.

If they were able to get your username and password, they can't log in until they use Google Authenticator,

which is on your phone.

So use Google Authentication.

I'm going to skip it for now, but that is what you do.

You just download the app and it will give you a code every time you sign in.

Simple as anything.

Now, what you will notice here, first of all, is you are on the most basic withdrawal limit.

Okay?

That means that you can you can send to BTC from Binance to a wallet or to another area or to another

person in 24, within 24 hours.

And then once that 24 hours has expired, you can set another two Bitcoin or you can try and get a withdrawal

limit of 100 BTC, which is if you're trading larger amounts now over time, if you're just starting,

you may not go all in right now, but over time you are going to have much larger amounts of cryptocurrency

potentially, in which case you need to submit some verification documents.

You need to obviously use Google Authenticator first and then you just upload your passport.

And typically what you have to do is you have to upload a picture of you holding your passport and with

a little Post-it note saying Binance and today's date and send that over.

And then normally within a few days they will verify you and you'll be able to withdraw a hundred Bitcoin

at a time.

So that is how to get set up.

Right now what you need to do is you now, now that you've set up on an exchange, you now need to fund

your exchange with the bitcoin you have just bought.

Okay?

So what you need to do is you need to go over to here and go to balances.

Okay?

So if we go to balances, this will now have all of the wallets available to you.

So wallets are I mean, you've got like a basic wallet on an exchange.

Again, this is not the safest place to have it, but you can store it here, okay?

So you can have all of these different wallets.

So you can just store it right here and you can also send money from another exchange.

So using Coinbase as an example, I can now send the Bitcoin that I own, which is £208 worth over to

my Bitcoin address here.

All right.

So let me show you how to do that.

All right.

So the first thing you need to do is you need to find the Bitcoin wallet amongst this list.

Okay, so it's right here.

But if you want to know how to do this more simply, if you can't be bothered to find out where it is,

you just put BTC and it will just bring it up for you.

And now what you need to do is you need to go to deposit.

So that means you are depositing bitcoin from another location.

Withdrawing means you are withdrawing it, so you've already sent it.

You now have, let's say two Bitcoin in this account.

You can now withdraw it and send it back to where it was.

Send it to someone or send it to another wallet.

Okay.

But as long as it's a Bitcoin wallet now this is the important bit.

Okay?

This is the very important bit deposit.

All right.

So when you click deposit, it's going to give you a Bitcoin deposit address.

So you now need to copy that address.

The important.

It is.

If you are sending Bitcoin from Coinbase to an exchange, you must make sure you use a Bitcoin deposit

address.

If you went into Etherium and got an Ethereum deposit address and then tried to send Bitcoin to it,

then it will never arrive.

It will get lost.

So be very careful.

Use Bitcoin deposit addresses or any particular cryptocurrency deposit addresses.

Make sure that it matches.

So in this case a bitcoin.

So I've got my deposit address here.

I go back to Coinbase now and then I go to accounts and then I go to send.

So I will now send over all of this to my address.

So I just put that in here and I'll just make sure if I go back to Binance 17q1 go back to Coinbase

17q1 go back to Binance.

Let's check it ends in u n, TG, five B, U and TG five B and then there we are.

Okay, so what I want to do is send maximum over to this address, press continue.

And then that money will be sent from Coinbase over to Binance.

Now, I'm not going to do it on this account because this is an account that is set up purely for this

cryptocurrency course.

But I'm going to now show you my proper account.

So just to show you an example of how this works, I've now gone on to my normal account and I've got

my authenticator on my mobile, so it was giving me a specific code.

So in this case it's 789810 and then success, but it can only be accessed through your phone.

So you've got to keep that as a safety measure for accessing an exchange.

All right.

So now what I'm going to do is I'm going to go over to my balances.

As you can see here, I've got quite a bit of cryptocurrency on this exchange, so now I'm going to

show you properly how to do it.

So I'm going to go to deposit Bitcoin.

It's going to give me a deposit address.

So I'm now going to copy that, go back to Coinbase and I'm going to put in that address.

So 1621616216e

cmv j.

ECM v j och done right.

So now that I've got that, I am now going to send this over.

Okay, so it's now just giving you a confirmation.

It's showing you the fee.

Coinbase isn't taking a fee, but the mine is taking a fee for confirming the transaction.

So I'm just going to click confirm.

And now that I've sent it from Coinbase over to Binance, you can now check on the progress of that

send by going to the history page.

So if you go to the history page, it will show you after a few minutes that the Bitcoin is coming.

So as you can see now that it has had at least one confirmation on the blockchain, the Bitcoin is now

on its way to coming into the account.

Once this had confirming two of two, that means that the transaction will go through and within minutes

that Bitcoin that you bought on Coinbase will now be available to you on Binance.

## 51. 2021 Update: You can now buy more Altcoins with Fiat on Coinbase!

Since the recording of How to Buy Cryptocurrency with your Fiat on Coinbase, things are slightly changed

with Coinbase.

Coinbase has actually opened up the ability to be able to buy more cryptocurrencies than you could previously.

Previously, you could only buy four cryptocurrencies.

Now you can buy a whole host of cryptocurrencies.

And Coinbase has actually changed a lot.

So I'm going to take you through some of the changes now.

So first of all, if you go to buy and sell, then essentially you can see all the cryptocurrencies

you can buy with your fear.

So you can buy Bitcoin, Bitcoin, cash, Ethereum, Ethereum Classic and Litecoin.

And these were available before, but now you've got a whole host of other altcoins.

And basically how Coinbase works is they tend to list coins that have been around a while, stood the

test of time, have strong communities, good working technology and are reliable to you list on Coinbase.

So as you see quite a few cryptocurrencies here as of the time of recording and they are going to be

adding more and more over time.

Actually the listing on Coinbase for a cryptocurrency leads to that cryptocurrency surging in value.

So recently Cardano, Scale, Polygon and Sushiswap.

These were the four latest additions and the price went up astronomically.

And the reason why is because these are now more widely available for retail investors to buy, because

Coinbase is one of the first places that a retail investor comes to buy cryptocurrency.

And so them having exposure to these altcoins means those altcoins naturally grow in value.

So anyway, yes.

So there are so many that you can now buy with Coinbase, but it used to be the case that you would

normally buy Bitcoin on Coinbase, send that Bitcoin over to Binance and then you would be able to swap

that Bitcoin for other cryptocurrencies.

Now you don't need to do that anymore.

Now you can even do it on Coinbase itself with Convert.

So essentially if you've got some Bitcoin, you can convert it to Ethereum or the other altcoins that

are listed on the website.

And you can also sell and you can sell it back to your GBP wallet, which then allows you to send that

GBP back to your account or whatever currency is you operating.

So there's a lot more now that you can do with Coinbase.

I would say the main drawback with Coinbase still is that you have to pay larger fees than you would

other websites, but it's the most easy to use, I would say, now as to what's changed.

So on the left hand side, you've got this sidebar, all right?

So you can essentially have your portfolio on here.

So whatever you buy on Coinbase, Coinbase acts as a simple wallet.

Make sure that you put your two factor authentication in so that people can't break into this easily

and typically use your phone with Google Authenticator or text message verification.

So once you have got your crypto, it will be stored in your portfolio.

It will give you your balance and it will show you what assets you have.

Then you've got prices.

This is essentially like Coinmarketcap or COINGECKO.

It will show you generally how much the market's gone down and it will show you the main cryptocurrencies

that you can actually trade on.

Coinbase.

Then there is education, I suppose, and news on this channel.

This is the for you channel.

So this will typically be completely customized for you based on your activity on Coinbase.

And then there is opportunities to earn rewards.

So you can earn, let's say, $3 worth of the graph by looking at some of these educational content.

Stellar Lumens, New Cypher Compound.

Celo, a lot of these this was not previously available on Coinbase and then you've got your notifications.

So this will give you price alerts based on what you have bought.

And then of course you can send and receive cryptocurrency on Coinbase as it does act as a wallet.

So you can either send it to an exchange or an email, for instance, or you can receive it, and then

you will be given an address to be able to receive it.

So essentially Coinbase has changed quite a lot and there's more you can do on it.

And essentially it still acts as the number one onramp Fiat onramp for retail investors to buy crypto

with their fiat currency.

## 52. 2021 Update: You can now buy Altcoins with fiat Directly on Binance

If you are looking for an alternative to Coinbase.

Binance, which was previously a crypto only exchange, has since become a Fiat onramp.

So if you go to buy crypto once you have signed up on Binance, now if you are in the US, there is

a different Binance.

For most of the world there is Binance dot com for the US it's Binance dot US.

So essentially you can now buy with a credit card or debit card or with your bank account.

So the advantage of using Binance over, say, Coinbase is two things.

Number one, the fees are around about the same, if not slightly less than on Coinbase, which means

you're probably going to get more crypto for your Fiat money.

The other thing that is much better about Binance is that they have way more altcoins that are available

for you to buy with your fiat currency.

So if I just scroll up, you can see that there are a ton of altcoins that you can actually buy and

there are a number of currencies that are available that may not be available.

On Coinbase.

There's a lot of currencies here which Coinbase, they do cater for a lot of the world, but not most

of the world.

So there is way more options for fiat to crypto choices on Binance, so you can just buy it directly

with your fiat currency.

And then with that you are able to trade it directly on Binance because if you are wanting a crypto

currency that is not on Coinbase, then you've got to send your Bitcoin or Ethereum over to Binance

in order to trade it for another cryptocurrency.

So once you have bought whichever crypto currency directly on Binance, you can then trade it effortlessly

with other altcoins on Binance.

So it means you only have to stay on one place.

You don't have to go to two places and potentially lose your Bitcoin or Ethereum in the transfer.

If you're doing it correctly, it shouldn't be a problem.

But some people, when they first get started, they're a bit confused about public addresses and how

to send cryptocurrency, and they're a bit scared and so therefore just don't do it.

And then they miss out on a lot of the cryptocurrencies that are available now based on if you wanted

to trade whatever you buy on Binance, let's say you can't buy the particular cryptocurrency you want

to.

With Fiat in the Fiat Gateway part of Binance, then all you do is you simply buy Bitcoin or whatever

or coin you want to buy, and then you can trade it on Binance using the various markets.

So you've got BnB markets.

This is essentially cryptocurrencies that you can buy with BNB, which is the Binance coin.

Then you've got BTC, which is everything you can buy with Bitcoin, and then you've got alt markets,

which is essentially all of the different alts you can buy with what you bought with your fear.

All right, so for instance, you can buy Ada with your Fiat and then you can swap it.

This is if you can buy with your Fiat as well.

But I'm just saying essentially that what you can buy with fear, you can also swap for another cryptocurrency

based on all markets.

And then this is the fiat markets.

This is what you can buy with your fiat currency.

ETF doesn't really matter in this instance.

So quite a lot that you can do on Binance now.

And like I said, if you're a US customer, then Binance US is where you want to go.

Now, if Binance US doesn't work in your state, then you may want to consider using the Gemini Exchange

or Kraken.

There are others bitfinex io.

So you may want to consider using those particular exchanges if if for whatever reason, Binance or

Coinbase doesn't cater for your ability to buy cryptocurrencies with Fiat.

## 53. Buying your First Cryptocurrency!

Welcome back to another lecture.

In this lecture, I'm going to show you how to buy your first cryptocurrency okcoin.

You've already purchased some Bitcoin.

You've now sent it over to the exchange.

You know how the exchange works.

So now how do you buy an altcoin?

Now, a marvelous thing has happened in the last kind of 12, 14 hours where the market has crashed

and now Bitcoin has gone down to $6,790.

It has gone slightly lower, about $100 lower.

But what you can see today is you can see a lot of red on the market.

Red is like a buying signal.

Red is like a mating call.

Like think about it in the wild, you know, a mating call is the time to make the time to take action.

And the time to take action in cryptocurrency is when there is blood on the streets, as we call it.

This red signifies blood.

All coins and bitcoin are bleeding out and some are bleeding out more than others.

So going back to coin market cap, what you can do is you can look at the change in the last 24 hours.

Firstly, when you click the change tab, it will show you the ones that have gained, right?

If you press it again, then it will show you in the top hundred.

What are the ones that have lost the most in the top 100?

And as you can see, there are quite a few big losses and some of the cryptocurrencies you'll see in

here are very exciting ones that have lost a lot of value.

EOS being one of them, EOS is looked at as one of the main contenders to surpass Etherium in the near

future of having very similar kind of software provision for developers, but a faster blockchain.

And then you've got Lean Network, which is a scaling solution for Ethereum based games, games, apps,

Nano, which is a fast transaction, zero fee cryptocurrency.

So right here you've got three really good cryptocurrencies that have lost majorly and have given a

good point at which to buy.

So I am going to carry on looking because I personally don't want any of those.

I've got enough of those now.

The next best one is silica.

Silica has lost 12%.

This has recently been $0.20 and it's gone down now to $0.10.

So I am going to show you how to buy a cryptocurrency on Binance.

So there's two ways you can do it.

You can either go to Bitcoin markets, look down and try and find silica.

As you can see, it's right there.

If you can't be bothered with wasting time searching, then you just simply type in Zelle and it will

come up and then you can click on it and then you get taken into the interface screen, which I've already

taken you through.

So let's just have a look and see what's going on.

So let's have a look and see what is the activity surrounding silica right now.

So I'm going to look at the so looking at the general movement, it has just been going up.

You can see an up arrow now it's stabilized 1473.

So it's just kind of staying still now.

It's going up again 4741474.

And as you can see, here are the sell orders and here are the buy orders.

Now, this is at the point that you can see when is the best point to buy, right?

Because you've got people wanting to buy, you know, 23,050 3000, 10,000, 34, 35, 40, 23, 169,000

tokens of silica in this order book, basically.

And in this bit, you can see all the people looking to sell.

So we saw some big orders on the buy side.

But looking on the sell side, 1639 6134 3858 Now some people set up what's called a fake sell order

to make people panic about selling.

So, so when people see one, five, eight, people are thinking, oh gosh, so the price is probably

going to tank even more.

And so they're hesitant and so they wait.

Additionally, when you've got this 23, which is next, this is going to send the price up to this,

which is 19 is then going to send the price down.

So if you think about it, this goes to 17471.

This will get activated, which will then send it up to 1472, which will then activate well now it's

gone up to 17474, which will activate this sell order.

So when people are buying, it's sending into the cells.

So really what you want to do is you want to see what are the big sell orders coming up and could that

actually crash the price right down?

So this big order for 158,000 is not until 1485 SATs.

So it's likely if I bought in at this point, when that sell order comes in, it won't crush the price

too dramatically to the point that it gets to 1472.

It could it could send it right back down to 1460 or something like that.

But looking there seems to be more.

There seems to be some relatively good activity on the buy side.

If there are more buy orders, people are going to put in more sell orders because they think, right,

well, I'm going to get the money I want to because there's enough people buying, I'll be able to sell

my tokens.

So that is the significance of the sells and the buys right now.

So people are probably waiting to make sure that these these sell orders tank the price right down.

In which case what I'm going to do is I'm going to set a buy order.

So here is where I can buy and sell.

So I've already got some I've got 100 right here.

So now I can buy some for 1471, change the price so that I buy at 68.

So I'm going to pull that 68 and I've got 1.59 Bitcoin, but I'm just simply going to put 100 right

here.

So I'm going to buy 100 silica if the price reaches 1468.

So I'm going to put buy, sell and that will submit my order down into the open orders.

And now I've just got to wait for it to buy.

So that's really what to do.

Okay.

So you can see that there are some quite sizable sell orders here, and these sell orders may bring

the price right down to 1468, possibly lower.

And there doesn't seem to be as much on the buy side, but so the buys will drive the price up to here

where it can sell.

So you can either wait.

So that's one example.

You can wait for the price to go down for these prices essentially to crush this the current price right

down to my buy order, which is 1468 SATs or you can literally just buy then and there you can just

buy then or there, but you have got the risk that the sell orders will take it right down.

Now it's gone to 1471.

So I'm just going to show you an example of how to buy.

So I'm just going to buy 100 of these selectors at 1471.

I order in and there you can see a 1471.

Now I've got to wait if the price goes down.

Even more than this buy order will get filled.

So you've just got to wait.

You've just got to wait.

That's simple as that.

Now, what you don't see is that the price is currently at 1471.

There could be people selling into 1471 right now, and if they do sell, that will make this price

go down.

You can't see that necessarily because all the sell orders start and we are.

So it's gone to 1470.

So now my my buy order has now gone.

It's gone through.

That's probably because somebody sold 1471 and it never entered the sell order sheet.

They just sold at current price and it went down.

So there was no indication.

So even though they look like there was quite a strong buy order at 1471, somebody obviously sold a

lot right in the middle so you can see it and that is what made the order go.

So it's just gone.

It's just gone now.

So that is how to buy your first cryptocurrency.

And hopefully it's giving you a good indication of the two things you can do.

You can either set a price which is lower and look at what's happening on the sell side and see if that's

likely to make the price go down to your buy price, in which case you will have bought better than

buying at the current price because you're getting it kind of a three SATs force that's cheaper.

And similarly, I hope that this just showed you when and how to find the best time to buy a cryptocurrency

if they are already in the green.

So let's say potassium is already in the green.

It means that it's already gone low and now gone up, in which case there's no point in buying because

it's not showing the signs that it's the right time to buy.

The right time to buy is when something has made quite a significant loss because it's going to be worked

like an elastic, particularly with good cryptocurrencies.

We're looking at the top 100.

The top hundred are the best performing almost like the FTSE 100.

When you've got pullbacks, there's -15, you've got -15.88% pullback.

That means that when the elastic goes, people are just going to buy it and it's going to get bought

up and that elastic is going to make this go into the plus, you know, on the next day.

So the best time to buy is when it's in the minus buy, when it's in the minus, and particularly if

there's quite a big pullback because that gives you the better chance of being able to make a profit

on that buy.

So I hope that that's helped.

It's quite a lot to take in, but at the same time I hope that it's giving you a good explanation because

now the price has gone up to 1473.

So luckily, you know, getting at that 1471, I've just made a $0.02 profit there.

So in the next lecture, I'm going to show you how to sell.

So I'll see you there.

## 54. Use your first coin for learning the industry!

How should you use your first buy?

Basically use your first buy to just get comfortable with the process of buying and also just so that

you can pay attention to what is happening to that particular stock.

So you can get used to, I suppose, the volatility.

You can start seeing the movements of that coin.

Now, if I had got it at six, eight, nine is currently on the rise.

It's doing actually quite well.

All right.

So just get used to that.

Get a feel for the volatility, whether it's down or up, so that you can get comfortable with the process

and so that you don't get scared off by the process.

Because I can imagine as a first timer coming to Poloniex that your first trade can make or break you.

So if you were to make your first trades, let's say you're using the criteria I'm giving you now,

which is quite a few zeros, experiencing a bit of a flat line and also, you know, not doing necessarily

too well because at the time when I chose it, Digibyte was down here in the kind of 1 to 2% gain.

That's what you need to choose.

Now, if it does well, you will gain confidence.

You will think, yes, I've picked a currency, my criteria is pretty good.

So that could make you quite confident.

On the flip side, if it went down into the minuses and suddenly started losing money, you might think,

Oh God, I've got to sell it now.

So use it as a learning point, because selling it now is not necessarily a good thing because you make

a loss.

If you suddenly experienced a decline in the value, then you may think to yourself, Oh God, I've

got to get rid of it before I make a bigger loss.

Now stick with it and see it through.

Sometimes that makes you more resilient than making a gain, because then you'll think I'm Superman.

I'm going to every time I'm going to go on a crypto coin, it's going do really well.

And then if it does badly, you get disappointed and angry.

Okay, so get used to it.

Not doing so well and seeing it rise over 24 hours because that will give you more resilience when it

comes to being in this game for the long term.

You've got to get used to the lows because they do happen.

You do get frustrated.

You do think to yourself, -- it, I bought it at the wrong time.

It will get you used to the process.

It will get you more instinctive about your trade because you'll think to yourself, Right, I know

at what point I want to enter the trade.

I know what point I want to buy it.

So have a look at the coin, see how it's performing.

Then you make the buy.

When it gets down to the price, you're happy to buy it and then you can just see how it performs over

time.

## 55. Selling your First Cryptocurrency!

Right.

Given that I have made a two set profit, what I'm going to do now is I'm going to sell that 100 at

1473.

So I'm going to make so this makes it a two set profit, so I'm going to put 50%.

So that's the 100 that I've just bought and I'm going to sell that now and see what happens.

So now the sell order goes into my open orders column and now it's just a case of waiting and waiting

until that sell order gets fulfilled.

And for that sell order to get fulfilled, which it just has been, it required a big order right here,

25,000 1473 to guzzle up my 100 buy order.

So I've just made a two set profit, pretty minor, but it just shows you how you can make a profit

in a very short space of time and what you need to look for in order to make that profit.

So I hope that that's helped show you how to buy and how to sell the most important things when it comes

to cryptocurrency investing and then cashing out.

And then, of course, what that did was that sold it into Bitcoin.

So I use Bitcoin to buy it.

And then I sold the Celica into Bitcoin to make a Bitcoin profit.

So I hope that that's helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 56. Uniswap Tutorial - use Decentralised Exchanges to buy exclusive Cryptocurrencies

2020 saw the birth of the decentralized exchange, and since then they have blown up in popularity and

they are widely used for purchasing most of these cryptocurrencies.

Now, what is the difference between a decentralized exchange and the exchange which we have gone through,

like Binance, for instance, and there are many others, there's Q Coin by box, BitMEX, Bitfinex,

Bittrex, Poloniex.

They're all centralized exchanges.

A decentralized exchange is typically owned.

It's owned by a company.

It's got a CEO, it's got a team, a marketing team and all of that kind of thing.

A decentralized exchange is owned by nobody.

It is for the community, run by the community.

The difference between the centralized exchanges and the decentralized exchange is who is the custodian

of your money?

So on Binance, on these other centralized exchanges, you send money to that exchange to then trade

other coins.

That means that they hold your money.

A third party is in control of your money, just like in a bank type scenario, and also for a centralized

exchange, you need to normally provide a KYC process.

So KYC means know your customer, and what you do for that is you provide your full name, your address,

your date of birth, your passport data, a whole host of information that can be traced back to you.

And if that information was hacked, then somebody could essentially use your identity for fraud purposes.

But going back to the custodial element, if a centralized exchange is hacked, that means that a hacker

has the potential to take your money.

So decentralized exchanges have become popular because you are in control of your money.

They are non-custodial.

You hold your cryptocurrencies in a wallet on your computer and you are able to trade using the wallet

on your computer with a computer interface.

Now you're going to need a few things for a decentralized exchange.

I'm going to take you through that process right now.

So the website I'm going to take you to is this one.

It's called Uniswap.

Now, Uniswap is an Etherium based, decentralized exchange.

That means that the only tokens you can trade on Uniswap are Ethereum based tokens or ERC 20 tokens.

All right.

Now what you're going to need in order to be able to trade on uniswap or invest in anything on Uniswap

is you are going to need a metamask wallet.

So Metamask you just go to Metamask dot IO and you download it.

Now there are a few options when it comes to how to download Metamask.

Now the one I'm going to show you is essentially chrome.

Okay, now when you download Metamask for Chrome, essentially Metamask then sits right here on your

browser.

And when you interact with Uniswap, you are able to interact with it with Metamask on your browser.

So it's the simplest way of doing it.

So you need to download Metamask for Chrome.

Then you are going to set up a wallet, right?

So let me just show you what Metamask looks like.

So.

If I just click into it, this is what it looks like once you have actually set it up.

All right.

So I'm going to show you the example for Ethereum.

You can change the blockchain that you want your wallet to interact with.

So, for instance, if you want to interact with a binance's decentralized exchange, then you have

to set up Binance Smart Chain on Metamask.

But I'm just going to show you a theorem for now because it's the simplest way.

All right.

So once you've got your wallet, what you're going to need to do is you are going to have to fund that

wallet with Ethereum.

So what you do is you literally have to copy your address to the clipboard and then you would go to

either Binance or Coinbase and you will send your Ethereum over to Metamask.

And then what you need to do is you will need to over time, as you buy cryptocurrencies on metamask,

you need to add the assets so they don't add it by default unless they are popularly traded and have

been around a long time assets.

Okay, so now that we have got a Metamask wallet and we've got some Ethereum on it, now you can buy

cryptocurrencies from Uniswap.

So if we just go to use Uniswap, then it's going to show you essentially what the decentralized exchange

or Dex, as we call it, looks like.

All right, so this is where you would do the basic trades.

So as you can see, I've got 3.8 to Ethereum in this particular wallet.

All right.

Now, when does this become useful?

It becomes useful because right now we are in a period where most cryptocurrencies are available only

on uniswap.

All right.

So I'm just going to show you an example.

If I go to confirm I now economy is a very new cryptocurrency, very exciting.

It's got venture capitalists that have invested in my network let me just show you so my is a Polkadot

project and Polkadot is one of the latest and most relevant types of cryptocurrency available right

now.

So if we just go down and have a look, you can see that they've got venture capitalists like Seems

Genesis, BLOCK Ventures and LMD Capital and FBG and these are kind of like the big venture capitalists.

These like the main ones, like if you see GBV, Fbg, Eland and CMS, that typically means you're probably

on to a promising cryptocurrency.

So anyway, the point I'm trying to make is, is that if we go to market, so if we see where this cryptocurrency

is available, you can see it's only available on Uniswap, also available on Dodo.

But I'm not going to show you that because Dodo is another decentralized exchange.

So I'm going to show you Uniswap for now.

So you can only buy it on Uniswap.

So what you're going to need for this is you are going to need the contract address.

And that contract address is either on Coingecko or on coin market cap, which is what I'm on right

now.

So you need the contract address.

So what you do is you simply just click on, then it is copied as you can see up here.

And then what we do is we then go to Uniswap and then we have our Ethereum already, already ready to

be able to trade for Navi.

Right?

But if we go to select a token and we go down and have a look, you can see that Nomi is not here.

You've only got Keep and Kenzi, right?

So you can't find it.

So what you need to do is you need to get the contract address that we have just copied.

Now you want to be getting it from either coin coin market cap like we just have or from the official

telegram group.

Because if you just search for it, then sometimes you could get a fake address and you could be giving

your money and actually you're buying a fake token, right?

So get it officially from either Coinmarketcap Coingecko or from the official telegram or from their

website.

Okay.

So once you've got that contract address, you simply paste it in and then you will see that Nomi is

now there, right?

So you need to import it into your wallet so that you can then trade it essentially.

Right.

And then we'll say trading your own risk.

Anyone can create a token.

So this is what I'm telling you about.

There are fake tokens out there, including fake versions of existing tokens that claim to represent

those projects.

If you are if you purchase this token, you may not be able to sell it back.

So you have to understand you are taking the risk.

That's why you've got to make sure you get the legitimate contract address.

So put understand import.

Now you can buy it.

So let's say I wanted to buy one Ethereum worth this will show me that I can buy 420 my with that OC

now I can just do a straight swap.

All right so it's telling me the price which is 0.00237.

So if I just simply copy that.

And then go to a calculator and then see how much Etherium is, because it's basically a it's basically

a fraction of a theory.

So Theorem is currently 117 1717.

So if I put.

1717 times this, then it will give me the price that I'm buying out, which is essentially $4 and eight.

So if we go back to Konami on Coinmarketcap and just see if that checks out.

Yeah.

$4.

Seven.

Right.

So it's roughly that price.

So we go back to back to here and then you simply go swap.

Now, this is the bit that you need to be aware of.

So let's assume that you want to buy this.

If you go to confirm swap, then what's going to happen is now you are shown a gas fee.

This is how much you are going to pay for the transaction.

All right.

So you need to be aware of this.

This is one of the drawbacks of using uniswap or a decentralized exchange that is Etherium based because

Etherium has a very busy network.

And in order to get your transaction to go through quickly, then you need to pay.

And at the moment, $37 to buy a cryptocurrency means that, well, essentially you're losing out on

about ten.

Am I here by paying the gas fee now you're paying it in Ethereum, you're not paying it in economy,

but that is essentially ten Konami you could have bought with that.

So that is the drawback.

So if you're not happy with it, simply you go to edit and then you can change the price.

Now it is giving you some basic options here.

So 41, 44, $47, which actually is much more expensive.

So what you do is you go to advance and you can actually just change the gas price.

So you can just go down a lot more and it costs you a lot less.

So it says gas prices extremely low.

Now, what this means is, is that the more gas you put behind the transaction, the faster it will

go through, the less gas, the slower it will go through.

So this could be a good thing in the sense that you could be whilst the slow transaction is going through,

the price of economy in this instance may go down.

So by paying extremely low and it being a slow process to do the trade, you could actually be getting

economy much cheaper.

However, if you see that there's a price that's cheap now and you want to get it right now, then actually

you may want to take the $37 hit for doing it at a more reasonable gas price.

But you can change it.

And if you just decide you don't want to do it, just simply go reject and then the transaction will

be rejected, dismissed, and then it doesn't go through ultimately.

Okay.

So that is how you buy on decentralized exchanges like Uniswap.

And because this is Ethereum based, there is quite a high fee.

And that fee does go to essentially the liquidity provider and the people that are part of the Uniswap

governance team.

They get a percentage of transactions, for instance.

So that's where the money kind of goes.

And it goes to the miner on the Ethereum blockchain that actually puts through your transaction.

So that's why all the various amounts of money is calculated into that $37 gas fee.

So it's a bit annoying.

But if you are wanting to buy some of the most promising cryptocurrencies before they become available

on a centralized exchange like Binance, that is how you do it.

So just to summarize it all together, you need to have Metamask download it onto your Chrome browser,

set up that Metamask wallet, put some Ethereum into it, and once you've got the Ethereum, you can

use Uniswap decentralized exchange and you can buy cryptocurrencies.

Now I've just shown you that the and this changes in real time.

So now the price of konami's has gone up.

So now you can only buy 416 rather than 420 than it was a minute ago.

So sometimes you've got to act quick.

You've got to put that $37 gas fee if you want to get it at that price of that particular type, because

the price is fluctuate and it all depends on the gas that you want to pay behind the fee.

All depends on how quickly do you want it at that price.

So I hope that this has really clarified it for you.

And also, just so you know, on Metamask, you don't have to use just Ethereum like Metamask is an

Ethereum based wallet, but as you can see in my metamask, I've got quite a few other assets, like

I've got linear and uniswap, the native currency of the Uniswap exchange, and I can use those to also

buy cryptocurrencies.

So I hope that that clarifies everything for you.

And another thing is that when you buy the cryptocurrency, let's say you bought Cono, then what you

need to do, because if you go into your metamask, you may not see it straight away, right?

So what you need to do is you need to add token.

And so what you do is you get that contract address.

So let me just get it.

You get that contract address?

Get back to Uniswap.

Adds token you custom token.

You add that and then it will as a default ill add and 18 and then next.

And then that adds it to your wallet so you can see your balance.

So if you should buy something on Uniswap and it doesn't show on your Metamask wallet, the balance

doesn't show you.

You have to add it as a custom token.

So there is a complete tutorial on how to buy on uniswap.

I hope that that helps.

Opens it out to this, opens you out to a whole host of new crypto currencies and I'll see you in the

next lecture.

## 57. Pancakeswap Tutorial - how to buy exciting Binance smart chain coins!

So I've taken you through Uniswap, which is a really good way of being able to buy Ethereum based cryptocurrencies

and early stage projects.

The other way in which people purchase cryptocurrencies on a decentralized exchange is through pancakeswap.

And this is for cryptocurrencies that are on Binance Smart Chain.

So Binance Smart Chain cryptocurrencies cannot be purchased on Uniswap.

You have to get it from Pancakeswap, which is kind of Binance official decentralized exchange, or

at least the exchange that they have endorsed for users to use as a competitor to Uniswap.

So I'm going to give you an example.

So here's a cryptocurrency called BSC Pad.

This is available only on Binance Smart Chain.

As you can see, if you go on Coingecko or Coinmarketcap, it will show you that the Explorer is essentially

the blockchain that it is based on.

This one is on Binance.

As you can see, BTC is Binance Smart Chain, and these are BEP 20 tokens as opposed to ERC 20 tokens.

So how would you go about purchasing this?

So with any cryptocurrency that you would see, if you go into the markets, markets will show you where

you can buy it.

Now you can buy on this occasion, you can actually buy BSC pad on IO, but you could also buy it on

Pancakeswap.

All right.

And this can all be done through the wallet on your computer rather than having to go through a centralized

exchange like gate.

So there are two ways in which you can buy from Pancakeswap.

You can either set your Metamask wallet, which is what we did in the last video, and you can set up

a Binance Smart Chain network on there.

So I'm going to show you how to do it.

So if we open up Metamask, it will show you normally your Ethereum based wallet.

So what you want to do is you want to go into this top bit here, which is where you select the network.

You click on to it where it says Ethereum main and you want to go to custom r.p.

Now this will give you the information you need to fill in to then set up the Binance Smart Chain Network.

And the best way to do that is via the Binance dot com official website.

They show you how to set it up and essentially what you need is you need this data here.

You need the main there.

All right.

So what you need to do is you need to populate these fields with the information contained here.

So smart chain.

So I will copy this because this may be the most annoying bit to manually write in, so I'll put that

in here.

It's already saying it's present in my existing list of networks, but I'm just showing you it as an

example.

And 56 B and B.

And then https.

B c scan dot com.

And then it will enable you to save it.

Enable me to save it because I've already got it.

And then once you press save, then you have got that network saved, as you can see here, smart chain.

So that's one way of doing it.

The other way of doing it, which is actually the way that I do it, is to get Binance Chain Wallet

and this similar to Metamask will sit as a wallet on your Chrome browser.

So once you have downloaded it, so mine's already on there.

So you would put add to Chrome.

And then once you do that, what you have is you've got your Binance Smart Chain Network, so you will

in essence create your new Binance Smart Chain Network wallet and make sure that you get the seed phrase

and everything in order so that if for whatever reason, you your computer breaks or something and you

can't get hold of it, that you can at least restore it through your seed freeze.

All right.

So now that we've got those set up, what we do is we then go to Pancakeswap.

Right now, let's assume we want to buy BSC pad.

What you need to do is you need to go and you need to get the official contract address.

Just like with Uniswap, you don't want to be buying fake tokens.

So we put click to copy.

Then we get a pancake swap.

And then what you want to do is you want to go to trade.

So you go to exchange and then you will get very similar interface to what you've got on Uniswap.

Now what you will typically buy with is BnB, which is the Binance official coin right there, exchange

coin.

But you can buy with other currencies, but I would typically buy with BNB.

So what you're going to need to do is you are going to need to fund your wallet with BnB.

And the way to do that is essentially to go on to Binance, buy some BnB, and send it over to your

address.

So your address sits in here.

All right.

So you just need to copy that address, go to Binance, buy some BnB, and then send it over.

Or you can use another website that sells BnB and then you need to send that BnB over to that Binance

Smart Chain Wallet address, and then you will be able to trade with it.

So anyway, so I just showed you BSC pad.

So now what you need to do is you need to add it.

So once you've got your BnB, that's what you're going to buy with.

And then you need to select the currency and this is what you're going to buy with it.

So you go select currency, and then what you want to do is you want to add the token.

So once you have added that token address, it will then show you the token name and you just simply

add it.

And then by adding it, you are now able to purchase it.

So let's just I all need to connect my wallet, first of all.

So you need to connect your wallet so you can either do the metamask, which I've just shown you how

to set up, or you can use Binance, Smart Chain, or you can use Binance Chain Wallet.

Okay.

So as you can see, I've got a little bit in here.

So if I was going to spend my max, okay, there's not a lot I can buy with it, but essentially I would

be able to buy BSC pad with my BNB.

Or let me just show you another example, selling it back.

So if I want to sell it back, what I'd need to do is I'd need to approve that BSC pad and then it will

cost me a little bit of a transaction to approve it or be virtually a couple of cents.

And then once I've done that, it will say swap.

And once you put swap, that is essentially the buying process.

So once you click swap again, there will be a little bit of a fee.

But compared to Uniswap, it's tiny.

This is why Binance Smart Chain is so much more preferable to Uniswap because Uniswap you could pay

anything from $30 to $100 for a simple trade, whereas on on Binance, Smart Chain and Pancakeswap,

you would be paying literally a few cents, maybe a dollar.

Absolute most.

But I've never, ever had a transaction fee that high.

And then you just put swap and then that's it.

Then you own the tokens.

That token will then show up in either Metamask or Binance Smart Chain.

But if it doesn't, what you're going to need to do is you're going to need to add the token.

All right?

So you will just need to click on this crosshair, put the contract address, and then it will give

you the token that you have just bought.

And then you just add asset where it let me because I have already done it.

It says asset already exists.

So I hope that that gives you an easy tutorial and how to buy with Binance Smart Chain Wallet on either

Metamask or the Binance Smart Chain Wallet and how to buy on a decentralized exchange and open yourself

up to Binance smart chain cryptocurrencies.

And like I said, it's much more preferable to Uniswap because it's much cheaper.

# **Section 8**: Fundamental Analysis 101 - How to evaluate if a Crypto can make you rich!

## 58. Fundamental Analysis overview - What are the most important criteria

Welcome to this section on fundamental analysis.

Fundamental analysis is looking at the factors that underlie the long term value of a cryptocurrency.

If it's got good fundamentals, then it's a cryptocurrency that is likely to last and be a good long

term investment.

So what are these factors?

So I'm going to be outlining them, first of all, and then I'm going to go into detail on each of them.

So the first thing is the vision.

What pain does this project solve?

What have they looked at in the crypto market that is currently not being solved or not being solved

effectively is what their vision is A market fit, i.e. does the market want it?

Will the market value it?

Are they unique in how they are approaching the vision?

Because if the project is very similar to other projects, then why would you choose to invest in this

project versus another?

Therefore you look for an element of uniqueness and that will all spill into demand.

Ultimately, if a project does something that is needed in the market, does it unique to other projects

that do a similar thing, this will influence how much demand it gets from the speculative community.

Does the team have the product and experience to be able to make their product succeed in the crypto

market?

What is the size of the team?

If they've got one person, it's going to limit the effectiveness of what this project can achieve.

So if they've got a depthy team, somebody in charge of strategy, somebody in charge of development,

somebody in charge of interface, somebody in charge of marketing, they are much more likely to be

successful moving forward.

And do they have an advisory team and what background do they have?

What is the token use case?

So if a project sounds fantastic, why do you need the token for it?

Because ultimately why people invest in cryptocurrencies is because the token has demand.

If the project has a token you don't even need, then why are people going to buy it and what demand

is going to come for it?

And so this is a good predictor of future demand partners and backers.

And do these partners assist with achieving their long term vision and backers equals investors.

So what are the quality of the investors in this project?

If they have got high quality investors, they have got access to money, to networks to influence adoption.

How many people are actually using this project?

What is the size of the community?

What is the value of the community?

From that, you will be able to see that there is actual adoption taking place.

And it's not just an empty project with nobody that's interested in it.

Tokenomics This is all regarding the actual token supply, i.e. what is the inflation rate?

If there is a high inflation rate, is this going to lead to dilution of the token value?

And what is the release model?

How often are new tokens going to be put into circulation?

All of this will impact the coin's price and its ability to have a trajectory to the upside.

If you have got very, very high inflation, then new tokens are always going to be coming on the market

and it's not going to have a solid trajectory to the upside because what's going to happen is it's going

to go up, more tokens get released, so people will sell and then it will be a volatile price action.

So ideally you want tokenomics that will allow the coin price to go up substantially from the point

at which you buy it.

And then lastly, relevance.

When you're investing in something, it's important that people are interested in it, that there is

demand.

And so this will come from what category of cryptocurrency does this token fall into?

What is the volume that achieves?

What is that volume as a ratio to its market cap?

How accessible is it via exchanges and what are they planning for the future?

With regards to the roadmap?

If there is a roadmap that is outlined, that is telling you exactly what is coming up for this project,

then you can be assured that people will be interested in investing in this cryptocurrency because they're

investing before certain milestones are achieved in the roadmap.

## 59. Case Study - How I made a 1000x using Fundamental Analysis!

To show you fundamental analysis in action.

I'm going to provide you with a case study.

And that case study is Matic Network.

Matic Network is today known as Polygon and is the 10th ranked cryptocurrency out of 25,500 cryptocurrencies.

But the first time that I spoke about Matic Network, it was ranked outside the top 500 cryptocurrencies.

Now Matic is my second best call of all time, so when I first spoke about Matic, it was a mere 0.004

of a dollar at its absolute peak in 2021, this went to $2.72, so this was a 1000 x cryptocurrency.

But how was I able to spot that Matic network in the early stages?

Had good fundamentals.

So first of all, the vision.

So what they provided was a scaling solution for Ethereum.

So Ethereum as a blockchain operates at 15 to 35 transactions per second, which is in today's terms

a very, very slow blockchain.

A lot of blockchains these days do upwards of 10,000.

So Ethereum was very, very slow and very, very expensive.

So what Matic Network did was it took transactions off of the Ethereum blockchain, solved it in one

of their sidechains and then put it back on the network, thus making Ethereum cheaper and faster for

the end user because they would use Matic on top of Ethereum rather than just Ethereum, which was much

more costly.

The team had blockchain engineering, user interface and user experience focus.

Now what I will say is when I first analyzed Matic is they didn't have any notable names within their

team, but they did have product fit.

They did have experience in the major areas in order to get those cheaper Ethereum fees and faster transactions.

You needed Matic as a gas token.

You used Matic to pay for fees using Matic as a layer two solution for Ethereum, and you needed the

token in order to have governance power, i.e. you can vote on proposals in the community.

And this is very important because if a technology is looking to be decentralized, which most cryptocurrencies

are looking for that as an end goal, the only way to achieve decentralization, a truly open network,

is by having a governance structure so that a network is run by its community.

So you needed the token for the two most important things partners and backers.

Matic Network had Coinbase and Binance Labs.

Coinbase and Binance Labs are two out of ten premier tier crypto venture capitalists.

So having these two as backers made this very, very promising because you are going to be able to buy

Matic on the two biggest retail exchanges.

Now adoption.

At the time they only had 2000 hodlers they had 8000 followers on Twitter and each hodler was worth

about 6700 per hodler.

That means market cap, which at the time was 13,500 divided by 2000.

Hodlers Now I typically look for $1,500 per hodler.

So to me this seemed like it may have been overvalued somewhat.

However, I'm going to show you a metric, which is what led me to believe it was still very investible

at that point.

Tokenomics This was a negative.

So Matic Network had a 72% inflation rate that basically meant it was going to be virtually doubling

each year.

And when it started out, there was only 21% in circulation.

So there's going to be a whole 79% of tokens that were going to be coming out in the future, which

would lead to high dilution.

Now, if we have a look at the price history of Matic, you will see that despite coming out in early

2019, it actually took all the way until early 2021 before this started rising in price.

And a big reason for that was a there was a bear market going on, but B, because of high dilution,

because the project were essentially doubling the supply each year.

That meant that the token price kept constantly being diluted.

It wasn't until a bull market came along where demand was able to overtake supply.

Now, in an ideal world, you will look for much lower inflation as a rule, and this is the drawback

of high dilution relevance.

This was a layer two.

There were only two other layer two's at the time.

This one was unique in the way that it solved the problem of Ethereum gas fees.

There was 20 million in volume despite being a $13 million market cap.

So that meant it was a 2 to 1 volume to market cap ratio.

So the volume was twice as high as the market cap.

Now I typically look for volume to be at least a fifth of the market cap.

So for the fact that this was double the market cap, the figure was greater for volume than market

cap.

So this was very relevant.

People were loving this.

Now, just to give you an example of a really bad volume to market cap ratio for Aleph zero, the market

cap is 219 million and the volume is 1.6 million.

That means it's a 136 to 1 ratio, showing that Aleph zero is not at all relevant.

So the fact that the volume was double the market cap for Matic showed this was highly relevant.

And of course this was available on Coinbase and Binance, which meant it was available on the two biggest

exchanges.

So this gives you evidence as to why fundamentals matter and how you can predict token demand in the

future.

Looking at those fundamentals and how those fundamentals manage to get me a 1000 X on polygon.

## 60. Trending coins you should be looking at for Long-Term Investing!

To show you fundamental analysis in action.

I'm going to provide you with a case study.

And that case study is Matic Network.

Matic Network is today known as Polygon and is the 10th ranked cryptocurrency out of 25,500 cryptocurrencies.

But the first time that I spoke about Matic Network, it was ranked outside the top 500 cryptocurrencies.

Now Matic is my second best call of all time, so when I first spoke about Matic, it was a mere 0.004

of a dollar at its absolute peak in 2021, this went to $2.72, so this was a 1000 x cryptocurrency.

But how was I able to spot that Matic network in the early stages?

Had good fundamentals.

So first of all, the vision.

So what they provided was a scaling solution for Ethereum.

So Ethereum as a blockchain operates at 15 to 35 transactions per second, which is in today's terms

a very, very slow blockchain.

A lot of blockchains these days do upwards of 10,000.

So Ethereum was very, very slow and very, very expensive.

So what Matic Network did was it took transactions off of the Ethereum blockchain, solved it in one

of their sidechains and then put it back on the network, thus making Ethereum cheaper and faster for

the end user because they would use Matic on top of Ethereum rather than just Ethereum, which was much

more costly.

The team had blockchain engineering, user interface and user experience focus.

Now what I will say is when I first analyzed Matic is they didn't have any notable names within their

team, but they did have product fit.

They did have experience in the major areas in order to get those cheaper Ethereum fees and faster transactions.

You needed Matic as a gas token.

You used Matic to pay for fees using Matic as a layer two solution for Ethereum, and you needed the

token in order to have governance power, i.e. you can vote on proposals in the community.

And this is very important because if a technology is looking to be decentralized, which most cryptocurrencies

are looking for that as an end goal, the only way to achieve decentralization, a truly open network,

is by having a governance structure so that a network is run by its community.

So you needed the token for the two most important things partners and backers.

Matic Network had Coinbase and Binance Labs.

Coinbase and Binance Labs are two out of ten premier tier crypto venture capitalists.

So having these two as backers made this very, very promising because you are going to be able to buy

Matic on the two biggest retail exchanges.

Now adoption.

At the time they only had 2000 hodlers they had 8000 followers on Twitter and each hodler was worth

about 6700 per hodler.

That means market cap, which at the time was 13,500 divided by 2000.

Hodlers Now I typically look for $1,500 per hodler.

So to me this seemed like it may have been overvalued somewhat.

However, I'm going to show you a metric, which is what led me to believe it was still very investible

at that point.

Tokenomics This was a negative.

So Matic Network had a 72% inflation rate that basically meant it was going to be virtually doubling

each year.

And when it started out, there was only 21% in circulation.

So there's going to be a whole 79% of tokens that were going to be coming out in the future, which

would lead to high dilution.

Now, if we have a look at the price history of Matic, you will see that despite coming out in early

2019, it actually took all the way until early 2021 before this started rising in price.

And a big reason for that was a there was a bear market going on, but B, because of high dilution,

because the project were essentially doubling the supply each year.

That meant that the token price kept constantly being diluted.

It wasn't until a bull market came along where demand was able to overtake supply.

Now, in an ideal world, you will look for much lower inflation as a rule, and this is the drawback

of high dilution relevance.

This was a layer two.

There were only two other layer two's at the time.

This one was unique in the way that it solved the problem of Ethereum gas fees.

There was 20 million in volume despite being a $13 million market cap.

So that meant it was a 2 to 1 volume to market cap ratio.

So the volume was twice as high as the market cap.

Now I typically look for volume to be at least a fifth of the market cap.

So for the fact that this was double the market cap, the figure was greater for volume than market

cap.

So this was very relevant.

People were loving this.

Now, just to give you an example of a really bad volume to market cap ratio for Aleph zero, the market

cap is 219 million and the volume is 1.6 million.

That means it's a 136 to 1 ratio, showing that Aleph zero is not at all relevant.

So the fact that the volume was double the market cap for Matic showed this was highly relevant.

And of course this was available on Coinbase and Binance, which meant it was available on the two biggest

exchanges.

So this gives you evidence as to why fundamentals matter and how you can predict token demand in the

future.

Looking at those fundamentals and how those fundamentals manage to get me a 1000 X on polygon.

## 61. Fundamental #1 - This is pivotal to make massive multipliers in Crypto

Analyzing the vision.

I'm going to be using a particular case study so that you can replicate my exact methodology here.

So I'm going to be doing this in a very basic way, but you'll get an understanding of the process I

go through for gathering all the data.

So in this instance, I am going to be looking at the sweet blockchain because Sweet has recently been

created recently come on the market.

It is actually a very exciting technology.

So why is it that so where we're going to start is we're going to fill out these PowerPoint slides.

This is my process of doing it.

So on the first page, this is going to be a headline of what is this cryptocurrency?

The second page is going to be looking at pain point.

So what is the pain they're looking to solve?

What is their solution to it?

What is the size of the market?

Who are the competitors and what are the usp's i.e., what makes it unique to its competitors?

Now, why I like to look at competitors is because I like to see who is the market leader.

How many competitors will this project have?

If it's a low amount of competitors, that means it's much easier money flow.

So for instance, the AI narrative, AI cryptocurrencies that aren't that many of them, that means

that an AI based cryptocurrency will get a lot of money flow.

If there is an AI narrative that is, lots of people are speculating on AI coins, so if they've got

a low amount of competitors, that means money flow is going to go to them easier and they're going

to make multipliers better.

If there's a high amount of competitors, then that puts more emphasis on what is unique versus those

competitors.

Because if they're just the same or not as good, then that means they're probably going to get ignored

by speculators and the retail public in order to get started as to what is the vision, the best place

to go to is actually the white paper, which is typically on coin market cap.

Now if you go to the tags, you will sometimes see what is the category of this cryptocurrency.

And as you can see, sweet is a layer one.

So if we go into the white paper, you've got all the documentation there.

Typically when you look into the documentation, there's a ton of reference points, a ton of pages

for you to be able to look through.

We can see here Sweet is a smart contract platform.

Smart contract basically means it's a layer one that you can build dapps on.

So if you're wanting to create dapps, you can do it with sweet now sweet offers, scalability and unprecedented

low latency for simple use cases.

So what they are offering is speed.

Sweet makes most transactions processable in parallel.

Now most blockchains operate on a single chain with a load of blocks.

This one is going to have two chains working in parallel.

That is what's going to give the speed sweet forgoes consensus to instead use simpler and low latency

primitives for simple use cases such as payment transactions or assets transfer.

So if you're wanting to swap assets or you're wanting to send a payment in sweet, then they will forego

using consensus.

So they'll make the transaction very, very instant.

Sweet is written in rust and supports smart contracts written in Sweet Move and their adaptation of

Rust, which is Move, is essentially an easy programming language, whereas with Ethereum they would

use solidity, which is actually quite a crypto centric programming language.

Rust and move are actually highly utilized programming languages generally, so it makes it easier for

developers outside of cryptocurrency to build an app in the cryptocurrency ecosystem.

So this is where they're talking about pain Point games are slow and prohibitively expensive to play.

Investors lose funds when they can't liquidate undercollateralized loans in defi high volume, low value

per transaction.

Mass market services like micropayments or coupons are priced out of the network.

That's because of high gas fees and slow transaction times, artificially high floor prices on assets

due to high gas prices.

So the use cases here is they are looking to make dapps more accessible, cheaper and faster for the

end user.

So to play games to make it faster and cheaper to play for defi, to make it cheaper to liquidate loans

and for micropayments making it much easier for network users to the end user to be able to use these

services.

And all of these things benefit either developer because they want their users to have the best experience

and for the user because they want to have a quick, easy and accessible way to be able to interact

with these financial services.

It also says here that we can commit 120,000 transactions per second, which actually makes it the fastest

or one of the fastest blockchains in cryptocurrency.

So now that I'm armed with all of this knowledge, I'm going to start filling out this sheet.

So SWE is a layer one blockchain with first TPS.

And low gas fees.

Pain point is, is that DEP creators so people that are looking to create decentralized apps in the

world of cryptocurrency have slow layer one options, high gas prices, poor scaling.

So blockchains are meant to provide scalability for the using public.

So the solution that we have got is they've got 120,000 transactions per second.

Fastest blockchain parallel transactions and a highly accessible programming language.

So that's accessibility.

Size of the market.

So in order to do this, we'll go back to COIN market cap and we'll go to categories and then we'll

look for layer one.

There we are.

So the market cap, this is essentially the value of the entire ecosystem.

The market cap is $314 billion.

That's huge.

A third of the entire market cap.

So this is a very grand problem.

Who are their competitors?

Well, again, all we need to do is go back to coin market cap.

And we've got them all listed out here.

And as you can see, there are quite a few of them.

So I'm just going to put the most popular ones.

So we're going to put Ethereum, Solana, Avalanche, Hashgraph, XRP, Aptos ET cetera.

So the Usp's are 120 k TPS.

Very, very similar parallel transactions.

Accessibility for devs, better games defi experience.

So there we are.

We have got a picture now of how does this vision actually make SWE a better choice than choosing competitors.

And we have got an actual figure to be able to base how much profit is there to be made in this particular

industry.

## 62. Fundamental #2 - Imperative to fulfil investment potential!

Team experience.

Now, what I tend to do when I'm filling out all of the rest of the data in analyzing this coin is I

will use this form here.

So this form will give all of the relevant metrics I need to fundamentally assess.

Sweet.

So the first thing that I'm going to fill out here is team experience that will say to me in a nutshell,

where has the team come from?

Have they got the ability to execute the vision and have they got the potential network to be able to

make this successful, mainstream adopted project?

So we're going to go back to Sway and we're going to go and look at the website.

Now what you'll tend to look for is a page that says team that will allow you to be able to see all

of the various team members.

Now I've looked and there is no page for team.

So what I do is I will go to LinkedIn.

LinkedIn will take me to their SWE page and then where I will go is to people.

People will allow me to see who is in the team and what is their experience levels.

Well, I'm also going to look at is SWE blockchain founder and it shows me.

Evan Cheng Right.

So Evan Cheng is the founder of SWE.

So I'm going to go into his LinkedIn profile and I'm going to look and see what experience he actually

has.

So what I'm looking for is mainstream companies and or product and experience fit to see if he can make

the vision happen.

So looking at where he has worked, he has worked for Facebook for two years and eight months as director

of engineering programming languages and runtimes.

That to me is extremely significant experience because Facebook is one of the top three technological

companies in the world.

So somebody who has been a director, so a senior manager at Facebook is even better as an experience

level.

He also has worked at Apple for ten years as a senior manager in various different departments, all

of which are regarding development and development teams.

So Apple and Facebook, you can't really get a lot better than that.

So I will go back to this form here and I will put Apple Facebook and then I will continue to look at

other people that work for Sweet and see if there is similar fantastic experience.

So this person here, Brian H.

Is part of the developer ecosystem for Sweet.

So let's have a look and see where he has worked.

So he has worked for Coinbase.

So Coinbase is one of the biggest businesses in cryptocurrency, so that is a huge name to have.

So he's got Coinbase, he's got Uber, he's got Fitbit and he's got Symantec.

So just with these two members of staff, they have got some of the biggest names in technology and

in cryptocurrency.

So there we are.

So that is how I would look for the team experience.

And also what I would do is I would look and count up how many people actually work for the business.

So they've got 42 employees.

And this is perfect information because 42 employees tells me that this is essentially a company.

Okay?

This isn't like a startup that's got 3 or 4 founders that do everything.

This has got 42 employees.

This is a legitimate business that has the head of it, having worked for Facebook in the past.

So overall, with Apple, Facebook, Coinbase and Uber, that tells me that they have got superb experience

and product fit for actually fulfilling the vision because they have worked for elite companies in the

most senior level for their particular job within the crypto project.

## 63. Fundamental #3 - Without this the token will fail and you will lose!

Token use case.

Token use case is fundamental to a project's success.

If a project sounds fantastic but you don't need the token, then it's not worth investing in because

what you're looking for is you're looking to invest in a token that has demand.

If the token has demand.

The price should go up because if they've got higher demand than they have supply, then that means

that the token price will go up dramatically.

So again, we're going to go to the white paper and under Swee Tokenomics, I've gone and looked at

the swee token and it will show me the use case.

So the swee token serves four purposes in the swee platform, one for staking.

So staking if you don't know already, is a way of you getting your tokens and locking them up in a

wallet and receiving rewards for locking them up.

So you'll typically get a yield or an interest.

So it could be 8%, 10%.

By having the swee token you can stake and earn extra tokens just for locking them up on the platform.

Then Swee is needed for paying the gas fees.

So this is a big reason why Ethereum has exploded exponentially in price because the Ethereum network

has become more and more adopted and used the more Ethereum is needed for gas.

Because if you're using the network, if you're doing Defi or sending tokens or buying tokens on an

Ethereum based exchange, you will always need Ethereum to pay for gas.

So Swee is what will be required for paying for gas.

Sweet is also used as a standard feature of money.

So as a unit.

So if you're wanting to pay somebody in Swee, then that serves as a use case.

So as a payment mechanism and also for the use of Swee in creating apps.

So if you are wanting to create an actual dapp, you will need the Swee token and Swee plays an important

role in governance.

So if you are wanting to participate in on chain voting, so how Swee aims to be decentralized is they

will allow for their community members to vote on important decisions.

So as the heads of the company, they won't actually make the decisions.

The community makes the decisions.

That's how it becomes decentralized and that's how it's valuable.

And it could become as valuable as potentially Bitcoin one day.

So once again, I will record this in my slideshow.

So firstly, it is used for gas payments, which is fundamental governance dapp creation.

So anybody creating dapps needs the swee token to power the smart contracts, staking benefits and as

a unit of value stroke exchange.

And there we are.

That is the token use case for SWE.

And this will allow me to assess.

Does this have potential demand in the future And in my personal opinion, should SWE become highly

adopted?

Very much so.

And this will be the most important one.

But as far as moving forward in the future of SWE, then governance and decentralization will be very

important.

So owning it will give me power within their community.

And of course, in order for me to just make more money, I can use it to stake.

There are a ton of retail investors that really want to earn money passively with certain cryptocurrencies,

and SWE seems promising enough that you would want to stake it to earn more SWE and be able to get more

SWE as the token supply inflates.

## 

## 64. Fundamental #4 - This will turbocharge the growth of your investment!

Partners and backers.

What you're looking for is evidence of partnerships with perhaps mainstream companies, because this

will give you confidence that they've got a strategy to have mainstream adoption.

So it's very, very simple.

You should simply just type in the cryptocurrency and then just put partners or partnerships.

So what we can see here is, is that we have partnered with Oracle Red Bull Racing.

Now Red Bull is probably the number one constructor in Formula One.

Formula One is a mainstream racing series.

So this says to me that they're going to be having the name of SWE on the Formula One car from next

year.

That's pretty big because this is going to get the name out there to a worldwide audience.

And secondly, Formula One has got a Netflix series, so it's become even more popular as of late.

So this will be a very significant partnership.

And then similarly, they have got game partners as well.

So something that we have said as part of their vision is to make accessible, decentralised games.

So they want games to be built on SWE and the SWE blockchain.

So they have quite obviously done a lot of partnership building because they have got 11 gaming partners,

including one company making a game based on The Walking Dead.

We have essentially got all of the names that they are going to be partnered up with.

The second thing that's very, very important is venture capitalists.

Okay?

So what we'll do here is we will typically go to crypto rank IO crypto rank will show you who has invested

in particular cryptocurrency.

So we'll just type in SWE and it should show exactly who has invested in them.

So you will go to token sale, it will say funds and backers as well.

If we go to token sale, then we can see the various VCs that have gotten involved.

Now I've taken you through my tier list of VCs.

It's in the second section.

And what we can see here is, is that they have got some of the major ones, okay?

So they have got Binance Labs and Coinbase Ventures.

These are two premier tier VCs.

Andreesen Horowitz is also another one, so that's three.

They've also got Jump Crypto, who has recently become a Tier one VC and FTX Ventures who have since

gone on to fold because FTX closed up shop in 2022.

Butt was a tier one.

So that shows you the level of quality that SWE is.

Uh, there aren't any other VCs mentioned other than the ones I've just said.

So.

Coinbase, Binance, Andreessen, Horowitz, Jump and Circle.

So I'm now going to enter that in here Coinbase, Binance Jump Circle and Andreessen Horowitz.

So as you can see now, I'm building up a picture of how potentially powerful this project could be.

So essentially what it boils down to is the more legitimate partnerships and the more legitimate venture

capitalists a project has got, the more access they have got.

So in the case of venture capitalists, venture capitalists provides access to exchanges, influencers,

YouTubers, high net worth and high net worth individuals.

So the higher the quality of VC, the better the connections and the more widespread the marketing is

likely to be.

And if a project has got the two biggest exchanges, which is Coinbase and Binance as their VCs, then

you can essentially expect for those exchanges to list this token.

So having exchanges as VCs is actually very important.

Now, it doesn't mean it's the be all and end all.

A project can still do well without any VCs.

You know, back before 2017, there weren't really crypto VCs, and a lot of cryptos still did very

well, and they still can do.

It's just it's much easier when a project has access to the people with money, the people with influence,

the people who have wide audiences.

## 

## 65. Fundamental #5 - Secret way to check if you're project is Undervalued!

Number five.

Adoption.

Adoption is a fantastic metric for assessing the fundamental strength of a cryptocurrency.

Why?

Because when a bull market comes along, the amount of people holding the token are the amount of people

that are going to be marketing the token, i.e. to their friends and family, or if they're watching

YouTubers and YouTubers say, What should I review next?

Then people will just slap in the comments, review this token review, this token because they're invested

in it.

So the more adoption a project has, whether that be in hodlers, the amount of wallets, the amount

of Twitter followers that leads to the size of the community.

Okay.

But it's important that you get the right information.

So I've done a lot of analysis in the amount of users of most cryptocurrency networks to have a good

idea of what constitutes good adoption.

So I've got a lot of the top 100 in here, and I've also got ones outside of the top 100, so ones like

Cyto, 10,000 users.

Aleph0 45,000 users.

So the ones that have got a low amount of users, that means they've got a lot of potential to the upside

because the more people that come in a bull market, the more people that will help market that business

and the more growth it can have.

If you start off from small, then you are more likely to achieve multipliers with smaller communities.

Having said that, if you have got a small coin but a big community, that's an even better potential.

So I'm going to show you very easily how to find the amount of hodlers.

So if I go into, let's say Shiba Inu, Shiba Inu is one of the most popular cryptocurrencies.

So in order to see how many people hold the token Shiba Inu, you go to explorers.

Explorers will show you the blockchain information on that particular cryptocurrency across whatever

blockchains it should be on.

So in this instance, Shiba Inu is on the Ethereum network, the Solana Network, Binance Smart Chain

Network, and the Terra Luna Network.

Okay, so looking at Ethereum, first of all.

You can see that there are 1.3 million hodlers.

If we go and have a look and see how many they've got on Binance Smart chain, they've got only 419.

So then what you do is you do a count up of the amount of hodlers on each of the blockchains, and that

will give you the overall number.

So what we have got for Shiba Inu is it's over 1.3 million Now in the case of Swee, Swee is a blockchain,

so this isn't on the Ethereum network or on the Binance Smart chain network.

So you simply go to the Explorer and this will show you a lot of the data you will want to know.

So as you can see here, it's got 885,000 users, 885,000.

Now, if we go and have a look and see how many Twitter followers they've got.

106,000 followers.

Now, are they real followers?

We can get an opinion of that by looking at the metrics of their tweets.

So what you can see here is their pinned tweet has had 150,000 people see it.

So that shows you that it has potentially got a real audience of 106,000.

But if we look generally 20,000, 22,000, 45,000.

So yeah, you can pretty much assume that this is a true amount of Twitter followers.

So in order to find out, based on the amount of hodlers they have got, is it an undervalued or overvalued

crypto?

There's a simple mathematic formula, and that is the market cap divided by the amount of users.

So it's got 885,740 users.

So we'll get the market cap and then divide it by 885,740 users and that will be worth $500 per hodler

and that is actually three times below the average.

So I've gotten this average based on doing all of this research and looking into the various amounts

of networks and the amount of hodlers they've got.

And on average it's $1,333 per user.

So 566 is roughly a third.

So that means it's undervalued because it's under the average.

And so that is what you would need to do as a calculation.

So with Shiba Inu, they have got a market cap of 4.8 billion.

So we're going to have a look and see if this is undervalued or overvalued.

We're just going to take Ethereum because this is the main network that they are on.

So we'll take the Ethereum network.

Divide it by the 1.3 million.

And this is $3,673 per user.

So actually, this is overvalued because it's nearly three times the average.

So this shows you that SWE has actually got an undervalued network and that shows potential for gains

down the line.

## 

## 66. Fundamental #6 - If this is not Positive, your investment could be destroyed!

Tokenomics.

Tokenomics is a fundamental that is extremely important for a cryptocurrency's ability to grow in token

price.

Why?

Because the last thing you want is for there to be heavy dilution of the token price with a load of

unlocks and a load of supply released all at once.

So we're going to look at sweet in the context of Tokenomics.

Now when we go to COIN market cap, we can see that they have only got 6% in circulation.

If we look at something like Bitcoin, we can see there is 92% of all tokens are out.

That means that for the rest of Bitcoin's lifetime, there's only going to be a further 8% more of tokens

added to supply.

So that means there's not going to be hardly any dilution of the price moving forward for Sewhee there's

going to be 94% of dilution.

All right.

So every year there is going to be an amount of sewhee released into circulating supply.

So the max supply is 10 billion.

The amount in circulation presently is 604 million.

So there is still 9.4 billion left to be released and added to this circulating supply.

The more it's added and the frequency at which it is added can have a severe impact on the token price.

Okay, Now how do we work out the inflation rate?

The real way to do it is by going to a website called Token Unlocks, and this will allow you to see

most particularly new cryptocurrencies that have launched and it will show you how much is going to

be launched over a certain amount of time.

So if we go down to vesting schedule, this will show you the token release model.

So how much will be released over time?

So where we are now is around about 616 million in circulation.

What we want to do is we want to see how many will there be in a year.

So from the 6th of June 2024, how many will there be in circulation then?

So there will be 3 billion.

So what we want to use is we want to use this percentage increase calculator.

This will tell us the inflation rate.

So we will put the starting value, which is 604 million and then we need to get the ending value.

So (322) 689-1667.

So this will be the current supply and this will be after a year.

So what we're going to see in one year is 334% increase.

That is showing you an incredibly high dilution rate because they're going to be adding basically four

times the amount of supply that's currently there, as with inflation everywhere, because inflation

right now is happening across the globe and inflation is a big problem because inflation has a negative

impact on purchasing power.

So what that means is that the value of the token actually goes down.

So with having four times the amount of current tokens in circulation, SWE is going to be heavily diluted.

And the chances are is, is that in a year's time we'll actually see a lower price than we've got today.

Now once we get into a bull market, it is the case that even if a coin that is promising has high inflation,

it will still grow.

And the reason I say that is because Avalanche actually did a 50 x despite having a 100% inflation in

one year and Solana 200 X despite having 500% inflation.

So in a bull market, the dilution matters less because demand is so high.

But in a bear market where nobody is buying, that means there's a lack of demand.

That means that the price of SWE can be very negatively impacted.

So Tokenomics is really important and this is a big reason why Ethereum is is one of the cryptocurrencies

that is most promising in the entire landscape.

Now it is currently ranked two in all cryptocurrencies out of 25,500, cryptocurrency is ranked two.

And one of the reasons why people are speculating so much on Ethereum is because they are a deflationary

cryptocurrency.

What that means is, is is on a daily basis, they're actually on a negative issuance than a positive

issuance.

So if we have a look at the amount of tokens coming into circulation for SWE, we can see that this

is going to have an incredibly high positive issuance.

So if we get the end figure, take away the amount currently in circulation, we have got 2.62 billion

that are going to be coming out in the next year.

So we're going to get this number.

Divide it by 365.

So this is going to have, in essence, 7 million tokens added on a daily basis.

So that's an issuance of 7 million tokens daily.

With Ethereum, for instance, they are in a negative issuance of 926 Ethereum on a daily basis, on

a weekly basis.

That's 9000 Ethereum that is actually coming off of the circulating supply.

So this is showing you how inflation is a problem and cryptocurrencies that are lower inflation or have

a deflationary supply model, they are going to appreciate and value a lot better than ones like sui.

So sui in many respects is very promising technology in the layer one blockchain landscape, but its

tokenomics totally destroy it.

What you want fundamentally is for this to have low inflation and that is only going to be happening

after 2026.

After 2026, there will be 5.1 million in circulation and then there will only be another 300 million

added into circulation between 2026 and the rest of its lifetime.

This will be the point where Sui is a fantastic investment from a tokenomics point of view, but between

here and this point is going to be highly inflationary, which is not good for the token price.

So I hope that that demonstrates to you the importance of tokenomics.

If a project has good tokenomics, i.e. a low inflation rate or deflationary supply, then that means

that the token price can go up a lot faster and a lot easier.

But having said that, as I've said with Solana, Avalanche and even Matic, even though they had high

inflation rates, they still experienced incredible multipliers in a bull market.

## 

## 67. How to Calculate Multiplier potential of an Investment!

So now that we've gotten all the data on SWE, we can now begin to complete the rest of this slide here.

So narratives, this can do well in layer ones, defi gaming, nfts, meme coins, payments, etcetera.

So the reason why we can do well in all of these narratives is as follows.

Layer one is a very, very popular category of cryptocurrency anyway.

If there's a defi gaming NFT season, then all of the ones that have been built on sui will naturally

give sui more value.

So it's got multi narrative benefit.

How accessible is sui?

So if we go to Sui and we go into markets, we can see where it is available.

So Binance coin coinbase Kraken Okex Bybit who?

Obi gate Poloniex Bitgo.

It's basically on all of the major exchanges.

So I'm going to put all of these and most exchanges when was sui created?

So we go to the all time and we can have a look and see when it came to being indexed on Coinmarketcap

and that was the beginning of May.

Now the reason why this is important is because cryptocurrencies that are newer, moving into a new

bull market tend to do better than older, more legacy based cryptocurrencies.

Why?

Because there's a shiny new thing.

They haven't yet been assessed by the market, so they've got a limitless ceiling.

We don't know how high they can go up, so the newer they are, the better current price of Sui 82.5

cents.

Current market cap 498 million.

Current rank.

77.

Now, it's important to know this because the lower the rank of cryptocurrency, the higher it can go.

So if you're investing in something that's already in the top ten or top 20, then there's a limitation

of how high it can go.

Realistically, the lower it is, the better it can do.

Circulating supply 604 million amount in circulation.

6%.

Daily volume 195 million.

Now, what I like to look for is a 5 to 1 ratio.

As I've said, and as you can see here, this is pretty much a two or 3 to 1 ratio.

So $200 million for a near $500 million market cap.

So this is highly relevant and it's easy to see that because if we go into the trend in cryptocurrencies,

SWE has been in it every day for the past month.

Number of watchlists, 67,800.

Now the reason why this is important is to know how many people are tracking this cryptocurrency.

If it's a low amount, it means people don't care about it.

If it's a high amount and talking in relative terms, you know, Bitcoin, for instance, is on 4 million.

So comparatively SWE is on much fewer watch lists.

That is because it's only been around a month, whereas Bitcoin has been on coin market cap for ten

years basically.

So there is a reason why Swedes on fewer watch lists, but it's good to understand how many people are

tracking it because that shows you how many eyes are on a particular cryptocurrency all time high.

You can get that information if you scroll all the way down here.

So the all time high is 171.

An all time low is $0.76, fall from all time high, 51.6%.

So I'll just call that 52% number of Hodlers 885,052 week high.

It will be exactly the same.

But again, that's available right here, 52 week low and 52 week high.

I like to see what has been the most recent low and the most recent high in relation to where it has

sat in the whole of history.

FTV means fully diluted value, so if all tokens were to be released right now, then that would mean

the max supply times the SWE price, which would mean $8 billion.

So 8 billion is the fully diluted value inflation rate we have gone through.

This is 434%, which is just ginormous.

And as a result of that, I'm going to put that in red because it is very bad news.

Transactions per second.

This is 125,000 transaction cost.

If we go back and have a look on the SWE blockchain, we can see that the average gas price is a load

of zeros.

824 Now if we go to Coingecko we can get a dollar price for that.

So SWE is trending on Coingecko as well.

So if we go to the converter how much that is in SWE, this is how much it is in US dollars.

So compared to the Ethereum gas price, which is basically 5 to $15 per transaction, this is a this

is six millionths of a cent, which is utterly ridiculous.

So we're going to put that in right here.

Now the next thing we're going to look at is how does Swe's current price compare with its market leader?

So if SWE was to gain the same value as Ethereum, it would be worth $428 with an upside of 504 14 x

so price to achieve the same value as the market leader.

It's $428 with a multiplier of 514 x.

Now I have this here because I'm not saying that SWE is going to be a 514 x, but this gives you a basis,

a kind of start point to see what is the potential should swe, with its strong fundamentals, be able

to achieve an equivalent sized market cap as Ethereum?

So this will show you the potential best case scenario, which is a 514 X over time.

So that completes the entire sheet.

And I hope this has been really useful for you in terms of doing fundamental analysis on any crypto

currency out there.

## 

## 68. Fundamentals Form: Download this to upload your own info

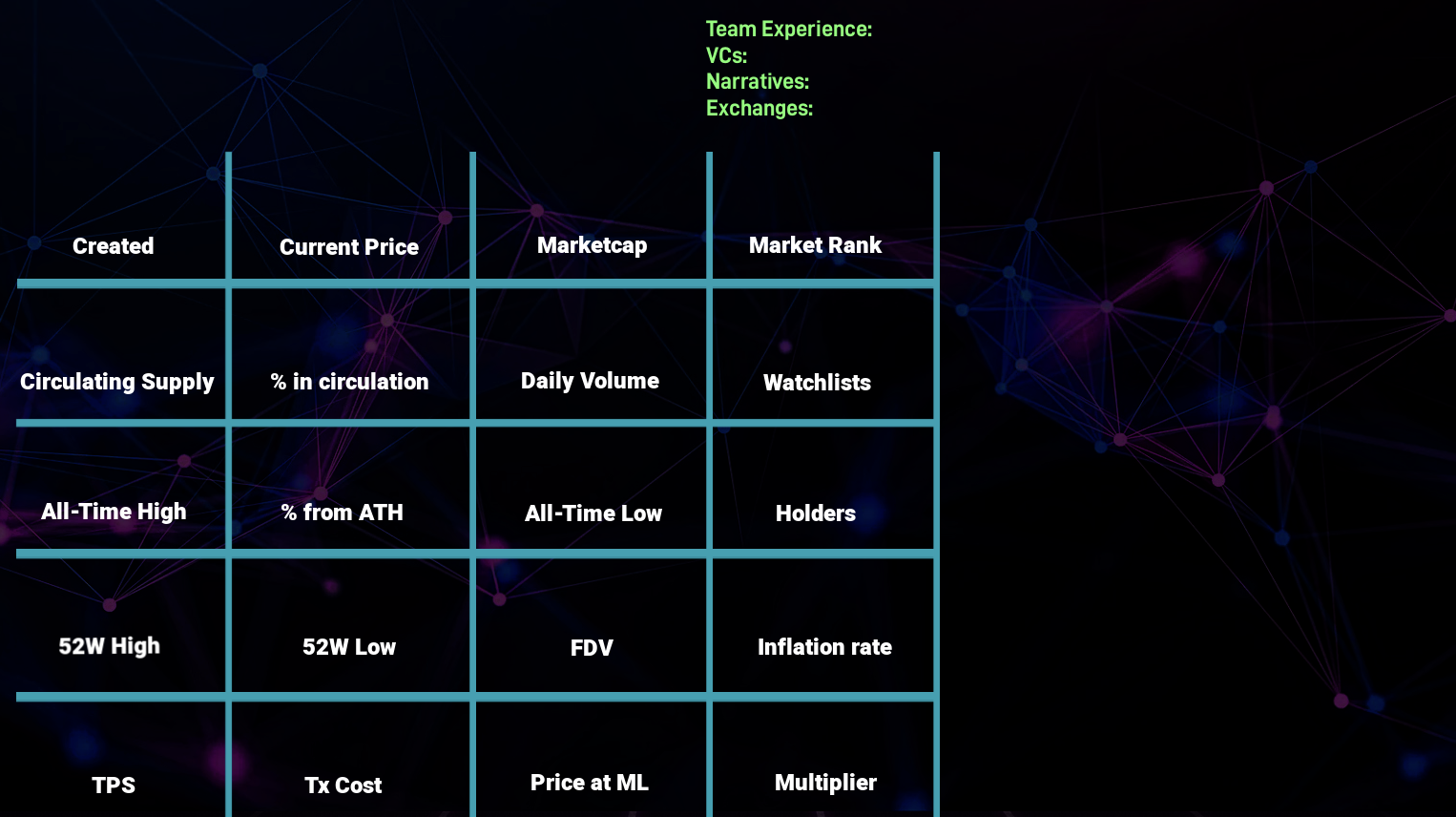
## 

Fundamentals Form: Download this to upload your own info

Fundamentals Form

Please save the below 'Fundamentals form' image, and then upload it to Canva or PicMonkey, and then add your own text boxes to fill out the below data points.

I would recommend you then save the completed forms in a Research folder so you can always access them.



## 69. List of Websites used in this section

**List of Websites used in this section**

CoinMarketCap: <https://coinmarketcap.com/>

CoinGecko: <https://www.coingecko.com/>

LinkedIn (for checking team exp): [linkedin.com](http://linkedin.com/)

Venture Capitalists - <https://cryptorank.io/>

Token Unlocks - <https://token.unlocks.app/>

Percentage Increase Calculator (for inflation rate): <https://www.calculatorsoup.com/calculators/algebra/percentage-increase-calculator.php>

Crypto Compare Tool (to assess gains potential) - <https://thecoinperspective.com/>

Ultra Sound Money (Ethereum Deflation): <https://ultrasound.money/>

# **Section 9:** IDO Investing & Launchpads - Get the Best Gains in Crypto!

## 70. Launchpads: How you could achieve 100-1000x with IDOs!

## 

Welcome to another section.

In this section, I'm going to be talking to you about launch pads.

Launch pads are a way of being able to invest in cryptocurrencies at the earliest opportunity before

it hits an exchange.

There used to be a process back in 20 1718 called ICO's initial coin offering, which was where a project

offered the ability for retail investors and whale institutional investors to get involved in cryptocurrencies

at rock bottom prices before they enter an exchange where all the demand pumps into the exchange and

makes that coin soar up.

But these days we have what are called launchpads, and these are very good either for short term flipping,

so for trading purposes or for long term investing.

Now there are a number of launchpads depending on what blockchain you are wanting to buy the cryptocurrency

on.

Now, the best performing blockchains these days are Ethereum, Binance, Smart Chain, Polkadot.

There's also some more emerging, for instance, Cardano and Polygon.

So if you want to get involved in these early stage cryptocurrencies from different blockchains, then

launchpads are the way to do it.

So I'm going to be taking you through launch pads and how to use launch pads with a direct example where

I am going to be investing via a launchpad so that you can have an understanding of the process because

these are the best opportunities to make money in cryptocurrency.

And the reason I say that is because Matic, this is an example of a cryptocurrency that I was able

to get in at ICO stage, or should I say private sale stage.

Now with these launchpads of which there are various ones, these allow you to get involved in cryptocurrencies

at pretty much private sale price.

So going back to this example, Polygon, which was previously called Matic Network, was a cryptocurrency

I got involved in at private sale stage.

I was able to get this cryptocurrency at 0.002 of a dollar.

So basically it was a fifth of a cent I was able to get this cryptocurrency at today it is $2.20 which

when you do the math, is about 1000 X nearly from when I invested in it.

So $1,000 with a 1000 X is $1 million.

So that shows you why it's important to get into cryptocurrencies at the very earliest, because that

allows you to be able to get in a rock bottom bullet proof price before demand comes for that cryptocurrency.

They deliver value, they deliver demand.

And as a result of that, the price spikes and you make a mountain of money.

It's certainly more effective than buying into a cryptocurrency already in the top 100, where they

have already grown, they've already made money for early investors.

So it's a really good tactic to be an early investor in a potential top 100 or even top ten coin.

So I've given you Matic as an example.

Here is another example a cryptocurrency called Super Farm.

Now this when it came out as an IDO.

So ICO is what an initial coin offering is what it used to be when you got involved in an early stage

cryptocurrency.

Now it's called Ido, which means initial Dex offering.

So that means that you can get involved in a cryptocurrency before it reaches a dex.

A decentralized exchange now super farm recently launched on Uniswap while I say recently, a couple

of months ago.

But anyway, if you had gotten involved in Super Farm on poker starter because Super Farm was a polka

starter IDO So a super farm launched on the poker starter launch pad.

Now if you are able to get into super farm on poker starter, then that would have been only two and

a half cents.

Now this cryptocurrency went from two and one half cents all the way up to about $4.50.

That equals a near 200 X profit, and that was within days.

So it launched at the end of February and a month later had made a 200 X and over the course of time,

this could make a hell of a lot more money.

You know, this is only the beginning and we haven't really fully realized the bull market yet.

So this could go up to 20, $30 and imagine if you had gotten in.

Two and a half cents.

So launchpads are a fantastic way of being able to make money, either short term or long term, as

I've just shown you.

And there are a number of them, I'm going to take you through them right now.

So you've got poker starter.

I'm going to be showing you in the next lecture exactly what is needed to get involved in all of these.

PokerStars to concentrate on cryptocurrencies.

Focusing on the Polkadot ecosystem BSC Pad focuses on the Binance Smart Chain ecosystem, paid concentrates

on Binance, Ethereum and Polkadot all finance concentrates on Cardano, card starter concentrates on

Cardano, Poly Starter concentrates on Polygon and Clickpad concentrates on Binance Smart Chain.

So there are a number of different launchpads and they all offer fantastic projects for you to be able

to get involved and make lots of money on.

So I'm going to be showing you the exact ways to get involved in all of these launchpads in the next

video.

## 71. Why launchpads get you in at the Best

LaunchPads have been around for about a year and it is a way of cheating the system essentially, instead

of investing in cryptocurrencies that are already existing and may have launched years ago and early

investors got into those cryptocurrencies a long time ago.

Essentially, you are making those who got in early even richer when you invest later with LaunchPads

is enabling you to invest in cryptocurrencies from the ground up.

Now, I've already shown you the example of me when I got involved in Polygon.

Now, everybody who invests in Polygon is making me richer.

So LaunchPads is a way of you becoming the early investor that later investors then make you rich.

So launchpads are a decentralized way for projects to raise capital or get funds.

So the previous system was ISOs, and what a crypto currency would do is they would have on their website

a way in which you could contribute your funds to that project.

And then when it lists, you got it at its initial price.

That means potentially cheaper than when it comes out on the exchange that has now been replaced by

Eidos, which come out on LaunchPads.

So it's a decentralized way.

That means that the launchpad gives anybody the chance to get involved and it gives any project the

chance to get funds that enables the public to be able to invest from the ground up.

So this is DAO Maker.

Now, DAO Maker is one of what I would call the blue chip launchpads.

And you can see here the successes that investors in these launches got when they got into these early

stage projects.

So Metal Gods 36 X Solace 71 X, Victoria VR 209 X.

That means that if you put $1,000, that would have turned into $209,000 game fi 352 x.

Now, there are some cases of three figure multipliers like you see with DE and you get some high double

figures like 42 x 35 x 45 x 34 x.

There have been tons of multipliers made for early investors who got into these projects, but it is

not a guaranteed deal.

For instance, cerium got four x, delta fighter six x, so you still have to identify the fundamentally

strong cryptocurrencies from the weaker projects.

Now most projects do launch via launch pads, but they tend to do it via the blue chip launch pads.

The ones that have performed the best have the highest market cap.

And as you can see, with the exception of radium, which is an ideal launch pad, but also a decentralized

exchange for Solana, I'm not including that here, but Dao Maker, CE Defi and polka starter are without

doubt the most blue chip launchpads that exist.

So launch pads aren't merely a way of being able to get into any project, but even top projects launch

via launch pads.

Now sometimes they launch directly on an exchange and that will be an IEO.

So it could launch directly on Q coin or gate rather than going on a decentralized exchange like pancakeswap

and Uniswap.

But in the main, most top projects do still launch via launch pads at IDO stage, but they do choose

the blue chip launch pads to launch on because they've got a better reputation and legitimacy.

Retail investors via launchpads can invest at the lowest price, very, very close to private sale price.

So essentially it puts the retail investor in the same position as a crypto VC.

Now taking you through crypto VCs in the second section and crypto VCs are an integral part of cryptocurrency

projects.

So the top VCs, just like in the technology world, like the top tech VCs, will have invested in the

likes of Google, Facebook, Twitter, etc. and same as in cryptocurrency, where we have got our own

venture capitalists that are very successful in this field.

The likes of Pantera, Fen Bucci, Fbg, Polychain, Coinbase, Binance, etc. So these crypto VCs over

the course of time have built a record of funding top projects and connecting top projects with influencers

on crypto Twitter on YouTube, connecting them with influential people in cryptocurrency like heads

of exchanges, social media outlets or news outlets.

So crypto VCs have earned their right to take part in top projects at Private Sale because they've done

a lot of work in the past, building their connections and connecting the projects they work with.

With those connections as a retail investor, they have done nothing essentially to earn the same position

as VCs.

So launchpads equals the field enables for retail investors to have the same footing as crypto VCs basically

being able to be involved in a project at the lowest price before it goes on exchange.

Now you can get into cryptocurrencies under 1 million market cap.

That is where the potential lies.

So if we look on Coinmarketcap, you can see that most of the top projects are worth billions.

So when you get involved in a cryptocurrency under $1 million, that gives the potential for incredible

gains.

And to give you the example, once again, I was able to get involved in Matic when it was worth 0.2

of a cent.

So you are not always going to be able to get a matic story.

You aren't going to always be able to get a 1000 x.

That's just not how it works in real life.

However, you are increasing your chances of getting into a 1000 x the earlier you get into an opportunity

and that is essentially what Eidos and launchpads give you the opportunity to get into a project early

and sometimes it will make modest multipliers 2 to 5 X and other times it could make huge multipliers

like you saw with earlier examples of 300 X, if not maybe more.

Now LaunchPads have evolved to such a state that now you can get involved in ideas across major blockchains.

So Binance, Ethereum, Polkadot, Solana, Avalanche and trending crypto categories such as gaming,

defi nfts meme coins.

Every one of them is available to you via launchpads.

And as you can see from this holistic list here, you have got most of those bases covered.

## 

## 72. What's the best launchpads to make MULTIPLIERS for you?

What are the top launchpads?

I'm going to be presenting this to you in the form of what's been the best multiplier and what is the

cost for being a member of this particular launchpad.

So what I'm trying to do here is what is the most cost effective way to get the best multipliers?

So in a number five, I have got polka starter.

Now polka starter is one of the main launch pads.

It's one of the first that came out in initially it was for polka dot based projects, but now they

basically launch projects on every ecosystem.

So looking at the top bar here, it's what is the name of the launch pad, what is the ecosystem they

serve, how many tokens are required, what is the cost of these tokens and what's the best multiplier

it's achieved.

I have put L here against polka starter because polka starter is a lottery based launch pad.

That means there is no guaranteed allocation.

There is no way of guaranteeing you are going to get an allocation.

In a polka starter based project.

You need a minimum of 250 tokens to take part in polka star to Eidos, and this is $340 based on the

current price of polka starter.

But if you go for the highest here, which is 30 K of tokens, which costs 41,000, that increases your

chances of almost having a guaranteed allocation.

Now its highest multiplier was Refined Bull and that was 330 X.

Then we've got Dao Maker.

Now DAO Maker again is a lottery based launchpad and this launches projects across all ecosystems,

across all blockchains.

So the tokens required are two K to 50 K, the lowest tier means you have a small chance of getting

involved in the IDO and the highest tier which costs 118 k enables you to have the best chance of getting

into the IDO launch.

So two k to 50 k tokens, 4.7 k to 118 K in terms of cost to get those tokens.

And again, the best multiplier was game fi with 350 to X.

Then see Defi.

Now see Defi is really a crypto games based launchpad.

Now this is guaranteed.

So although the initial tier, which is 250 tokens and 1.4 K is the only lottery tier four see defi,

most of them are guarantee you an allocation.

Again, this serves all ecosystems.

The tokens required is 250 to 10 K.

The cost for the 250 is 1.4 K, and the highest cost you would ever have to pay is $580,000.

That's a lot of money.

And that is why I think only the elites really take part in see Defi.

Now again, the best multiplier was BLOCK Topia and that was 558 X then game zone.

Game zone is guaranteed at all levels and it serves all ecosystems.

Is basically a crypto gaming based launchpad and crypto games is one of the hottest narratives in cryptocurrency,

hence why it ranks so high so it serves all ecosystems.

The tokens required are five K and that does give you a guaranteed allocation, but it's quite a low

allocation all the way to the highest tier, which is 125 K of tokens that cost between $550 and 13.7

K.

So much better in terms of the initial capital.

Now, the best multiplier ever made on game zone is actually not Vel, it's actually met a V Vvpat which

was 1330 x, but a lot of launchpads also did a v pad.

So I'm going to give game zone.

The second best multiplier they got, which was 668 X and this was with Valhalla, which is a vlas based

crypto gaming project.

Vlas is basically a fork of Solana, so they have created a new project out of the Solana blockchain

called Varus, which is basically a layer one high transaction blockchain.

So Valhalla was the first crypto project that launched on vlas, hence why its massive multiplier.

And then the number one I've got on this list is a vlast pad.

Again, guaranteed allocation.

If you stay on Vela's pad, it serves all ecosystems.

It really is there to serve verus blockchain and it's the only one that serves the Vela blockchain,

but it also serves Solana, Binance, Smart Chain Pulse.

Ethereum, etc. so the tokens required is 20 K to 100 K.

As I've shown you already with the last pad.

This can cost between 1.1 K and 11 K.

Right now the best multiplier here was matter v pad.

They also launched Valhalla.

They also launched Bit Orbit.

All of these over 300 x.

So whereas PAD arguably has the best multipliers across all of the launch pads based on the cost associated

with getting involved in it.

This is just me analyzing what have been the best multipliers, the cost to get into that launch pad

in the first place and what it serves.

## 

## 73. My Strategy: How I have achieved 15 100x gains with Launchpads!

What is my strategy when investing in launch pads?

Now, launch pads have become a huge part of my investing strategy.

It has been responsible for me achieving 15 100 X plus investments in the last eight months.

So what has been my strategy now?

This is my strategy and I'm giving it to you for informational purposes, but if you want to look into

it more, I'm going to be sharing it with you here.

So I have invested largely in blue Zella based launch pads.

This is because Blue Zilla is the name behind launch pads.

They are well known for launching launch pads and launching high multiplier projects within these launch

pads.

They launch new launch pads via their current launch pads.

So I initially got involved in B.sc pad, getting involved in BSC pad.

Allow me to get involved in TRON pad EVE pad a pad, vela's pad meter V pad, pulse pad, game zone

and also NFT launch and kick pad, which are more lesser launch pads.

So every new launch pad, the Blue Zella launch comes out of one of their existing launch pads.

So I was there from the beginning because BFC Pad was their first ever launch pad.

So my strategy by getting involved in all of these various launch pads is, is that I have got a combined

allocation of pad launched on various pad, pulse pad, game zone, BSC pad and a couple of others.

And as a result of that, I was able to get a large allocation.

So each of them gave me around about 100 to $200 of Mr. V pad.

But combining them all, I got $1,000 in metaphor pad.

Therefore, I was able to get the highest concentration of multipliers.

So instead of having $200 via one launch pad and therefore I make 1000 X on that $200, I was able to

get $1,000 worth by being in all of these and therefore 1000 X on top of $1,000 blue sellers launches

are 200 to 500 K market caps or less.

So traditionally, like when I got involved in Polygon, I look for early opportunities that start from

around about 1 to $3 million.

But Blue Zilla allows you to invest in cryptocurrencies between 205 hundred K.

Therefore, if that cryptocurrency that they launch goes to 2 million, that's already a ten X.

If it goes to 20 million, that's a 100 x.

So the abilities to make 100 X's via seller is much, much higher.

Now they give a 10% unlock per month.

So if you've invested $1,000, let's say you will get $100 upfront worth of the tokens that you've invested

in.

And then over the course of months you will get an unlock each time.

And that is the same for most pieces.

They get involved in early stage projects.

Now the reason why I'm going exclusively with Bruce Seller is because of the multiplier performances

they have been able to achieve.

So in reverse order bit orbit was 0.7 of a cent and then it went to $1.36.

Therefore making it 194 X game zone was a 248 X versus 288 TRON Pad 420 Astro Swap 530 Wagyu Swap 628

Valhalla 667 and Meter V Pad 1330 X and it still stands 90 X to date.

So this shows you the massive multipliers I was able to make investing in Blue Zella projects because

they have been launching not only hot launch pads like Metal V Pad and Tron pad and Vela's pad, but

also big multiplier projects like Valhalla, Wagyu Swap and Astro Swap.

## 

## 74. What are the Drawbacks of Launchpads?

Obviously everything I've said so far sounds fantastic and it sounds like the opportunity you should

get involved in.

But why may you not want to get involved?

And what are the disadvantages?

So you are paying to play.

Okay, so you can't just be a launchpad member for free.

You can't have that equal sitting as a crypto VC who has done years and years of hard work just like

that.

The way to do it is you have to buy launch pad tokens in order to be able to get involved in the ideas

on that launch pad.

And of course, that can range in terms of price.

The more that it costs, the greater the rewards, ostensibly.

Now, it can cost anything from $500 to $500000.

And I'm going to take you through the costs very, very shortly.

But essentially, you are paying for the privilege.

You can't just be on an equal footing as a crypto VC.

That's just not how life works.

You have to pay for the position.

Essentially, it's paying to be privileged.

Retail investors, when they have the ability to invest at the lowest possible cost of a cryptocurrency

is they are going to sell it at the earliest opportunity.

Crypto VCs are not designed that way.

Crypto VCs are much smarter.

They want the project to grow over the course of time.

And the reason why is because when a VC invests in a cryptocurrency, they don't get their whole investment

from that IDO up front.

They only get 10%.

They get released over the period of months and years.

So it doesn't benefit them to just sell that cryptocurrency as soon as it goes on an exchange, as soon

as that makes a multiplier.

But retail investors, they don't care about the project because all they want is a quick profit and

that is why they have to pay for it, because they can't be relied upon like VCs can.

When it's a bull market, launchpads do extremely well.

Not only do the launchpad tokens do very well, but all of the CDOs that launch on a launch pad, but

in a bear trend, it's the opposite.

So there is a lack of projects launching in a bear market.

There's a lack of narratives people care about.

So people don't care necessarily about gaming or about memes or about defi when it's a bear market because

people are very, very cautious.

They don't want to buy when there's a lot of fear.

And similarly, when there's a lack of greed, when people are not of the appetite to be buying, then

launch.

And Eidos do not do quite so well.

And as a result of that, there is a lack of demand for the launch pad tokens and therefore people sell

them.

And the reason why people sell them is because they anticipate that there's going to be pain for some

time, and so they sell it before they experience greater pain.

So the earlier you are in a bear trend or a bear market to sell off your launchpad tokens, the less

pain you will suffer as a result.

Because the longer it goes on, the more the launch pad tokens decrease in value over subscription.

So when there is a hot project, the token price of the launch pad goes up seismically and the later

that you get in, the higher the price you pay.

And because certain projects get so many people that want to get involved at Edo Stage, there is a

smaller allocation given to each of the retail investors because there's just so much demand and are

so many people that have staked enough launch pad tokens to take part in that?

IDO So the later you are, the higher the price you will have paid.

And yet you will probably get just as much as somebody who paid, much less for it.

There's greater do your own research in order to vet opportunities.

So analyze opportunities and essentially find the ones that are good opportunities versus the opportunities

that are opportunistic.

So the difference between opportunities and opportunistic is opportunistic.

People are ones that don't really have anything solidly fundamental about the project, about the team

is probably run by a bunch of amateurs, but via launchpads they can get a load of funds for projects.

And if the retail investor that invests in a rubbish project doesn't do their own research, they're

going to get burnt.

But there are solid opportunities.

But because this is a decentralized way, it puts the onus on the retail investor to do their own research

to find the opportunities amongst the weaker opportunistic projects that are also launching.

And KYC is required for pretty much every launchpad that KYC is to ensure that people are investing

from jurisdictions that allow them to invest.

So most of the world can invest in Eidos, but there are restricted countries that cannot participate

and one of them being the US.

So in America and Canada you are not able to participate in Eidos because of the jurisdiction rules.

Each government will have set rules in place.

These rules are typically to protect the investor from getting burned.

So places like China, the US, Canada, they are putting in rules to stop people from investing in

early stage opportunities for protection.

But in my personal opinion, it's actually restricting people's ability to be able to make massive multipliers

in cryptocurrency.

But unfortunately, it's something that cannot be helped.

So you have to do KYC, which means know your customer, you have to fill out a form, give a passport

picture to prove where you are, where you are from, and that will show whether you are able to take

part in these Eidos.

## 

## 75. What is the launchpad process of investing in an IDO?

So what is the process of investing in an idea via a launchpad?

So I'm going to be taking you through this step by step.

But essentially what you do is you bite enough launchpad tokens for a tier, i.e. on vela's pad.

So I'm on vela's pad right now.

And what it says here is you need to stake at least 20,000 tokens to be able to take part in Eidos if

you want to be on the highest tier is 100,000 tokens.

So Vela's pad tokens are at this present time 11.6 $0.05.

That is $2,330 to take part at the lowest tier for Vela's pad.

If we take part on the highest tier, it's 11,600.

So you need to buy enough launch pad tokens to be able to take part in the IDO.

And typically every launch pad has a tier system and depending on how much allocation you want, will

decide what tier you join.

So if you're happy with, let's say a 10 to $30 allocation, go for the lowest tier.

If you want something more approaching hundreds, if not thousands, you have to go for the highest

tier.

You then stake them on the launch pad app before IDO launch.

So on Vela's pad, for instance, you would go to open app and this will open up the launch pad for

you to be able to invest.

And what you would do is you would go to staking because what you need to do is you need to stake your

tokens first before you can take part in any of the projects.

And these are all the projects that have taken part so far, and a lot of these have done extremely

well.

Meta V Pad 1330 x pulse pad 500 x, Valhalla 600 x.

Okay.

So you had to go to staking first and then you will have to connect your wallet and then you have to

stake the tokens on the platform, approve those tokens, and you have to do this hours before the actual

project launches.

So you can do this about 3 hours before the project launches.

Then once the project actually becomes live, then you can click into the project and you can essentially

take part in the project.

And this is already closed, obviously.

But when you go into this page, when a project is open to be invested in, you will be able to add

funds on this page.

So once the idea launch starts happening, you have to make sure you have got one of the appropriate

stablecoins to invest in that idea.

So you've staked the tokens and that allows you to invest in the project.

But the currency you then use to invest in that project is a stablecoin and the main ones are usdc for

Ethereum based projects or be used for Binance based projects.

So what you have to make sure that you have got Usdc or be USD in your wallet and typically it's a metamask

wallet to invest in that IDO after that initial launch phase, there is another opportunity to get involved

in that idea and that is first come, first served.

So any allocation that hasn't been bought basically goes into a pool and the first people to add their

funds for those tokens get an additional allocation on top of the standard allocation.

So you get the standard allocation and that is what goes for everybody.

And typically you have a time scale of about 3 to 4 hours to be able to add your funds and therefore

get the tokens for the IDO.

And after that period, there will be an additional opportunity to purchase extra tokens if there is

some allowance left after and then after the project closes like you just saw with Vela's pad, you

have to wait.

It could be a period of a couple of hours or it could be some days before that project then launches

on a decentralized exchange.

Because ultimately that's what an IDO is, initial decentralized exchange offering.

So it's investing before it goes on.

A decentralized exchange and the most popular are pancakeswap and uniswap.

Then once that project launches, you can either flip it for a project or you can hodl onto it.

If you are happy that you have gotten the best price and you think this project is going to do well

long term, you will hodl it or you can flip some.

Because what happens with the launchpad is let's say you have invested $1,000 into an IDO project,

you will get 10% upfront normally.

Now with certain launchpads you get differing amounts.

Sometimes it can be 25% some.

It could be a whole hundred percent, but in the instance is that you only get part of your tokens,

so 10% up front, then you can flip that and use the other 90% to stay long term invested.

That's what a lot of people do.

That's what I have done as well.

So this is a way of being able to profit from the initial hype phase of a particular idea because IO

stage this is typically one of the most popular types for a project because everybody is excited about

its launch.

Everybody wants to speculate on what price is going to reach on its launch day.

So when this opens out on a decentralized exchange, the price just shoots up and that is where you

can make a flip.

So you sell that cryptocurrency whilst it's in that initial hype place, and then the 90% that is given

to you over the coming months, you can then just hodl on to.

## 

## 76. BSCPad Walkthough - How to make 329x with BSCPad!

Welcome back to another video.

In this video, I'm going to be taking you through step by step how to get involved in an idea directly.

And the example I'm going to use is BSC pad.

Now, BSC Pad is one of the more popular and most utilized launch pads in cryptocurrency.

As the name suggests, it concentrates on early cryptocurrencies in the Binance smart chain blockchain.

So there are a few blockchains at the moment where cryptocurrencies are being released on.

The two main ones are Etherium, which is this one, and most of these cryptocurrencies come out on

Uniswap.

And then there is Binance, Smart Chain, and when these cryptocurrencies launch from Launchpad, they

tend to go on Pancakeswap.

But before it goes on Pancakeswap, you are able to get it hopefully at a fantastic discount with the

launchpad platform.

So BSC is why I'm going to be taking you through today and what you have to do on BSC pad is you have

to buy into a tier.

So if I show you BSC Pad, the first decentralized IDA platform for the Binance Smart Chain Network,

they are a decentralized IDA platform.

That means that there is no central control over this.

You just need to follow the steps and you can get involved.

Now they have a tiered system, so if you are wanting to get an allocation, you have to buy into one

of these tiers as a minimum.

So you need a thousand for bronze, 2500 for silver, 5000 for gold, and then for the higher allocations.

And the higher it is, you need 10,000 iPad or 25,000 or 75,000.

So essentially with these tiers, you need to multiply 1000 or whichever number you are wanting to invest

in by the price.

So be 1000 times 1.31.

So that would be $1,310.

Now, if you wanted to get involved in platinum, that would be 10,000.

So essentially that would mean that it's $13,100 to be a platinum holder.

I am going to be showing you platinum because that is the tier that I have bought into.

Now there are differences between the tiers.

So as you can see here, you need to state 3 hours before the allocation round opens.

And in order to be able to invest in a project, you need to like comment and retweet about that project

from the iPad.

You do get a guaranteed allocation.

If you have bought into this tier, you get a guaranteed allocation, but your pool wait is ten.

What this means is, is that you get a much lesser allocation than having a higher pool.

So you've got 30, 65.

And as you can see with platinum 145 now with diamond and Blue Diamond, you get much higher pool weight,

which means that you will have a larger allocation.

But it all depends on if you really want a huge allocation, you know, because sometimes you may just

want to have a decent sized allocation that you can make 100 X on rinse and repeat.

You have to weigh up the cost versus the reward.

So for me, 13,000 is a very, very good price to be able to get a decent allocation.

Once you have got the required amount for BSC pad, what you will need to do is you will need to stake

your tokens.

So as you can see here, I have staked my BFC pad and I've got my 10,000 in here.

All right, now you get a 15% APY.

So you get 15% of rewards based on your allocation.

So you'll get 15% of 10,000.

Back to you.

Now, I have been staking this for around about a week and I've already made 36 BFC pads, so that's

$36.

If this was to go up seven X and it would be seven times 36.

So.

It's a very, very good system.

Right.

So once you have done that, you need to connect your metamask, you need to deposit your BSC pad and

then you'll be eligible to stake.

You have to read the terms conditions and go next.

But we won't do that necessarily.

Right now.

I'm just showing you what you need.

You need to stake it first, then you need to complete KYC.

So this is to identify yourself essentially so that you are not from one of the restricted jurisdictions

to get involved in Eidos.

And then that is about it.

Once you have done that and then a project is about to come up, what you need to do is you need to

join the Telegram group to make sure that you know when the projects are open.

So as you can see here, there are two projects well as one project open right now, but two different

tests.

So you've got Lexa and then you've got the Blue Diamond Private.

Okay?

So they get a much larger allocation than any other category or any other tier.

All right.

And then you've got all the projects coming soon.

So these will be coming up in the coming days.

The thing I like about BFC Pad is that you tend to get a new project every day or every other day,

so there's always opportunity.

So now how do you get involved?

So let me take you through that process.

So first things first.

You have to go into the actual page that allows you to invest.

So.

Typically it will be a round about 9 a.m. UTC time that these ideas become available for you to invest

in.

Now, in order to be able to invest in a IDO on BFC pad, you need be USD.

This will be the buying currency.

So typically you will have to you will have been B or B, USD, B and B is the Binance coin and B USD

is the Binance dollar.

So this is intended to always be relatively stable at $1.

So 312 B USD is typically $312 or thereabouts.

So now that I've clicked into that page, you can see what I can, what allocation I have.

So I have been given a 215 B USD allocation that's massive.

So if this was to make a 100 X, then this $250 would be to $21,000.

If this was to make a 100 x, which it could over time gain in at the very, very low prices it could

ten X, in which case that $250 could turn into 3100.

Okay.

So this is a large allocation compared to what you get in some other launchpads.

All right.

So now that we have got that, they have got details here.

So what we have got, first of all, is the general pool.

So that is the allocation round.

Then you have got first come first serve pool.

This is a different pool which opens after the allocation round has closed and it's basically a free

for all.

Okay.

So once the the timer goes down to zero, then there is a first come first serve pool.

You've got to be quick for that.

If you are quick, you can get extra allocations.

So let's say there's an additional $50 you can get in the first come first serve pool and this will

open at 1245 UTC is pretty much normally the same time every time.

So anyway.

Yes.

So it will show you the cap.

This is how much are they looking to raise in this allocation round?

So as you can see, is $650,000.

Now, if we have a now this is an NFT project and some NFT projects can be upwards of $1,000,000,000.

So if you're getting involved in a cryptocurrency where the market cap is 650,000, that is super low.

Like if this was to go to 6.5 million, that is a ten x.

If this was to go to 65 million, that's 100 X.

If this was to be a powerhouse like a slam dunk cryptocurrency, like you get the baseball, you throw

up in the air, you slam it out of the stadium.

It's a home run and it was 1000.

If this went to 6.5 billion, that would be a 1000 x, which would essentially turn your $215 into potentially

$250,000, which would be absolutely insane.

And the thing is, is that if you go into just five of these, then that could make you a millionaire

if they went to 1000 X.

And then the access type is private.

So you are essentially getting involved in a private sale right now, if you wanted to have a look.

To see what is the project about then?

There are various links right here.

So first of all, you've got the website now links it.

I like this because this has actually got a dot com.

This is an nft and defi platform.

So nonfungible tokens and decentralized finance.

Imagine you could turn your art, music, film, books and all kinds of inventions, inventions like

source code or even patents into nfts and have them available right away to anybody and everybody on

defi liquidity pools.

This is lex.

It won't hear the best part.

We won't charge you anything until you're successful with your nft launch.

So as you can see very early stage this project because the website is relatively underdeveloped, there's

not very much here.

So that means that there is a lot of potential for this to grow over time because if you're starting

with the bare basics, then as this grows, as this develops, then this could be unlocking a lot of

value.

All right.

So if you decide you want to get involved in it, then what you need to do is you need to approve,

first of all.

So we'll click approve.

Now, my balance is 312.

All right.

And now they are giving me an allocation of 215.

So I can do max.

I could do 100.

I could do 100.

It's up to me.

I don't have to use the full allocation.

I can decide what I want of that 215 to invest.

So I'm going to just show you the max.

So I'm going to approve it.

And this will take me to another screen where I have to pay a fee for the approval to use my USD on

this platform.

So once I have done that and as you can see, it was a very, very tiny cost compared to a lot of cryptocurrencies

like that is a very low cost.

So anyway, so a brief success.

So now I can join the pool.

All right, so I am going to put my max join.

I'm just going to stay with the guest fee that they are giving me and just put confirm you need to make

sure that you have got BNB for the gas fees.

So now that I have done that, you'll see it's kind of loading.

It's trying to spend that 215 that I have got as an allocation into the actual pool.

And once that is approved and it has been approved, so you can see swapped 215 USD.

That gives me because the swap rate is one B USD equals one Lexi that has given me 215.

Lexi Now, now once this pool finishes, then I will be able to withdraw that into my Metamask wallet.

Once it's in my Metamask wallet, then I can sell it once it becomes available on an exchange.

And in this instance it will probably be in a pancake, it'll probably be in Pancakeswap.

This is available to sell in now.

Once you have done that, it is up to you how you decide you want to use your allocation.

You will have two choices really.

You can either flip it in the short term.

So let's say that and this is why you would want to do it, because in the short term, sometimes in

the first two days that a cryptocurrency is launched, that tends to be its most bullish days.

That's when it tends to achieve a first initial spike.

All right.

It tends to be in the first kind of opening hour that the cryptocurrency is available on an exchange,

that this will achieve its first high valuation.

Then from that point, people will probably be selling off initially because there's a lot of people

in the market that just want to flip this for a profit.

So if they make a 5 to 20 X, then they will flip.

They will get a profit out of this very quickly.

The second thing you may want to do is you may want to hold onto this for the long term.

So this current time of filming is not an F2 season, this is an NFT and defi cryptocurrency.

But we are neither in an NFT or defi season.

In defi season.

This can be competitive with other NFT platforms, in which case this could be an excellent long term

investment.

Like it's very unlikely you're going to get out of 100, 200,000 X straight off the bat.

I mean, it can happen, but it typically would happen if this cryptocurrency was in the season of its

value proposition and currently we are not in the season.

So those are the two things.

You can either flip it for a quick profit or because people are going to want to buy this because they

weren't able to get into a new cryptocurrency, a very low market cap on the launchpad.

So they will wait for it to be out on an exchange and then they will buy it there.

And that typically takes the price up so you can flip it or you can hodl onto it for the long term.

And that could unlock very, very good gains and incredible profits down the line.

So I hope that this is given you a very good understanding of how it works.

Now, if you happen to use BFC Pad, what you want to do is you want to wait for this allocation round

to close.

Once it closes, it goes to zero.

There will be a F, C, f, s pull.

And what you want to do then is you'll want to approve it ASAP as soon as it becomes live.

You want to approve the remaining f c f s allocation.

First come.

First serve.

And then when the countdown on that closes, you can then join the pool and you can spend what you have

approved for BFC Pad to spend on this platform.

So very, very simple.

You saw it.

It was not very much at all.

You just need to go approve.

And there was a very, very minor fee for that.

Then join the pool, minor fee for that, and then you've got your allocation.

It's that simple.

It's that simple.

And now I have got 215 Lexi, which I can then sell and I have got it.

Whilst this cryptocurrency is one of its lowest prices, I very rarely see an NFT platform 650,000.

It's very, very rare.

So now I'm going to show you what happens after you have made your first contribution in the allocation

round.

What happens when the timer goes to zero so that you can take part in the first come, first serve?

So the allocation round has closed and now there is an option to take part because only 81% of the pool

has been filled.

So Max and I am now going to approve it.

And as you can see, only costs $0.13, which is so minimal.

And then I wait for it to approve.

And then one set of proofs, then once this timer goes to zero, so it's currently on 12 minutes 51.

Once that goes to zero, I am going to be able to buy some of this allocation.

But you've got to be very quick because there are other platinum and maybe other levels waiting to be

able to get this last 20% of allocation.

So once this goes to zero, then you've got to act fast.

Join, pull, max, join up the gas.

Confirm.

Just missed a case, so I didn't quite get the tokens in the first come, first serve.

I didn't want them anyway.

Anyway, so that shows you, I suppose, how competitive it is for ideas, particularly ones that the

community are really buzzing about and ones where you can get a very significant allocation.

So now that the project is closed, what you need to do is you will need to eventually claim these tokens.

So we go back to the Lexis page, then you will see that it will say your allocation here.

So from this point, once it launches on the decentralized exchange, which will probably be pancakeswap,

then you will be able to claim tokens and you'll be able to send them to Metamask.

So in this occasion 215 Lexy, you will need to add the token to Metamask so that it shows the token

balance.

If you add it, if you claim the tokens but you haven't added the token to Metamask, then although

the tokens will sit in your wallet, it won't display the balance until you add the tokens.

So make sure that you do that.

But that is the process very, very simple, very, very smooth.

I hope that this has given you a good insight into how to use launch pads, how smooth it is when you

actually get involved in it, and what it can deliver for you in terms of gains.

And this is the case with most launch pads.

So you've got to really decide what are the types of cryptocurrencies you want to get in, you know,

do you want to get into Polkadot, Binance, Ethereum or Polygon or whatever types of cryptocurrencies

you are most interested in?

Or then you will be able to following a very, very simple process like this.

But BSC Pad has got a very, very good process.

So I hope you enjoyed this and I'll see you in the next video.

## 

## 77. How to use Launchpads to exploit key narratives?

What are the various launchpads for particular categories in cryptocurrency?

These are the launchpads per blockchain per category.

So for Solana, we've got star launched selenium and solar starter.

These are the three key launchpads for projects involved in Solana.

For Cardano, it'd be ADA, Pad, Card Starter and Ockham.

So if you wanted to get just involved in ADA based early stage projects, these are the three main ones

for metaverse and gaming.

So VR, augmented reality and crypto gaming, which is arguably a megatrend in cryptocurrency.

Then these are the launch pads that you can get involved in.

So Metaverse Pad C defi games on star, launched poker, started dealmaker and paid network.

If you want to get involved in Phantom Base, then you want to go for Fantom Maker, Avalanche, AWACS

Launcher and Tera.

You've got Star Tera and you have got TerraForm OC.

So these are the various different launchpads that exist out there to serve all of the blockchains and

all of the key narratives out there.

## 

## 78. How to use Launchpads to build your fortune!

How to use launch pads in the most beneficial way possible.

Now launch pads are really good to get into eidos for flipping like almost.

Doesn't matter which cryptocurrencies you get in, you're pretty much getting in idea price, which

is a very, very low price, low market cap, very, very difficult in most occasions to actually see

the price go down to the IDO price.

In a lot of occasions.

In fact, most on Kickstarter have never come back to that idea price even if they lose a lot of value

weeks down the line.

So you can use Eidos as a way of a quick flip so that you can increase positions into cryptocurrencies

you actually want because in most cases you will make at least a2x, right?

It's almost a guaranteed two x.

So if you had an allocation of $300, then after the IDO launches, then you will get at least $600.

And in a lot of cases you could get 3000, which means that if you like a cryptocurrency that you've

been eyeing up to buy, then you can sell the idea for ten x2x to ten x and take a bigger position in

something you actually want to hold for the long term.

That is one good way of being invested in Eidos and what you do with them.

The second best is for long term investing when you see something that has potential.

So what you should do when you are a deciding what launch pad to get in and be when you are deciding,

right, I'm in this launch pad.

What cryptocurrencies can I take a long term investment in?

Then you want to be using in conjunction my whale app.

So what you want to be doing is you want to be looking at the various ideas.

So in this occasion we will look at Stratus.

So if we go and go into Stratus on the Whale app, then we can see who is invested in stratus.

And this will give us a good indication as to has this project got long term potential?

Have they got VCs that are likely to fund them for the long term and therefore deliver a lot of value

down the line?

So as we can see with stratus, they have got fen bushi kinetic bikes in spark.

So what we want to do is we want to cross-reference this with the venture capitalist list, which you

got from section one and you will be able to see, right, who are top tier, who are mid-tier, who

are low tier, and has this got potential.

So as you can see, Fen Bushi is a top tier and then we have got kinetic and spark and fix it, right?

So we've got three mid tiers and one top tier so we can make a deduction that stratus will be a very

good long term investment.

If we go to BFC Pad, then what you can do there is you can look at projects and you can see which ones

have potential.

Now you can either and the same on Kickstarter you can either go into the website in case they have

listed who's invested them.

So I'm going to just go into the website and have a look and I'm also going to have a look on the whale

app.

So it's very I put that in.

One platform for everything.

Defi.

This sounds pretty good.

So let's do that.

See who they have got invested in them.

So they have got a 21.

NGC, GBC and these both are the top tier investors GBK and NGC.

So massive investors in cerium.

So cerium looks really good.

Like the the value proposition, the scope looks excellent.

It's a mobile based cross-chain wallet.

So that means that you on your mobile are able to hold all cryptocurrencies across various blockchains,

across all the blockchains, but you can use them for deep fee purposes so you can optimize returns.

So this tells me that it's got defi, it's got lending, it's got borrowing, it's got yield farming,

right?

So it's basically defi in your mobiles.

This sounds really good as a grand scope vision.

So if we go down and have a look so you can see supported wallets metamask and they've also got Coinbase

on here.

So if you've got assets on these wallets, then you can use them for defi purposes.

So to me that sounds really, really good.

And as a result of that, who they've got invested are land capital ASU 21 MGC G Big X 21.

So these are premier and mid-tier investors.

So this sounds really, really good for a long term.

Hodl So on these, on those particular type of cryptocurrencies, you may not necessarily want to just

flip it for a quick profit or at the very least what you could do if you like this kind of strategy

is you could sell this once it launches, because typically when it launches in the first two days,

it performs it as best sell it near the top.

You can never really guarantee where the top is, but sell it near the top.

And then after the two days of parabola go down, then what you can do is when the price drops significantly,

you can buy back and take an even bigger position.

So that's another thing that you can do and all of these are made available to you as a result of launchpads.

I have to admit that I personally, having looked at Sphere, am, looked at music and NFT stars, having

done my research on just these three, that they have got decent investors, they could be long term

plays.

So as a result of that, what I have done is I have actually upgraded my tier on BSC pad.

I have upgraded from platinum to Diamond and hopefully that works out well because as far as I'm concerned

in projects that have got a lot of promise, I would rather have a bigger allocation so that I am able

to make massive amounts of money.

Okay, so in platinum the pool weight is 145.

In Diamond, the poor way is 400.

So that essentially means is is two and one half times the allocation.

So if I'm getting an allocation of 300 here, then by rights, I should be able to get around about

700 through diamonds.

So therefore I really value launchpads.

LaunchPads are a way of being very, very similar to the whale investors that you see here.

All of these whale investors, they all get sizable allocations in early stage projects.

And as a diamond holder on BSE pad, I am getting closer to what they get.

I mean, knowing what it's like in the venture capital world, they are getting allocations of anything

from $10000 to $150000.

They get large allocations.

So something like $700 doesn't necessarily compete.

However, it it makes more sense advantageously to be able to get a $700 allocation at a rock bottom

price than buying it later for ten times the price for the same amount of tokens.

So as far as I'm concerned, it's really good for a step in the door.

It's really good to have my initial batch of tokens.

And if I really like a cryptocurrency, then I can increase on my amount of tokens.

So let's say for cerium, I get a 7 to $800 allocation and then that goes up 20 x, which means that

$800 turns into 16,000.

Then what I can do is, if I really want to, is I can add to my position, I can I can buy more tokens

after it launches and have a much more major position.

But at least this gives me a foot in the door at the lowest possible price.

So that is how you can use launchpads to your advantage.

## 

## 79. What to learn from the Best Gains made in IDO launches

Violent multipliers in cryptocurrency are quite rare.

To get 100 X's or more particularly within weeks or days of launch, is extremely rare.

However, in the case of Eidos launching via a launchpad, it has been achieved multiple times.

And what I'm going to show you here is the top five Aida performances from my experience.

So in a number five, we have super fun.

This was an NFT platform owned by one of the top YouTubers crypto YouTubers.

Now Edo Stage.

This was 2.5 cents to buy IDO when it launched, which is what the L stands for.

It went to $4.74, which gave a gains of 190 X, which meant a $1,000 turned into $190,000, which is

insane.

Then in number four, we have got poly plastic.

Poly elastic came out on kick pad and this came out no, no, no.

Three of a cent like it was very, very cheap.

For $88, you got 2.25 million tokens.

And then when it launched within two days, it achieved 0.9 of a cent, which meant it went up 236 X,

which means $1,000 would have turned into 236 or in my case, the $88 allocation that I got in poly

elastic turned into $14,000.

Then in number three, we have Ethernet chain.

Now, this was another high quality NFT platform and this was a 27 cent IDO on poker starter.

And when it launched it very quickly went up to $74, thus getting a 287 X multiplier.

So $1,000 would have turned into $287,000, which is absolutely unbelievable.

And if you're in the Kickstarter ideas, you tend to get $300.

So that would be around about 100,000 near enough.

Then in number two, we have definable.

This was the first NFT marketplace launched on Binance Smart Chain and this was another polka starter,

IDO.

This was a three cent IDO and when it launched, basically in the first 10 minutes of launch and going

on Pancakeswap, it hit $10, which was a 333 x.

So 1000 is 333,000, which is one of the most impressive ever.

And then a number one launched on BSC pad was the BSC token.

Now, when this came out, IDO, it was $0.02 a token and its all time high which was achieved just

weeks later it hit 373 X.

So these are the top performing multipliers from launchpads.

So as you can see, absolutely enormous.

And this is just five and this is a representation of how well they can do if you get into something

that's on trend.

Great value proposition and a good launchpad and a very good a very good starting price.

The price the the results can be astronomical.

So what are my observations from these high gains?

What were the features of the crypto currencies that did extremely well?

So they had a strong value proposition in the sense they were either unique or an improvement on competition.

That's how such hype was created.

That's why such excitement was created because if their project was like everybody else's, there would

be their excitement.

There had to be an element that was exciting about it, that was unique about it, that made you think

you were getting a hold of something rare versus something like everything else.

Then they had impressive VC, so they either had top tier like for instance, REFILLABLE had Binance

Labs, which is a premier VC and a fancy chain, had the Winklevoss twins refundable, had missed the

Beast, which is one of the top YouTubers.

So they had an impressive investor list.

They were relevant or trendy and or launched during the narrative height phase.

So for instance, the third chain and refine or both came out in the next season.

So at that present time everybody was mad about NFT cryptocurrencies and people were buying everything.

Didn't matter how low quality it was and the low quality ones were going up.

710 x.

But a third of China definable were seen as premier, very high quality versions of what was out there.

And they launched at the exact right time.

It was relevant, it was trendy, and it came out of the height of the narrative that they were representing.

They had top marketing.

So for instance, Super Farm was able to have an explosive start because the founder of Super Farm happens

to be a top YouTuber and he presented it as the best crypto currency opportunity of all time.

And it had such an enormous amount of views that when it came out, the excitement was bubbling up.

Plus it was an NFT platform that came out in NFT season, but the marketing was perfect and similarly

I was behind the marketing of refillable BSE pad and poly plastic.

So when there's marketing it means there are eyes on the ETO.

There are eyes and there's excitement waiting to pounce on the idea when it launches.

That's how they explode when they launch, because they're so exclusive.

Ideas are very exclusive.

That's why getting in it is so super beneficial because it's impossible to get into in a lot of occasions.

Either you have to spend money like for instance on BFC pad or you have to be lucky, like with poker

starter with the lottery place.

But if you get it where a lot of people can't say for every one person that gets in, there are 100

to 1000 people that do not get it.

And so therefore when it launches, that means that that 1000 that didn't get in pumps it up.

So the one person that did get in makes the enormous gains.

Now, of course, when it comes out, people try and get in as early as possible to make the gains on

the way up.

But if you're already in at the earliest price, you can just sit back and sell into the demand.

And then last of all, they launched on either poker starter or B.C. pad.

Now, obviously, B.C. Pad showed proof of concept by launching their own token, which did extremely

well showed use case for the actual token.

And that is why B.C. Pad went up as a token, because not only was it a good launch and a good price,

but when B.C. Pad ended up being extremely popular, highly utilized and very smooth, like I've shown

you in a previous lecture, then that's why it went up so dramatically.

And poker starter.

Also, this is the ideal launch pad that's very exclusive.

I would say that on balance, based on all of the top ones.

So paid B.C. pad poker starter, I would say poker starter was the most exclusive.

Like if you list on poker starter, typically it's got the best VCs and it's got the most excitement.

So these are the features.

Hopefully you can use it to your advantage should you get involved in a launch pad.

# **Section 10:** Metaverse Cryptocurrencies Are Making Millionaires!

## 80. Metaverse - how I have made 7 figures in a few months!

Welcome back to another section.

In this section, I am going to take you through the metaverse.

The metaverse has exploded latter 2021 as one of the hottest subcategories in cryptocurrency it has

made in itself as a genre.

A lot of millionaires and I personally made seven figures in just metaverse projects alone.

Now, within these projects, I have personally invested around about $30,000, and this has been the

resultant effect, 1.3 million, which I imagine is going to be closer to 5 million in a few months

time.

So the metaverse is no joke.

These cryptocurrencies are evolving in popularity every day.

Now, the current market cap that means the valuation of the metaverse genre in cryptocurrency is 32

billion.

Now I equate this to when I first got started in cryptocurrency.

I got started all the way back in the springtime of 2017, and at that time, the market cap was around

about $30 billion.

And look where it has exploded to today.

Today it is in the trillions, nearly $3 trillion.

So the entire market cap has 100 X and I see the same fate with a metaverse tokens.

I think we are very early in this category of cryptocurrency and I think this is one of the most likely

to succeed as a mass adoption genre for the rest of the world.

So what I want to do in this section is I want to inform you what is the metaverse?

How can you identify what a metaverse project is and why is it so important?

Why are metaverse cryptocurrencies a hot trend?

Why have cryptocurrency projects that are concentrating on the metaverse becoming so valuable and making

so many profits then success stories?

This is going to show you what you can learn from the success that has been achieved so far.

And then I'm going to show you from what you have learnt from here, what to look for when you are investing

in a metaverse project.

So if you are looking to make a lot of money in the metaverse, you really need to pay attention to

this section.

## 

## 81. What is the Metaverse?

So what is the metaverse?

What is this expansive world that has only really exploded in popularity lately?

Well, the metaverse equals virtual reality, a fully immersive experience where users enter a 3D computerized

world.

Now, you've probably seen this in the advent of virtual reality glasses.

You put these virtual reality glasses or goggles on and you are essentially in another world, but it's

a computer generated world.

Now the metaverse is taking a step further, not only a you as a single player in a virtual reality

environment, but the metaverse actually puts you with other online users in the same environment and

you can talk to them.

Augmented reality is a mix of the virtual world and the real world.

If you play Pokémon, you have got something called AR mode where you are bringing to life virtual characters

within a real setting.

Augmented reality allows you, through the use of a phone or these goggles, to be able to see things

appearing on top of the real life landscape that you've got.

So it's a bridge between the virtual and the real world.

So virtual reality is a fully immersive 3D computerized world, and augmented reality is facing aspects

of a virtual reality on top of the real world.

And both of these types of projects are what belong in the metaverse arena.

Now, why is this so important?

Well, because it's revolutionizing life as you know it, as you have probably seen in life from the

day you were born.

Up till now is the real world.

You go out of your house, you meet people, you go to work, you meet people, you interact with people,

you get to social events and you do exactly the same.

Now, the metaverse is essentially bringing everything that you acknowledge as real life to your home.

So I could be right here in my home.

Put these virtual reality goggles on and I could be somewhere else.

I can be at a work desk in a virtual work environment, doing my job, training for that job.

So the metaverse is really exploded in light of the pandemic or COVID 19, which disrupted the world

of work in 2020 and 2021, where companies found it difficult to be able to manage their companies because

their employees had to be more flexible.

They had to accommodate their employees during lockdowns.

So a lot of people work from home.

Now, the metaverse essentially enables for companies, if they have a virtual work environment for

their employees to be doing the exact same thing they were doing, they could be sitting across from

a colleague even though they're at home, but they are simulating a virtual reality world where they

are across from their colleague, they're interacting with their colleague.

You can also attend social events.

So instead of going to a concert or a barbecue or a house party, you can do this from the comfort of

your home and still interact with the same people, with the same friends that were going to be at this

event anyway, only virtually.

And this can be the same with sporting events as well.

So you could watch the hockey, the football, American football, baseball, whatever, from the comfort

of your own home.

But you are still watching the actual game, but you are watching it in a simulated virtual reality

environment.

And then, of course, the last one is gaming.

Gaming could not be better than fully immersing yourself in the character you are playing, actually

being that character.

And this brings a whole new dimension to gaming that has never been experienced before.

This brings an addictive level to gaming.

There's never been experienced before.

And these are coming to the home via the use of the metaverse.

Now, how do cryptos come into it?

Well, because of nfts.

So nfts are non-fungible tokens, i.e. tokens dissimilar from another token.

So they have a unique limited edition value to them.

And as a result of that, when you are immersed in this metaverse, you can create and use your own

avatars which you buy, and your ownership is minted on the blockchain.

So it gives a new level of ownership to these digital avatars that you can present us when you've got

assets.

So let's say if it was jobs, a computer could be an asset, a keyboard could be an asset, a stationery

holder can be an asset, a stapler can be an asset, all of which could be nfts.

And in the future, I imagine we're probably going to have work based digital nfts.

Teams that are going to be brought out by some company or other.

And then digital.

Then this is something that has really exploded within the metaverse recently, where you are able to

buy plots of land within these virtual environments created by these cryptocurrencies.

So you are able to own that land digitally.

That means anything that takes place, you have a right to any business activities that take place.

You can earn a share of the revenue and you can rent out this land just like you can in the real world,

but bring it digitally so you have your own digital ownership of assets and of course characters.

So when you are playing as these immersive characters in a computer game, you can actually buy them

and your ownership of them is stored on the blockchain.

So this is bringing together blockchain and metaverse very nicely.

And of course what you've got in cryptocurrency are immersive virtual worlds.

So two projects in particular, the Sandbox and Decentraland, are both virtual world based, immersive

virtual reality environments where you can play games and interact with people socially within these

environments.

And Sandbox and Decentraland are now amongst the most profitable and biggest cryptocurrencies in the

entire ecosystem as a result of the metaverse.

So that is what the metaverse is.

And I cannot begin to explain to you how big this metaverse world is going to be, because currently

it is in development.

It's not yet fully out there.

And I would say that not even a 10th of 1% of people have experienced a metaverse environment before.

But it is going to happen and it's going to be a mass market shift, and cryptocurrency is likely to

be at the forefront of that.

## 

## 82. Why are Metaverse Cryptos so hot?

So why is Metaverse crypto currency so hot?

Why are people making big gains and profits on metaverse projects?

Well, the reasons are as follows because it has mass market appeal.

You have got gaming simulations and customizable worlds within cryptocurrency and within development

landscape of cryptocurrency.

A lot of the new projects coming out are building metaverse games simulations where you can be a certain

character, you can play the role of a businessman, you can play the role of a warrior.

You can shoot people.

You can kill people.

You can take over worlds as you would in a gaming situation, but it's all virtual.

So you have the enjoyment of being able to play a game and fully immersing yourself in the character

of that game without it being real life.

And of course, you create customizable worlds.

You create the world around you, and that is what is happening in cryptocurrency right now.

A whole plethora of different games are being released that give you different worlds, different experiences,

different simulations that allow you to experience the metaverse.

And because it's such a young industry at the moment, if you invest in a metaverse cryptocurrency,

you could be buying something literally the beginning of its journey, and you could be investing in

the next big unicorn company whilst it's still worth.

Since this is bringing life to digital assets.

Now, cryptocurrency is all about digital assets is about nfts, digital collectibles, crypto money.

That is what cryptocurrency is, land and avatars.

These are digital assets.

Cryptocurrency is a 100% non tangible digital environment and so therefore cryptocurrency and metaverse

absolutely go together.

And this present time in the real world, you will use your fiat money, your dollars, your pounds,

etc., to be able to buy goods and services.

But cryptocurrency is a purely digital form of money, and therefore it makes sense that it would have

a utility in a digital environment.

Therefore, as a result, Metaverse brings life to these digital assets, which for a long time had

no bridge between the real life and the digital world.

But now with the metaverse, you've got a convergence of both the real world and the digital world.

And now, as a result of that, digital assets like NFT and crypto money now have context and have an

environment that can be used in.

So it's bringing life to these assets.

That's why the metaverse is so hot.

The Generation Z Stroke Zuma appeals Zuma and Generation Z essentially means young people.

So teenagers or pre 20 year old individuals.

Now these are the exact audience for gaming and the exact audience that are technologically adept to

understand it and be immersed in it.

So as a result of that, where you have assets like Bitcoin or Nfts or Defi, which would appeal more

for an older generation because the older generation have been around a long time, they've experienced

a lot and they are seeing the benefits of Defi or of Bitcoin, whereas somebody young that doesn't understand

money, doesn't understand the money system, doesn't understand centralization, they don't care about

that.

They do, however, care about gaming simulations and virtual reality.

They get this, they understand this, this is their area.

And as a result of that, again, it has mass market appeal and young generation appeal.

So it's bringing a young generation into cryptocurrency for purposes more than just investing.

Then there is a mainstream shift in the entire world.

So recently Facebook rebranded to Metta.

They are now called Metta because they are looking to bring out a metaverse universe.

They are looking for us as individuals, as one of the biggest social networks in the world to bring

us into this digital landscape and fully immerse in a virtual reality environment.

So the mainstream shift is happening.

We are not seeing some random company nobody knows about calling itself Metta.

This is Facebook, one of the most recognized brands in the Internet world, rebranding to Metta.

So it's a big deal.

People are now going to know what Metaverse is, and as a result of that, it opens up the environment

perfectly for metaverse cryptocurrencies to do well.

And it is a key narrative of bridging real life with cryptocurrency.

For many people, they'll be like, Why?

Why Bitcoin?

Why cryptocurrency?

Why blockchain?

What purpose does that solve in my life?

And this is a reason why the mass market have never come to cryptocurrency, because there is no real

bridge.

There is no real there's no real reason why they should use digital currency other than to invest in.

So as a result of that, now, there is some context behind why cryptocurrency has real life utility

because metaverse bridges that real life with a digital life and now cryptocurrency has context so we

could be.

Seeing greater appeal for cryptocurrencies, more people joining cryptocurrency, and more adoption

of cryptocurrency as a result of a metaverse.

So this is why metaverse cryptocurrencies are so hot.

Because essentially, for the first time ever, it seems like the digital assets that we have been investing

in cryptocurrency now have some real life utility.

## 

## 83. Best Gainers made from Crypto, and why?

What are the top metaverse projects in 2021?

What are the best gainers so you can understand why this area has done so well.

So in a number five, we have got metal wars now.

Metal Wars has done a 100 x.

Now Metal Wars is basically a space exploration stroke battle game.

So it's essentially Star Wars on the blockchain.

Now, Metal Wars is a cryptocurrency I actually invested in.

It was 0.8 of a cent when it was launched and then it went up to a high of $0.80.

So that 100 x.

So the reason why is because it's obviously got metal in the title.

It was a low cap gem, so people were able to invest in this before it was even worth $1,000,000 in

market cap and now it is worth tens of millions of dollars in market cap.

So these are the key learnings from Metal Wars.

Then we have got Wild the world now, while the world is another virtual world in the making.

But what these guys are doing is they are essentially converging the metaverse world with nfts.

So you are able to buy these nfts, you're able to buy shoes, you're able to buy cars to use in metaverse

gaming.

So as a result of that, this is 110 x.

So this is converging nfts with metaverse whilst also being an extremely low market cap.

This was for sense when it came out and because of the NFT narrative and because of the gaming and metaverse

narrative, this cryptocurrency has gone up 110 x so if you put $1,000 into this app, $0.04, that

would now be worth $110,000.

Then we have got Star Atlas.

Now Start.

Atlas is another space exploration stroke battle game.

It's also known as a triple A game.

A triple A game is a really high quality, fully immersive experience where the 3D graphics are comparable

to something that you would experience playing the PlayStation five or the Xbox One series.

S I mean, seriously, fantastic graphics.

Now start Atlas did a 188 X and the reason why is because this was one of the first gaming and metaverse

projects brought out on Solana.

So Metal Wars is Binance Smart Chain that had already been out for a while.

While the world is a theory that's been out for a while, but there had not been any metaverse projects

on the Solana blockchain, and Starless was one of them.

And of course it was a low cap and it's triple A that as a result of it made it go to 188 X.

This was another one that I bought and it was a 10th of a cent and it went up to $0.26.

Then we have got game zone.

Now game zone is a launch pad.

The game zone allows you to invest in early stage metaverse or gaming and or gaming projects.

Now, Game Zone is a Blue Zilla based launch pad.

And these launch pads do very, very well because they've got fantastic marketing.

So why Game Zone did a 226?

So its initial price was half a cent and it ended up going to $1.10.

The reason why this 220 X is purely because people wanted to be able to get into the start.

Atlas is the metal walls at Edo Stage, which you can only do via a launch pad and game zone, was very

early to the party with creating a launch pad that you could get involved in these games very, very

early.

And it was of course a very low cap cryptocurrency.

Then Axie Infinity.

Axie Infinity started this year off as a 50 cent coin, and it has gone on to an all time high of $163.

That makes it a gain of 326 x, so $100 would have turned into $326,000.

Why?

The reason why is because Axie Infinity was one of the first games in cryptocurrency that was actually

simple to play.

The gameplay was very fun and addictive.

The blockchain of cryptocurrency integration was very easy.

The staking rewards were very high.

So as a result of being simplistic and effective in making people money, this coin skyrocketed.

And of course it went.

And it started this year off at $0.50 because gaming and the metaverse were not even trends at that

time.

So when relatively underinvested in, but once nfts gaming and the metaverse came along, this incrementally

made axie infinity explode.

Because these three narratives are pivotal to axie infinity is.

So that is what led to the huge gains, simplicity and gameplay effective defi so you can actually easily

stake and earn more axie infinity playing the game and staking on their platform.

And this was a low cap gem before it ended up being one of the blue chips in crypto currency.

So I think that the key learning point with all these success stories is you had to get in early, you

had to invest in these when they were low cap gems, when they were worth either single figure millions

or under a million in market cap, because some of these have gone on to be worth hundreds of millions,

if not single figure billions.

## 

## 84. How to make Millionaire Money with Metaverse!

So what do you look for when investing?

What have we learned from the last lecture that will allow you to take these learnings through and invest

in top projects that will make you huge gains in cryptocurrency?

Well, the first thing to look for is a virtual reality or a base aspect to the cryptocurrency.

So they should be looking to create a virtual reality, augmented reality environment mixed with a key

narrative.

So gaming is already a key narrative in crypto currency.

Nfts are a key narrative in cryptocurrency.

So when you have a convergence of multiple narratives, so metaverse mixed with gaming or metaverse

mixed with defi or metaverse mixed with NFT or better all four together, which is something that Axie

infinity is.

Then you have got a potential powerhouse, so you don't just want AR and VR on and of itself.

It needs to be linked with another narrative that is hot in cryptocurrency.

You need to have simplistic gameplay, so people need to know.

So people need to be able to just play it and earn money.

It should not be difficult.

You should not have to follow 100 steps before you're able to make any money, and you shouldn't have

to outlay a lot of money to be able to play a game.

You should be able to just play to earn.

You should be able to just be able to play it for free and earn money.

So the gameplay should be easy.

So easy means the gameplay and cryptocurrency integration.

It should not be difficult to understand and it should not be difficult to get started.

If it's easy, that means people are going to adopt it and those users are going to be part of the community.

And that's what's going to give it very good price support and price appreciation.

It should be addictive.

People should be wanting to come to this game and play on a daily basis, and that will also lead to

incremental increases in price.

If it replicates an established game, it's even better.

So for instance, if it replicates something like Call of Duty or Minecraft or Roblox or Grand Theft

Auto, if you've got a cryptocurrency game that is trying to be the cryptocurrency version of an established

and blockbuster game, then that should do incredibly well.

In cryptocurrency.

You want to be investing in metaverse cryptocurrencies that are in low competition, high demand areas,

i.e. this metaverse project is being brought out on one of the newer high performance blockchains.

That's what HPP means.

So for instance, START Atlas was a cryptocurrency that was the first on Solana.

As a result of that, it was in a very low competition area, but high demand area because Solana is

one of the highest performing blockchains.

Therefore, gas fees are very low, transaction costs are very low, so a game within Solana is likely

to do very well.

Hence why Star Atlas did so well.

No competition.

High demand areas could also be Triple A games.

There's a lot of games being created in cryptocurrency and some of these are very simplistic in nature,

like Flappy Bird or Angry Birds.

They're very simplistic, good graphics, but Triple A, a fully immersive 3D environments that have

incredible graphical qualities.

And that's what triple-A is now.

triple-A games have done incredibly well are Alluvium and Star Atlas.

If you are investing in a game that has got incredible scale and fantastic quality graphics, then you

could be investing in the next Minecraft or the next GTA and then low competition, high demand areas

is simplistic gameplay.

Believe me when I say it's very, very difficult to find a simple game to play in cryptocurrency because

you've got blockchain integration.

A lot of them, a lot of them are linked with Ethereum.

So there's high costs involved as well.

So therefore you really are looking for something as simple to play low, low costs to play.

And this is going to help you invest in something really, really powerful.

Now, the most important part, in my opinion, is the initial market cap.

You want to be going into very, very low market caps.

So, for instance, this cryptocurrency called Valhalla, this is going to be the first metaverse project

on the blockchain.

And Venus is a fork of Solana.

Now you are able to buy this at IDO stage on game zone, which is one of the cryptocurrencies I've just

taken you through.

So Ido means you can invest in this before it goes on the exchange, right?

So at this present time, one B USD, which is $1 equals 1000 SKA.

So essentially this is a thousandth of a dollar to invest in or 0.001.

So as a result of that, this is extremely low in market cap.

So if this goes to $1, you have made a 1000 X and Valhalla is a $170,000 market cap.

So it is extremely low in market cap.

Now I am personally investing in Valhalla and that falls very nicely into the IDO price, which is between

50 and 300 K.

You get involved in that sweet spot, you're very likely to make a big multiplier that could be anything.

From ten X to 100 x.

So let's say you got involved in something, let's say $150,000 market cap.

If it ten X's, that is 1.5 million, which is very, very low value for a metaverse cryptocurrency.

So therefore, there's a lot of upside potential.

If it was to 100 X, then that would be $15 million, which is still very, very low.

So the lower the market cap you're investing in, the easier it is for you to be able to make massive

gains.

Now, if you are getting into a cryptocurrency that has already been launched, that's what I mean by

out.

It's already out and available to buy.

Then you are looking for something between one and 10 million and ideally something that has the above

criteria.

You know, it needs to have all this criteria in convergence.

It can't literally just be a low market cap because it could be a rubbish game that goes nowhere and

never actually goes over 1 to $10 million.

But you do want to get in something super early.

You don't want to be investing in a blue chip already.

Yes, you'll make some gains, but it will be like a5x maximum.

Whereas with something that is a micro cap, if it's got fantastic qualities about it, then it could

go out into the hundreds of millions, if not billions.

So ultra low your market cap.

When we looked through all of the successful cryptocurrencies of this year, you would have already

made those gains if you had gone in whilst it was an ultra low market cap.

And then and ultimately you want to invest in something that has got mass market appeal, something

that actually gives life to the crypto currency and to the digital assets that belong in the cryptocurrency

world.

If you have got a game that has got mainstream appeal, that is likely to be a powerhouse.

So all of these criteria in combination could actually result in you making the investment of a lifetime.

# **Section 11:** NFT Fundamentals - How you can make a full time living from NFTs

## 85. How NFTs make millions for its owners!

Welcome back to you.

Another section in this section we are going to be looking at Nfts because Nfts have become in itself

its own market in cryptocurrency, as obviously the people that speculate on coins hoping to make profits

on coins going up significantly.

But the same can be said about Nfts people invest in Nfts hoping to be able to sell them for massive

multipliers of their money.

The collections that you see around me are the most successful that have ever happened in cryptocurrency.

So how can you make sure that you invest in the nfts that are going to make you life changing money?

Now the NFT directly above me is called a crypto punk.

The most expensive of this was $23 million.

Somebody in just the last month spent $23 million on the image behind me.

And that image, once upon a time was worth a mere couple of thousand dollars.

The ape right in the top corner.

These are the board apes.

And very recently a whole host of celebrities have been investing in bored apes, the likes of Jimmy

Fallon, Justin Bieber, Snoop Doggy Dogg, Eminem, Paris Hilton, Gwyneth Paltrow.

Hollywood celebrities have been getting into Nfts and Nfts have become the coolest thing to invest in

in the cryptocurrency landscape.

So what you're going to learn in this section is the following What are Nfts and what are the different

types of NFT?

Why are Nfts its own profitable crypto market?

What to look for when investing and what are the drawbacks of investing in Nfts and how to make a full

time living from Nfts.

So I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 86. What are NFTs, and what are the Fundamental qualities?

What are nfts and what does nft stand for?

NFT stands for Non-fungible token fungible means the same as say one bitcoin and another.

Bitcoin are exactly the same.

They have the same properties, the same benefits, and can be sold for equal value.

But a non-fungible token means an item that is not the same as another item.

It carries its own features, benefits and can be sold for a value unique to the item compared to another

item.

Now Nfts are all digital assets and they come in the form of art, characters, land, photos, music,

web domains, videos and more.

So to give you an example, this is the collection of bored apes.

And as you can see, each of them carry different characteristics from another.

This one's got pink fur with eyes on it.

This one has got sandy colored fur, this one has got silver coloured fur and it's got a hat and glasses.

This one has got button eyes and a striped t shirt.

So as you can see, all of them are different to each other.

Therefore each of them have different value.

So this bought ape is being listed for 90.6 Etherium And this one for 92.6.

ETHERIUM And there are other digital assets that you can find here, too.

So you've got art, you have got domain names.

So there are some crypto domain name services like Unstoppable Domains and the Ethereum name service.

So essentially what you've got with regular domain, so you've got dot com, dot net dot org.

In crypto land, you have got dot crypto dot crypto specific names.

And what happens here is people by the names of big brands and then dot.

E So somebody probably owns Facebook.

If I know that somebody owns Superman, dot eth and these can be sold to whoever sees it as being valuable,

then you have got photography, you have got music.

So you own this music outright, digitally.

No one else can sell your music, NFT Only you can sell it and benefit from it.

And then you've got the cryptopunks here.

Now, this is arguably the most iconic and most expensive collection of NFT digital items that there

are.

And you may look at this and think it's absurd that somebody would spend 68.5 Ethereum for the cheapest

of these cryptopunks.

And if we go down to the bottom this one 3000 Etherium this has been listed for and that equates to

$8.7 million in February 2021, most of these punks were worth 1 to 5.

ETHERIUM So they were worth a couple of thousand to maybe 8000, depending on their rarity.

So it just goes to show you how big the NFT market has exploded in one year.

And I imagine over the course of time these are going to be worth millions even to get the cheapest

one.

So we have seen that digital assets take the form of all of these different categories here.

Now, a lot of people buy nfts for speculation.

You buy them hopefully at a low price in order to profit from selling at a very high price later.

So like you would speculate on making a ten X on a cryptocurrency, people look to do exactly the same

with an NFT.

They buy it for 1000 and they hope to sell it for 10,000 as an example.

Now the primary value of an NFT is its rarity.

So I'm going to give you an example of what I mean by rarity.

So there are 10,000 cryptopunks and as you can see, most of them take a human form.

But if we go and have a look at what the most expensive cryptopunks are, it's these and these are non-human

cryptopunks.

So when the collection of 10,000 cryptopunks was created, most of them were human, with a small selection

being either aliens, apes or zombies because they are so rare.

So there are only three aliens.

There are four apes and there are five zombies.

So because there are only three aliens, I mean, it's the rarest type of cryptopunks amongst all the

cryptopunks.

Hence why as a result they have sold for in excess of $7 million the cheaper.

7.57.

And the most expensive.

23 million.

And then the apes.

Because there are only four.

These have sold also for millions and same as the zombies.

But the human self are much less, as you can see, 200,000, 200,000, etc..

So because these are the most rare of the collection, they are the most expensive.

So what gives the primary value in an NFT is its rarity.

Something that of a collection of 10,000 makes it super rare amongst all the rest of the items in that

collection.

The secondary value is the grandeur or the glamour attached to the NFT, and this typically comes in

the form of celebrity adoption.

The bored ape collection, the cheapest is 87 Etherium.

So Etherium today is $2,960.

So 87 Ethereum is $257,000.

And the reason why bored apes have got that kind of price attached to it as a minimum is because of

celebrity adoption.

You have got Justin Bieber, Jimmy Fallon, Eminem, Snoop Doggy Dogg, Post Malone, Steph Curry,

and all the other celebrities I've already told you about that are invested in the board app yacht club.

So because of the exclusivity behind this NFT collection, that's why the value of it has gone up.

Now I know what you're thinking.

How am I supposed to be able to invest in something before the Celebrities Cup?

Because if you try and buy a crypto punk or bored ape now, it's going to cost you at least a quarter

of $1,000,000.

So you need to be getting into Nfts before the big celebrities come in.

And that is where this section is going to help you.

## 

## 87. What NFTs should you be buying to make Optimal Profits?!

What are the most profitable types of nfts?

And I'm going to go through this from most profitable to least profitable.

The most profitable are obviously the collectibles, the most sought after nfts.

So this includes the board apes, the Cryptopunks, the CryptoKitties, the doodles, the cool cats,

the Neo Tokyo's.

These are the most profitable.

Now these do come at quite a high cost because they are already popular because they're already highly

collectible.

However, you can use this as an example to try and find the next type of collectible NFT.

But these collectibles are basically characters.

They'll be either an animal or a person.

It will be a quirky design.

It could be a JPEG or it could be a very colorful, funky design character.

Virtual land.

Virtual land has become really popular in the NFT landscape.

So what I'm showing you here is the biggest sales of NFTS and as you can see, the biggest ever is this

one, but this is fake.

So this was actually the owner bought his own NFT as part of a publicity stunt.

So officially the most expensive and the most profitable ever cryptopunks is this one here, as you

can see, one of the aliens.

Then secondly, you have got digital land.

Now this was bought with 2.7 million DECENTRALAND tokens and DECENTRALAND today is $2.80.

So that is 2.7 million tokens times $2.80.

So we're looking at around about $5 million.

Now, as you can see here, Decentraland is the top metaverse token.

So as a result of that, that is why virtual land bought in decentraland is so expensive because you

are buying land in already the most popular and most expensive metaverse that exists in cryptocurrency.

But it gives you an example of what you need to be looking for.

You need to be looking for the next decentraland and therefore virtual land that exists in that next

decentraland.

Now, virtual land is not something that you can physically live in.

Obviously you own a patch of land or a house or a shop in a virtual reality or a virtual world.

Now with that you have got benefits so people can enter your virtual land and you can charge them for

doing so equally.

You can sell that virtual land onto somebody else or you can lease it to somebody else and they will

pay you a rental, or you can host events on this land that people can pay you for.

So it's a little bit like if you own a nightclub or if you own a nightclub, you can host events at

that nightclub.

People have to pay entry, people have to pay for drinks and you get obviously a share of that profit.

So that is where land matters and you can build whatever you want on it.

So on a game like Decentraland, you can build a bank, you can build a restaurant.

So McDonald's and Jp morgan are recent big brands that have bought land on Decentraland and they are

going to be building more than likely a huge building with their branding all over it.

So it just goes to show you what potential there is in the virtual land area.

So you won't have to deal with stamp duty or land taxes.

You won't have to deal with solicitors or lawyers or anything like that.

Any of the normal paperwork or legislation to do with owning a property.

You just own a digital piece of land and you can own it instantly.

You don't have to wait months like you would with real.

And so as a result of that, this is why this is such an innovation in the space.

And as we move into virtual reality, where people are going to be going into the metaverse and they're

going to be seeing various buildings, owning one of these buildings could yield incredible rewards.

So you can buy virtual land in various schemes such as Decentraland, the Sandbox, Neo, Tokyo, Eartha

Solace and many, many other metaverse pieces that are looking to be the next Decentraland.

Then you've got art collections, so the most expensive piece of artwork ever is the fit.

Danza So if Cadenza is an art collection created by Tyler Hobbs, so if you have a look at the denser

collection, there are only a thousand fit lenses and the floor price.

Therefore, the cheapest of all the nfts in the collection is 62.

Etherium So if I just have a look and see what that is, 62 and one half.

Ethereum 185,000 for the cheapest for denser.

And the one that we were just looking at, this was sold for 1000 Ethereum.

So 1000 Ethereum equates to 2.96 million.

Now, this is probably during the time when Ethereum was about $4,000.

So this was probably 4 million to buy a denser.

Now, when you are looking to buy another for denser, you want to be looking for maybe something by

Tyler Hobbs.

So the for denser collection is obviously the most expensive, but he's got other ones, so he's got

one called incomplete control.

And this one is probably also going to be expensive for the floor price of this is 150.

So what you want to be doing is you want to be looking for the next time Tyler Hobbs is going to be

bringing out a collection so you can follow him on Twitter or you can join various art NFT social media

channels to try and find out when Tyler Hobbs is going to release the next one.

But there are other are creators in the NFT landscape.

So you've also got.

Books and the Damien Hirst collections.

But there are many art collections.

The ones that are most profitable are the ones that come from the big names that have done well before.

So if you are able to buy a new Tyler Hobbs NFT collection, you can be sitting on a goldmine.

Then you've got game items.

So there are various games.

So as you know, there's the sandbox, there's decentraland, there's axie, infinity.

All of these have characters, weapons, vehicles, cars, so you can buy virtual game items.

So to have the character, let's say if you've got Axie Infinity character and one of the good ones,

then you are able to earn more cryptocurrency playing these play to earn games the better your character

is.

So if you buy an in-game character that actually generates more wealth than a lesser skilled or lesser

quality item for the same game, that is where you make the money because you can then sell that character

and similar for the weapons, vehicles and cars.

So with the emergence of crypto gaming and NFT games, this gives greater utility to the characters,

weapons, vehicles, cars and various other in-game items you can buy for that particular game.

Then you have got to a lesser extent music tickets, sound videos and domains.

These are not as hyped, or at least right now not as hyped as the rest of these types of collections.

However, you do get single instances of a height and FTX in these areas.

So for instance, there's Calvin Harris music that you can own outright and you can resell.

So typically it's Calvin Harris that would have the rights to his music or his record label, but you

have the rights to his music if you buy it as an NFT and similar with domains, if you get like Amazon

or Amazon crypto, if you buy that, then Amazon may want to buy that off of you for millions.

So there are potential hyped individual cases, but these types of nfts are not quite as profitable,

but they're still NFT and they'll probably still have their day.

But these are the most profitable types of nfts.

## 

## 88. NFT Explosion - How to make a full time living with NFTs!

Why are nfts its own market?

It's because they have got mass market appeal.

They are very easy to understand.

When you talk about cryptocurrency, you start talking about peer to peer exchange and blockchain and

proof of work, proof of stake people who get these terms.

You it's very difficult for you to explain to the person next door about blockchain and cryptocurrency.

They just won't get it, or at least it will take them a while to understand it.

Whereas Nfts are being brought to the public eye because of celebrities.

And so as a result of that, the adoption rate is much easier.

It's much easier to understand the things that you're buying.

So you're buying a collectible, you're buying a character, you're buying art, you're buying land.

It's much easier to explain to the person next door.

So therefore it has more mass market appeal.

It's easier to see, to understand, to explain, and to see the value potentially.

It's his own market because people are making a profit from this without even touching speculating on

cryptocurrency.

You should have to buy Ethereum, Solana or any of the 17,000 cryptocurrencies currently existing to

make an income.

When you can just do it with nfts, yes, you do need to have the underlying buying cryptocurrency.

So Ethereum, Solana or Binance Coin, these are the coins that you would use to buy the Nfts in all

these various ecosystems, but it's really used for the gas and the minting.

So how you make money with nfts is you flip them by minting them.

So the people that make the most money are the ones that were the first to mint it.

So minting think of minting a little bit like investing in a cryptocurrency before it goes on the exchange.

You are the one that is the first owner of that NFT and as a result of that you only have to pay the

mint cost.

So mint is how you generate it, how the blockchain generates that NFT into life.

So if you generate it into life, you own it.

You're the first owner.

And as a result of that, anything that you sell it for is virtually a profit because you only have

to pay the mint price.

And the mint price is typically 0.1, 0.01 of an Ethereum could be a very, very small price, like

$90, for instance.

So how people do it is they literally mint it for $90.

They sell it for $9,000.

So that's how you make decent money and a full time income and people are just using nfts.

Alternatively, there is passive income as well.

So I own an NFT that generates cryptocurrency for me on a daily basis.

I don't have to do anything and this NFT generates for me $250 a day and that is a neo Tokyo citizen.

Then Nfts have got celebrity and brand adoption.

So like I've already told you, Jimmy Fallon and Eminem are two celebrities that have bought Nfts,

but now you've got big brands coming into the business, so you've got Gucci and Adidas.

Just as an example, you've also got Jp morgan and McDonald's that have just come into it.

So it makes NFT a much bigger market than it was before.

Previously it was a tiny little market.

People didn't really understand them.

Now it's a huge market.

It's almost as big as the cryptocurrency coin market itself.

Utility.

This is why it's got its own market, because they have utility within a secondary market.

So for instance, on a crypto game, if you own the original, it's a little bit like owning the Mona

Lisa.

Sure, there may be thousands of prints in circulation of the Mona Lisa, but they are worthless unless

you own the real thing.

And the real thing is worth millions, if not billions.

And that is where NFT ownership comes into place.

If you own the original, you have the rights to the original.

That means you can sell on the original.

Just like if you have the original.

Mona Lisa You can sell on the original Mona Lisa.

It's much more valuable than a print that carries no ownership with it, and that ownership is confirmed

on the blockchain.

People can see that a particular wallet owns that NFT.

Then you've got social media.

So very recently Twitter has allowed for users to be able to use their NFT as a profile picture on Twitter.

So if you go on Twitter and you select your profile picture, you can actually use your NFT as your

profile picture.

So at this present time, you are seeing that social media is embracing nfts and then of course you've

got metaverse gaming and Defi.

So with Defi you can mine your nfts, you can use your nfts for loans, you can lend your nfts to generate

revenue.

Similarly, with metaverse and gaming, if you buy virtual land, you can use it and generate revenue

from it.

And of course your NFT in-game items will have inherent value if you have something unique and people

really want it and people really like it, people will buy it off you because there's only one of one.

So there's so much utility in nfts that give it that transferable value when you are selling it.

And that is why it has its own market distinct from cryptocurrency coins.

And then of course the market size because it's gotten bigger over time and there's more global acceptance

and adoption of it, it means it's safer to invest in its own cycles.

This goes on ranking systems.

Okay, so like I have shown you with cryptocurrencies, you've got coinmarketcap coingecko nomics and

various other ranking systems.

Nfts also have their own ranking systems and they have their own cycles.

Nfts do not necessarily move when cryptocurrencies move.

So very, very recently between November and January, cryptocurrencies went right down, but nfts went

right up.

So there was an inverse correlation in how they were moving so that therefore Nfts have its own market

and it's likely to be a very grand market in the future.

## 

## 89. What are the drawbacks of NFTs investing (what to AVOID)

So all sounds good so far.

But what are the drawbacks of not investing in liquid market?

So when you have cryptocurrencies, you can sell them because there is already a liquid market, particularly

if you are selling cryptocurrencies that are already on popular exchanges because there is a lot of

liquidity for most of the coins on these exchanges.

But when you invest in an NFT, you hold it until somebody wants to buy it specifically from you.

That means there has to be a demand for the NFT that you have currently.

Now there are hundreds of thousands of NFT designs out there that lots of people have invested in.

But like with crypto currency, only the top ones have a constant demand.

So if you are wanting to buy and sell a crypto punk or buy and sell a bored ape, it's going to be very

easy because essentially they are the Bitcoin and Ethereum of the NFT markets.

There's always a constant demand because they are popular and in the narrative at the moment.

So you can't sell unless somebody wants your NFT.

So you could be holding that NFT forever, even if you list it at a price that is a fifth of what you

paid for it just to get it off your hands.

People won't buy it unless there is some kind of demand for it.

So it's a relatively illiquid market, even though there is millions of dollars flowing around in Nfts.

And if somebody wants your specific NFT, you could be holding it for a long time.

Temporary hype in relation to an illiquid market.

A lot of nfts particularly at minting stage.

So when the mint is going on, that is when like with a cryptocurrency project, that is when the NFT

is probably at its most active, getting lots of discord members, etc..

Just like with cryptocurrency, when a new cryptocurrency comes out.

Loads of people join the Telegram channels to know when it's coming out and be able to get a good price.

But once it's launched, there needs to be a constant stream of marketing and demand for the cryptocurrency

for it to keep going up in value.

And it's the same for Nfts, so it can be hot around about the time of minting and them going on opensea,

but then the next minute they could be completely forgotten.

And so therefore again, you're holding a cryptocurrency that may have had some initial demand and hype

that then doesn't subsequently go on to sell well for you.

And sometimes the best time to sell is during that initial hype.

Volatility.

So left seasons are actually hard to predict.

NFT values tend to go down when cryptocurrencies go up, so nfts are a great hedge for cryptocurrency.

When there is a bearish market or a bear trend in cryptocurrency coins, then money flow tends to go

to nfts because that tends to be what can profit for you when cryptocurrency isn't.

As a result of that, because of that volatility, you could be waiting when cryptocurrency coins go

up.

If you've bought an NFT during those bull periods for Nfts, you can be waiting a long time for any

demand to come back for your NFT.

90% of nfts lack any utility.

They aren't part of a game.

They don't carry any exclusive benefits.

They don't produce passive income.

And as a result of that, you just have an image.

And if you have an image within an illiquid market that hasn't got any hype at the moment, you could

just be hodling onto that NFT for a long time.

Subjectivity.

So you may see an NFT that you really like that speaks to you and you alone because of your preferences

for color, for design, for the type of NFT is for the character displayed on it, etc..

So you at the time may have thought that is definitely worth five of an Ethereum or one Etherium.

In some cases, some people spend 20 Ethereum on something that they find is very valuable to them.

But other people may not see the value you do because it's nonfungible i.e. it's not similar to something

else that does have value.

So let's say you own some Solana tokens.

So when there is value for Solana, everybody that holds Solana profits because it's the same token

that everybody else holds.

But with Nfts, it's something that you have found the value in, but maybe not other people have found

the value in.

And so because people's tastes are different to yours, it may be very difficult to find the precise

buyer for your NFT that will take off your hands for a profitable amount.

So ultimately what this is saying is, is that NFT investing can be very tough and challenging.

If you get an NFT that's already popular, that's already a collectible, like a crypto punk, a board

ape, a mutant ape, ones that are constantly in the public eye, ones that are constantly getting marketing

not only from celebrities, but the entire cryptocurrency market in general.

You have got something that is likely to be very, very profitable and likely to appreciate and profit

over time.

Whereas if you buy something unconnected to something popular that has no utility, that has no current

hype, you could be holding it forever.

In which case, however much you spend on it, if you are not wanting to keep it and it has no real

long term value for you, you don't want to use it in your social media, profile pictures and things

like that.

Then essentially you may never be able to sell it.

## 

## 90. What to look for when investing in NFTs!

What should you look for when investing in Nfts?

Firstly, the rarity which I've already taken you through, so you should be looking for a rarity that

has under 1% under a particular quality for the NFT.

So I am on Opensea right now and I am going to show you how you would find a rare item within a collection.

I'm going to show you a very easy way first.

So I'm going to go to stats.

This will take me to the current rankings.

These are the top nfts, the ones that are charting.

Think of it like Coinmarketcap.

What are the moment?

Is top of the rankings and what's doing well.

So going back to this at the moment, Invisible Friends is the top NFT.

So if we go to Invisible Friends, I'm just going to show you this as an example.

The floor price is 5.69 Ethereum.

That means the cheapest invisible friend on here is 5.69 Ethereum.

Now you'll go down and you'll see top bid.

Top bid.

These are not the buy it now prices.

These are just what is the highest bid somebody has put on this NFT.

If you are looking for what is the fixed price, you can buy it for now.

You have to buy now and then you can see the price.

You can just take it off someone's hands.

For my personal deduction looking at this is that these are the least rare or have the least rare qualities

of invisible friend.

So let's just go to the cheapest right now and go to properties.

So properties is where you can see the rarity of their qualities.

So 51% have a blue background.

Okay.

So, so that means it's not rare at all.

4%, 4%, 3%.

So and 2%.

So it's got four traits that are relatively rare, 3% and 2% are very, very low.

So if I come out of this and now I search from high to low, I will have an understanding of why certain

invisible friends have such high value.

This one looks pretty good.

Let's have a look at this one and see what the properties are of it.

So frog slippers no 0.34% nor 0.78% 0.34%.

So it's got one, two, three, four, five, six seven properties out of 11 properties under 1%.

So that means it's extremely rare.

Okay.

That means that being able to get an NFT with this much rarity is hard.

Therefore the price is eight, eight, eight, or that's what it's been sold at.

So ideally what you want is something that has less than 1%.

If it has less than 1%, that means that it's got some inherent value.

The more properties are under 1%, the better it is for the value of the NFT.

You are hodling.

Now you're probably saying at this point, well, if I have to spend a fortune on getting a very rare

NFT, then there's no point.

Okay, so this is where I'm going to help you out.

So this is an NFT minting collection.

I'm not endorsing it at all.

I'm just giving it to you as an example.

So this is the board Camel Caravan Club.

So it's trying to be like the board eight Yacht Club, which is what the board apes are part of.

So this has not fully minted all of the 10,000 board camels at this point.

So what you can do is you can mint a camel.

All right.

So what you do is you go to the mint page.

It will then connect your Ethereum wallet and it will say to you that in order to buy it, it would

be 0.05 Ethereum.

Now I've got 0.336 Ethereum in here.

So I could therefore by about six of these board camels right now, the likelihood is, is that I am

going to mint one that doesn't have very rare traits.

If you're looking at a lottery, if you're looking at 10,000 camels, the likelihood is, is that if

I mint one, I'm probably going to have something that is not very rare.

But the more that you mint.

So if I were to mint six, there is half a chance that I'm going to mint a rare one and five non rare

ones.

This is how to use the rarity in your favor is in the minting.

Now there's a low mint cost for the particular NFT you are wanting.

Then it gives you more scope to be able to mint more in the hope that you will get one that is rare.

And then if that board camel collection should become valuable, then you own something very valuable

within it.

Of course, another thing that you can do is you can go down the stats.

Okay.

So you are seeing here amongst the hundreds of thousands potentially of NFT images or NFT items out

there, these are what are ranked.

So like I said, with cryptocurrencies, the more down the rankings you go, the more opportunities

you get to find a collection that could boost up and go up the rankings.

So what you are wanting to do is you are wanting to look for nfts that are currently ranking and look

at the floor price.

So the floor price will give you an indication of what kind of prices are you looking at and look to

see what may be affordable down the rankings, but not too far from the top.

Remember, there are hundreds of thousands of nfts out there.

You have way more of a chance of getting visibility to your NFT if you are picking a ranked NFT.

Now I remember Phantom Bear was actually one of the top nfts a couple of months ago, and the floor

price, I believe at the time was about three Ethereum.

Now it has gone down tremendously.

So this may be a good opportunity once again to look for a rare NFT within this collection, but also

at the same time, you don't necessarily have to buy a rare one.

You can buy a non rare one if you're thinking about the board apes.

The cheapest board ape is 87.

ETHERIUM So should the Fanta Bears go right back up in terms of popularity, then something you're buying

for 0.76 Ethereum today could actually be worth 7.6 Ethereum another time.

So Rarity is what you are looking for and ideally under 1%.

You also want to be looking at unique takes on popular nfts, jpegs, animals, abstract art.

So basically things like Cryptopunks bored apes or the fit enza.

All right, so for instance, animals, I've just shown you one with the board camel caravan park and

there are more out there, jpegs recently.

There was one called Alien Punks, and that was very, very similar to Cryptopunks, but just basically

aliens in the exact same fashion and an abstract art looking for something very similar to a dancer,

the Pew Kanza.

So this is a take on the credenza.

All right.

Now, this was actually ranking within the top 20 a few weeks ago, and this has gone down dramatically.

And as you can see, the floor price is much more favorable than buying a credenza for denser costs,

very similar to a bored ape, whereas this costs a 100 x cheaper than that.

So all you need to do once again is you need to go for something that has a rare property.

So if we go down and have a look in the properties, you can have a look and see here that all of these

are pretty much non rare properties.

So what you want to do is you want to go down here, which is basically where you sought the various

properties and you want to be looking for something that does have some rarity to it.

So flowing this will put high a.

I will go into it.

And then we'll look at the properties now.

And we've got one here.

The seed, which is 0.01%, have this trait.

So this may be a better buy than other cleansers at the same price.

So what this is showing you is looking for that rarity in a collection that replicates a popular NFT.

Celebrity adoption and endorsement.

So with board apes, you've already got the creme de la creme.

You already got Hollywood top basketball players and rappers and actors and musicians buying board games.

It's already made it.

Yes, it'll probably go up from here, but even still, it's unaffordable price for most people.

So what you then will look for is where is celebrity adoption happening with lesser celebs?

So I put this tweet out around about a month ago and what I asked is, are there any nfts with celebrity

owners that you know of?

What I was doing here was I was trying to gleam out nfts that have got some kind of celebrity endorsement

and you can search NFT celebrities and you may be able to see a thread like mine essentially.

So we have got reese witherspoon owns a bos beauties nft.

So let's just look for bus beauties and have a look and see how much these are.

Okay.

2.5 floor price.

Reese Witherspoon is a former Hollywood star and she's obviously seen the value.

So it could be the case that other females in power may love or connect with a particular avatar right

now is based on what they're wearing.

So if you just CEO.

So a lady who aspires to be a top CEO one day may love this and she may be a brunette.

A lot of nft buying is about ego.

So people in the celebrity world that are buying nfts like to buy nfts that reflect themselves or look

like themselves.

So Heidi Klum is a very, very well known model, actress, TV presenter.

She recently bought a crypto punk and now displays it as her Twitter profile picture because it reflects

how she looks.

So she bought this because it looks like her.

So what you would be looking to do is you would be looking to appeal to a celebrity that looks like

one of these characters.

So if there is minor celebrity adoption taking place with an NFT collection, then it's likely that

people who admire Reese Witherspoon or actresses who see that she's invested in one of these beauties

may come here and look for something that represents themselves.

So this is a way of using minor celebrity adoption and front running the demand and getting into something

that may appeal to a celebrity when they come flooding in.

Now, it may or may not happen for it, but that is how you can front run the speculation on certain

NFT collections.

And also within this tweet, I found out another collection, which is these galactic fighters.

And this has got an A fighter that has actually invested in one of these.

So, like I say, it gives you a good indication of what are the type of collections that appeal to

the ego and may potentially bring a load of other MMA fighters looking for a fighter that looks like

them.

Now, this particular galactic fighter, the mighty mouse, has gotten so Demetrius Johnson, 11 time

defending MMA flyweight champion.

So this looks like a rare one.

It says here that his is legendary.

So legendary typically means very, very rare.

So this has now directed me to galactic fighters.

And I may be able to find an NFT that an MMA or a boxer or something may want to come to later.

Now, psychedelics Anonymous Genesis is a collection that was brought to my attention around about a

month and a half ago.

And at that time, the floor price was about half an Etherium.

Now I was directed to psychedelics Anonymous, because this has three NBA players buying psychedelics,

anonymous characters and knowing that the price then jumped up six X, so it is now 3.18 for the cheapest.

So this shows you how getting into something with lesser celebrities getting into it first can drive

up the price.

Because it became known on the date it was 0.5 Ethereum floor price that there were three NBA players

buying these psychedelics.

Anonymous people started to speculate and then of course, the adoption then happened.

So looking at initial celebrity endorsement could pave the way for a much larger celebrity endorsement.

Later, celebrities didn't come straight to the board APRA.

Initially it gained some traction.

There were some lesser known celebrities getting into it, and then all of a sudden the A-lister celebrities

started to get into it.

So you start seeing the adoption from other influencers or celebrities, and if they are seeing value

in a particular collection, that could mean that the collection has some real inherent value in it.

And you're not just shooting in the dark.

Utility.

Does the either the land or the character have some utility in a potentially popular game or a popular

game?

So I've already taking you through Decentraland that is already popular.

Therefore, land sells for hundreds of thousands, if not millions.

So what you look for then is potentially popular games or metaverse virtual reality.

So Cities Heroes is one of the popular up and coming NFT games.

Now they have very, very recently just started bringing out their collections.

Okay, so it comes in three levels common epic and legendary.

Now I personally own a legendary character, but these characters have not yet been hatched.

So what one would do then is you would buy it before it hatches.

Once it hatches.

That's when you can see how good it looks and then automatically the value goes up.

So typically you would buy something just before it hatches.

Next up, exclusive content.

Does buying this NFT give you some form of membership to a private club or membership of a virtual reality?

Do you get airdrops for hodling it and can you go to events?

Each board comes with a yacht club membership.

Membership gives NFT Hodlers access to community events.

Members also get access to a special discord server called the Bathroom.

They get commercial usage rights for their nfts.

And you're in a common club with high profile celebrities like Mark Cuban, Shaquille O'Neal, etc.,

etc. In November 2021, they organized a party on an actual yacht off the coast of Manhattan.

And also what you get by Hodling a bored ape is you actually get airdrop, so you are able to mint certain

nfts for free.

So as it says here in June, this year or last year, every board Hodler was allowed to mint a canine

companion NFT that became the board eight Kennel Club, and they were able to get part of the mutant

ape collection, which has gone on to be another high ranking collection on Opensea.

So what you do is when you get involved in an NFT or want to get involved in an NFT, look at their

roadmap, are they going to be giving benefits to those who are part of the NFT Hodler community?

And then lastly, verified collections.

The best thing you can do is invest in a verified collection because this means you are not investing

in a scam or buying a screenshotted version of an NFT when they've got the verification badge.

That means you are buying from the authentic collection.

If you were to go and search for bored apes, there are bored apes out there that you can buy that do

not have the verification sticker on it.

That means that you are potentially buying a fake or a screenshot, which means you could be spending

five Ethereum.

You could be like, Oh my god, I've got a bored 845 Ethereum.

No, what you've got is probably a screenshot.

You haven't got exclusive rights, you don't have any of the exclusive content, you do not own something

valuable.

So these are the things you want to be looking out for, essentially rarity.

And it comes with numerous benefits and a way of being able to tell if something is likely to gain traction.

Is does it have some initial celebrity or minor celebrity adoption?

## 

## 91. How to make a full-time living from NFT trading!

How do you make a living full time from Nfts?

So if you don't want to be a cryptocurrency coin investor and actually the world of art or collectibles

or digital assets really appeals to you, then this can be the way in which you do it.

So first of all, mint from you like I showed you with the board, camel caravan park.

You want to be minting potentially valuable nfts of the future now?

There's no way of knowing, but if you do a load of mints, you will have experience of seeing how much

traction the NFT you invest garners in order to be able to find places to mint nfts you want to be going

on Twitter.

All right, so go on Twitter.

Follow people with influence in the NFT market and you will be able to find mints.

The more influence the person has that you are following who directs you to a mint, the more valuable

that NFT is likely to be versus just some random person on the internet or in a telegram channel.

Once you typically join a community of people wanting to mint from you, you will have to go to Discord.

So Discord is a communication app on your mobile.

You can also work it on the PC.

You essentially become part of a community.

Now the community is typically subdivided into a load of folders where you can go into various aspects

of the chat rather than just one overall chat community.

So Twitter and Discord are definitely the most frequently used social media, with discord typically

being the central social media used for the minting community.

So join discord groups and complete white list requirements.

So typically for a white list, you have to do certain tasks.

So that could be connecting your Ethereum wallet.

That could be a white list task, it could be sharing it on Twitter, being one of the people that are

retweeting a certain mint happening.

So if you complete the white list requirements, you increase your chances of having a white listed

address.

So when you go to the mint page, if you've got a white listed address, you will be able to mint the

NFT.

If it's not been whitelisted by the project, you will not be able to mint the NFT have ETH in your

wallet for minting.

There are differing minting costs when it comes to minting an NFT, but also make sure that you have

got enough of gas.

So it all depends on how busy the Ethereum network is at the time of minting.

If it's very, very busy, you could be spending a fortune in gas.

You could be spending anywhere from 200 to $1000 in gas.

You're going a not busy time.

It could cost you $50 in gas.

And it all depends on how many you are minting as well.

If you are minting around about five or six, then the gas cost is going to be more.

Now something that you should probably have a knife or and this will come with experience is once you

have minted it, sell it during the initial hype.

So let me give you an example.

When you've got a collection of, say, let's say 300 nfts and the Discord has 100,000 people in the

Discord Channel, should you be lucky enough to be one of the people that are able to mint one of those

300 nfts there are going to be 100,000 people that were not able to mint it, that were in the Discord

Channel that are going to want to buy it immediately.

All right.

So therefore sell in the first couple of days.

So something I did very recently was I was lucky enough to actually mint one of the first official,

Bruce Lee Nfts, and this came out on eternity.

Right?

So I was able to essentially mint one of these for about $500, but I was able to sell it for ten x

the price.

So because this was official, it did have a relatively high mint cost.

I knew that this was going to have the most popularity straight away because there were a ton of people

that wanted to buy one of these Bruce Lee items that were not available at the time of minting.

I was because I'm a massive Bruce Lee fan.

So anyway, I was able to sell it for ten X the price that I paid for it in the first 6 hours of buying

it now.

Now it is significantly less that cost, but these people are probably going to hodl onto it for the

long term because it's very rare that Bruce Lee will have an official collection released by the official

Bruce Lee Foundation.

So that gives you an indication of the best possible time to sell is during the initial hype phase because

that is when people are going to want it.

And all they are thinking about is that NFT over the course of weeks and months they'll think about

other nfts they will even give it a second thought what they were interested in two months ago.

So it's best to sometimes capitalize on the initial demand sell, move on to the next NFT mint and rinse

and repeat, rinse and repeat.

You just keep on doing the same thing whilst at the same time getting better and more researched and

more connected every single time.

So by joining these discord service, you will make friends with other people doing the exact same thing,

learning more tips and tricks, learning about more mints going into other communities.

So don't waste that time.

Don't just literally think about the NFT.

Think about the people that you are in the community with.

Look for people who seem to be saying intelligent things, know what they're talking about, and start

connecting with those people.

And from there you are able to make this a constant process because you will always have a steady stream

of mints coming your direction.

Now remember, there is a big market for Nfts.

There are just NFT snipers everywhere.

People are looking to buy and sell for a profit.

So there's always a market.

If you get into things early and you are well connected and you do good research and that will come

with experience and that will come from following others, socializing with others, and really building

your IQ in the game.

Don't think for 1/2 you can be a complete noob and do well time and time again.

You will gain experience from this and you will gain intelligence from it.

And that is the key learning here.

You know, a lot of what I can teach you is the basics, but the best learning device in cryptocurrency

is experience.

And the best thing you can do is socialize with others that have more experience than you and be able

to grab all of those tips and tricks to help your game.

# **Section 12:** Researching Coins to Invest in!

## 92. How to research potentially amazing coins!

Researching the coin.

If you want to avoid the risk of betting on a coin which subsequently makes massive losses, you've

got to research it.

So how do you go about researching a coin?

Where do you go?

Is there a secret place in which the expert cryptocurrency people go to in order to be able to find

out secret information on their coins?

Here is the honest truth.

Kiss.

Kiss is what defines the research process.

KISS stands for Keep it simple, stupid.

Basically, the simple solution is always the best one.

So how do you go about researching a coin?

Go to the world's best search engine, Google.

Simple.

Okay.

So.

Let's use an example.

So I'm looking down my cryptocurrencies.

I see all the ones that I've seen before, you know, I've seen Digibyte, Litecoin, Dash, Stratis

Dogecoin, and then all of a sudden, Oh, what's this basic attention token?

It's currently at $0.29.

So if I just go down a little bit, I can look at the total lifespan of the coin and it's telling me

that it's only really been released since the 1st of June and today is the 6th of June, so it's basically

only been around six days.

Okay.

So basic attention token well is currently appearing in the list of top cryptocurrencies on Coinmarketcap.

So let's have a look and see more about basic attention token.

Okay.

So if we put basic attention token in.

We are firstly presented with the most relevant results.

So saying here 32 million results.

So you can literally just have a look on Google at the articles which seem to give a bit of indication

as to where the value is in the cryptocurrency.

So something I always do is I go to news because I want to see what's been written about this particular

cryptocurrency.

And I can see in the first two results that come up is about basic attention.

Token sale raises 35 million in less than 30 seconds.

Here's another one, 35 million in 30 seconds.

Now, this one was written more recently.

So if I have a look at this, I can have a look and see more information about this coin.

Where is the value?

So let's just have a brief perusal of this particular article.

Okay, so it says here Ethereum's first killer app has been discovered.

So that is quite a big and grand statement about this particular coin.

Okay.

So that is what we're being told initially.

That's like the kind of hair raising comment.

And now we can see here web browser maker Brave, founded by former Mozilla CEO Brendan Eich, raised

35 million from its basic attention sale, basic attention token sale in less than 30 seconds.

So essentially this was an ICO, an initial coin offering, that is when a coin is offered to the market

for the first time.

So it raised 35 million from the sale, from the ICO sale.

So essentially what has happened is, is that it has generated enough of a frenzy that people have decided

to buy it.

So essentially the news is spectacular enough to have been covered by mainstream news outlets like Fortune.

Fortune.

So the Mozilla CEO.

Now this is where you have to do more research.

Now, I know about the Mozilla CEO because he created Mozilla Firefox.

Mozilla Firefox was one of the biggest web browsers in recent history.

You got Chrome, you got Safari, you got Internet Explorer, you got Firefox.

These are ones, you know.

And the Mozilla CEO is the guy responsible for this new Internet Explorer called Brave.

So when you've got a big name that has founded one of the biggest Internet browsers before, now founding

another Internet browser called Brave, which this that basic attention token is linked to, then you

already see the value, right?

Okay.

This is why a frenzy has been created.

Basic Attention Token is a blockchain based digital advertising platform.

Now, blockchain is essentially some revolutionary technology that quite a lot of the valuable cryptocurrencies

have been founded on, such as Dash.

So it enables the transferring of money to be done from one person to another quite seamlessly, quite

easily, quite quickly and quite securely with the added security of not being easy to hack.

So blockchain technology is always one of those features that you look for in the early stages of a

cryptocurrency.

So the basic attention token allows publishers, advertisers and users to connect in a more efficient,

transparent, decentralized way, etc., etc. The tokens will be exchanged in a secure, private and

anonymous advertising system based on the brave browser.

So essentially what they're saying is, in order to advertise on this new browser, basically being

launched by somebody who's launched one of the biggest browsers ever, in order to be able to advertise,

you have to use basic attention token to pay the advertisers, to pay the publishers.

Essentially, you need this token, the basic attention token to pay.

And because it's blockchain allows the easy transfer of money, so you can already see the value building

up in your mind.

Okay, this is looking good.

So.

Let's have a look into more depth.

So if we go to brave, it takes us to brave dot com so we can see the product.

So brave.

So it's available already to download look.

So browse safer and faster with brave.

Okay.

So you know, you're probably saying to yourself, well, you know, there were already so many really

good Internet browsers at the moment.

You know, you've got Safari, you've got Google Chrome, you know, why would I want another one?

But this is where you can spot the initial value of a cryptocurrency because it was launched by somebody

who who basically got Firefox out of there, one of the biggest Web browsers ever.

So if he can do that with one, he's got some knowledge to be able to do that with another one.

Now, whether or not he actually manages to, it gives the appearance that basic attention.

Token is a good cryptocurrency to get in with because it's very early.

Okay, browse faster.

Browse safer.

Browse better.

They've already got they've got this quote.

It's amazing how fast the page loads when you strip away everything but the real content.

So what happens is it says here up to a whopping 60% of page load time is caused by the underlying ad

technology that loads into various places where you hit a page.

So when your browser is going slow, you know, what it is, is because of the underlying ad technology.

So brave is going to strip that all away.

And when you are looking at people who like their, you know, their computers performing faster, their

Internet performing faster, this is something people may go to in the future.

So we've already got quite a lot of unique selling points.

Not only did it sell out 35 million in 30 seconds, not only as it got one of the biggest web browser

SEOs behind this new web browser is also got blockchain technology, and it's also just been released

onto the market.

So basic attention token looks like it could be a good early riser.

Now I invested in basic attention token when this was at $0.20, this is at $0.20.

It then went up to $0.34.

And it's since gone down.

It's gone down.

And it's now in the it's kind of on the cusp of 30 stroke, 29 and a half.

Now you're probably thinking, oh, you know, since this news article came out on the 2nd of June,

not a lot has really happened.

You'd have expected probably the price to soar.

All right.

But this is the magic now.

Everybody's doing the research.

Okay?

Not many people that are involved in the cryptocurrency game do the research.

What they do is they go on poloniex.

They see the plus figure on a cryptocurrency that's rising and they decide to see if it's a good pump

and dump.

And so they go into it and they they buy it, hoping it will go up.

And then when it reaches its it's its highest value and it starts to drop, they dump it.

Okay.

But this is a potential long term strategy, which I'll go on to more in this course.

This is a potential long term strategy.

You get in there early at $0.20.

You wait for it eventually to start appearing in the news, more for brave to be promoted, more for

technology blogs to start talking about it more then all of a sudden you will see an upwards movement

in the valley.

So this is how you find out about cryptocurrencies.

Let me give you another example, because this is how I found out about Digibyte.

Digibyte is as a cryptocurrency I have invested in and I'm personally, personally loving because it

has connections with Minecraft.

And I have got a YouTube channel with 140,000 subscribers all about Minecraft.

So I've got almost an emotional interest in Digibyte.

So if you type in Digibyte, you have got all these articles Digibyte launching in 25 days.

Now if we go up and we look at news, we can have a look and see what's happening.

So it says here, why did you buy it's price is soaring and we can have a look into the hype.

The digibyte value increases spectacularly due to major hype.

Okay, so what is this hype exactly?

So going down further in this article, you can see the bigger question is what is driving the sudden

demand for Digibyte?

Apparently the cryptocurrency will have its own Minecraft server soon.

Doesn't mean that Minecraft is using Digibyte as an official currency whatsoever, nor is it a partnership

between Mojang who developed Minecraft and Digibyte.

But it's going to be hosted on a private server, so you can go on to it.

You can log into a private server, which you can do on Minecraft.

You basically lock into an individual world that's been created by someone and you can mine the digibyte

so it's got some value there.

It is true that Digibyte will present their did you sign project for City Bank?

This project revolves around users being able to create blockchain identities.

Citibank, huge, huge name in the banking world.

Citibank.

Okay, so there we are.

So we have got two reasons why Digibyte has the potential to become very, very high in value because

of the Citibank contract, which they are presenting for and also Minecraft.

So we can see why Digibyte has got some potentially medium term value.

So let's have a look at Digibyte.

So these articles came out a couple of weeks ago.

Look at Digibyte at the beginning of May.

Digibyte was hardly anywhere to be seen.

It was hardly anywhere to be seen.

It was 0.001 of a dollar OC at its height.

At its height it was $0.05.

I think it got a little bit higher than $0.05.

Let's just have a look.

Yes.

6/7, 6/7 at its highest.

So ten times the value since the beginning of May.

Ten times the value.

So you would have made ten times whatever you put in to Digibyte.

So that is what has inflated the well.

That's what's made the price go up.

And what happens is, is that as you see the rise happening, speculative buyers come in.

So it's not the price isn't solely driven by the market news, but the market news helps the speculative

value.

So basically once it reaches a certain point, so you can see that it went from $0.02, $0.03, and

then it's going higher into the $0.04.

People started thinking, hmm, digibyte is really moving.

And of course, if you go on to YouTube, which you should also use to support your research, you will

see everybody starts hyping about it because it's growing.

And then that's the time to get in when it's starting to grow, because that's what speculative buyers

are doing.

They're thinking, Hmm, seems like lots of people are going in on Digibyte, so I'm going to go in

on Digibyte too.

And then there's more buyers.

More buyers, and then it reaches a peak 0.06 to of a dollar it reached.

And then of course what happens is people start, especially the newbies, they pump the money in and

then they start dumping it and then the value goes down, it goes up, it goes down and it stays relatively

consistent.

So right now it's at $0.05.

It's gone down a little bit.

But I bought Digibyte ages ago.

I bought Digibyte ages ago.

I bought Digibyte when it was half a cent and now it's $0.06.

So I've multiplied my initial investment by ten.

OC So Google, YouTube.

And then there's another place I would I would also recommend you go to and that is on Facebook groups,

Facebook groups.

Now this is one of them that I have joined and a lot of my friends have joined.

Okay.

So we have got 26,000 members.

So from this you can shortcut a lot of your own research.

So what you can do is you can basically see what are the market saying, what are people, the investing

people saying, okay.

And you can see that, for instance, here, basic attention token, which I've just been talking to

you about, but just made to the top 20 biggest market cap list is is it a good time to buy this coin?

Okay.

And so people are saying bought in yesterday.

This guy said yes, yes, yes, yes.

Okay.

So if you are teetering on the edge of should I buy it, should I not?

It's at $0.29.

It's wavering between $0.32 and $0.29.

Should I go for it?

People are saying go for it.

Okay.

So you can see you can kind of read the temperature of a particular coin based on what people are saying

in these groups.

Okay.

There's there's more there's tons more different posts being made here.

And I mean, look, people are saying, you know, markets down which coin to buy right now.

So you can have a look and see what people are saying.

You know, Digibyte somebody said Digibyte, you know, somebody has said Myriad.

Okay, so what you do is you think then here of Myriad before you go on Google, you search Myriad,

you have a look all about it.

I mean, when you go on Google, there are tons and tons of articles.

There are tons of articles.

There's a Twitter account, there's news articles written about it as Wikipedia.

There's so much you can have a look.

There are steam articles being written on Digibyte.

So what you do then is you just do your research with Google.

You just keep it simple.

It's so simple.

You see me doing it right now.

I haven't gone to any particular secret place because no one knows.

Unless somebody has insider knowledge, unless somebody is involved with the developers of a cryptocurrency,

there's no real way of knowing what's going to happen with it.

So speculative.

But by doing the research you are limiting the risk.

You are limiting the chances of loss because you are reading into the true value of a cryptocurrency.

So I hope that that's helped you and I will see you in the next section where I'm going to be talking

about the criteria.

Once I've actually identified a coin worth investing in, what are the criteria I then apply to you?

Make sure I get it at the best price and make sure that it's, you know, a good cryptocurrency for

either the short term or the long term.

And then after that, I'm going to talk about buying strategies.

So I'll see you in the next section.

# **Section 13:** Investment Systems - My 7 Criteria for Investing!

## 93. Large, Mid and Micro Cap Coins - where to make the best gains!

I've already taken you through market cap, what it means and how it's calculated.

But there are different coin cap types.

And I'm going to take you through these right now because this is important when you are investing in

a cryptocurrency.

So market cap, as I've said, is circulating supply times, coin price.

So the first type is large cap coins.

This tends to cover the top five, top ten coins that are worth $10 billion or more.

This gives you the lowest profit and lowest loss.

So because they are so valuable when they lose money, they don't lose a lot of money.

And when they gain money, you don't make a lot of money.

But they are the most stable, the most reliable, the most credible.

Then you've got the mid-cap coins.

This is $200 million, up to $10 billion.

So this covers kind of like the top 75 coins.

So anything above $200 million, this gives you good volatility, good profits.

But if you make a loss, they're relatively sizable losses.

And then you've got the small cap coins.

This is under 200 million.

Now, the more it is under 200 million, the greater chance of profits.

So if you invest in something that's an incredibly small project, which under 200 million is a small

project, then when it grows, it gives you the highest potential for making profits.

However, because they are so much less established and therefore don't carry that credibility, it

also has the greatest potential for loss making, particularly the lower you go under 200 million.

So if you go for something that is worth a million or 10 million, then you are getting involved in

in a cryptocurrency.

It's cheapest.

This means that you could potentially ride it to being a top ten coin, which will give you a huge return

on investment.

Or it could make you a substantial loss.

It could actually be worth a lot less after you've invested in it and you can make a large loss in it.

So these are different types of coins, and you can see that they've all got relative amounts that you

can make and lose from it.

So a lot of the reason why the rich get involved in large cap coins is because there's less likelihood

of them losing their fortune and because there's greater potential of them increasing on their fortune.

And the reason why smaller investors go for the small cap coins is to reach that level to be a larger

investor, because I personally have invested in a coin that was worth $3 million and has actually gone

up to $1 billion.

So I made a large return on my investment and that put me into the league of probably the ones that

invest in the large cap coins.

So the smaller investors use the smaller cap coins to get to that level of the people that invest in

large cap coins.

So my personal aim, and it still is the case, is that I tend to look for a cryptocurrency that can

deliver me times 50 to times 1000.

When I am long term investing, I am hopeful that the cryptocurrency I get involved in is going to deliver

me times 50 to 1000 gains.

Now, it's very, very rare that you get a thousand gains, but it is reasonable to expect 50 times

gain if you get into a high quality projects in its infancy.

All right.

So buy 50 times gain.

What I mean is if you put 1000 in to a cryptocurrency, then if it achieves times 50, you make 50,000

as a return.

So at times that 1000 investment to 50,000, okay.

Now if you put 1000 in and it should return a 1000 times investment that turns 1000 into 1 million,

again, very rare and it has happened.

All right.

So these are the coin cap types and why you would get involved in those particular coin caps.

So I hope that that's helped.

I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 94. My number 1 factor when Investing!

Welcome back to another section.

In this section, I'm going to be teaching you my personal top criteria for investing.

And this is my personal criteria.

This is what I look for when I'm looking to see whether a cryptocurrency is more likely to outperform

others when I invest in it.

So this is a set criteria that is designed to help me mitigate loss and maximize profit.

Now, the reason why I've got a criteria is because when I first started in cryptocurrency, I made

loss after loss after loss.

And the reason why, because I didn't have a criteria, I just picked what sounded good now that typically

had no intelligence or data driving that decision and therefore I made a loss.

Now it's like horse racing.

When you go horse racing, typically you just pick a name that you like.

Some people study the form and some people just pick a name.

The ones that pick a name are less likely to make a profit, the ones that study the form, how it's

done before, how likely it is to succeed on this occasion are the ones that win and that is similar

for this scenario as well.

So the first criteria that I look at is vision.

Vision is what is the objective of the project?

What are they looking to solve?

You know, how are they looking to solve it?

What's the scale of the pie?

So let's have a look at this right now.

So the first thing to look at is what is the type of cryptocurrency that this project is about?

Some are more valuable than others, in my own personal opinion, and I'm going to go through all of

the types of cryptocurrency in the next section.

But is it an infrastructure?

Is it looking to make dapps be built quicker and perform better?

Is it a platform?

So a dapp basically, is it something that's designed to make services easier to access for people better

monetization?

So the type of cryptocurrency typically dictates what they are looking to achieve.

The next thing is what is the pain that it's solving?

So one of my best ever investments is in ethos, and the reason why I chose Ethos is because there was

quite a visible pain.

Lots of people were asking me as a teacher of cryptocurrency, What wallet can I use to put my Etherium

tokens in my my Bitcoin tokens, my privacy tokens?

Where can I put them?

There are so many wallets.

There's desktop wallets, there's mobile wallets, there's Ethereum wallets, there's paper wallets.

What do I use for the best security and ethos had the answer to that.

It had the universal wallet where you only need one wallet instead of all of these others.

So that is a good pain.

Then you look at what is the scale of the pain?

How many people are affected?

Now in cryptocurrency, there are millions of people and there's going to be millions more, if not

billions more, that eventually come to cryptocurrency.

So the scale of the pain is massive.

Everybody in cryptocurrency has multiple wallets.

How can you unify it and make things efficient by having just one wallet so the scale of the pain was

large.

Now I always get back to this question which is asked on Quora, which is How do I become a millionaire

fast?

And the best answer is always by solving 1 million people's problems and charging $1 for it.

Genius.

If you can charge a little bit for a significant pain to be solved, then people will pay it.

And so the scale of the pain is massive and with that scale can come success.

How unique is the solution if they're already five different wallet providers for being competitors

to ethos?

In this situation, it dilutes the ability to be effective.

Now, Ethos had no competition, in which case that was a good thing.

If you're unique, that means you've got first mover advantage, which means you can make partnerships

before anybody else.

It means that you can go further along with your product design before anybody else and have a product

out there that gets loads of people joining and subscribing to it before any other product can.

So first mover advantage is really, really powerful for any project and if you're invested in that

project, even better.

So a unique solution that no one else has thought out before or even if it's similar.

So if it was a wallet, but it's not a wallet that can carry all of the cryptocurrencies rather than

just a few.

Then again, that makes it unique because it's something different to what's being offered out there.

And then lastly, can this have that first mover advantage?

Can it be first to the market, kind of have a head start on everybody else?

If it does have that head start, it's got more of a chance of making you profits because everything

that comes after is just a meta product.

So for instance, with Ethos, they had a competitor come out called Bread.

Bread is a cryptocurrency you can invest in.

It's a competitor, but it went absolutely nowhere because Ethos was already being built, had a large

community and registered like a meat product.

So therefore bread had very little chance, whereas Ethos had the best profit.

Generating capability.

So that's vision, and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 95. This is vital for the perfect execution of your Investment

The next criteria is t so you may have a powerful vision, but this vision may look great on paper.

But what if the people behind you can't help actually make that vision come to reality?

It's a bit like saying, Oh, okay, I'm going to start a cryptocurrency project where I solve cancer

in the world.

Well, I'm not a doctor.

I haven't got a team of doctors, so how am I going to make this a reality?

So you need to be investing in a team that can make the vision a reality.

So is there a superstar CEO, executive developer or advisor?

Now, all of these people are important in cryptocurrency because you need some high expertise if you've

got a superstar.

This is a person with at least five years experience in the niche that the project is operating in.

So let's say if the project is operating in the payment space, a superstar would be somebody who's

worked five years at a bank or five years at PayPal.

All right.

But if you don't have that as a CEO, then if you have, you got it as an executive within the team,

a developer that's worked on PayPal or an advisor that has worked at PayPal.

So that's the kind of thing you want to be looking for people with specific expertise in that particular

niche.

Now, five years is what I look for external to cryptocurrency.

So working for something like PayPal or working for a bank in the payments department.

But inside cryptocurrency, if somebody has worked for a payments cryptocurrency for a year, that is

also, in my opinion, just as good as five years outside of cryptocurrency, because cryptocurrency

is just such a tough industry.

So if you've worked within that industry in that niche, even better now superstar equals guru in the

company's niche.

So just for clarification, it's a guru, a person that is an expert, not a person who's worked at

the lowest end, a person who has worked in a proactive end and has actually got some real world experience

doing at a high level what the project is looking to do.

Is that guru well connected, whether they are the CEO or advisor, are they well connected?

Do they have links with other people from within the industry that are likely to be called upon if they

need help?

Are there enough developers for the vision?

So this comes down to breadth.

So if you are looking at a team that are looking to achieve quite a ambitious vision, you need to have

breadth, you need to have a load of team members, you need to have somebody that works in sales,

somebody works in marketing and a load of developers.

Because in cryptocurrency most things are technology focused or interface focused product focus.

So you need the developers to achieve that vision.

If you've got if you are looking to create, if a team is looking to create a blockchain and they have

like one developer, then the chance of them being able to make a blockchain that rivals Ethereum is

zero to none.

And then the size of the team department coverage.

AH are all of the various different functions within a business covered?

Do they have business development?

Do they have marketing?

So they have finance, do they have technology?

Do they have strategy?

The more departments that are covered and the more team members there are, the greater the chance of

achieving the vision because you've got the manpower to achieve at speed.

If you've got one person in every single team, then you're probably going to achieve it eventually,

but not at the speed that you need in order to bring out a product very quickly in cryptocurrency.

So you need to have a good team in addition to a vision.

Having a vision is great and having a vision is vital.

You know, people get sold into the vision, but if you don't have the team to carry out that vision,

then it's unlikely that vision will ever come to reality.

So I hope that's helped.

And I'll see you in the next one.

## 

## 96. This factor must be unique to make HUGE

Technology.

Now, this is more important in certain cryptocurrency projects than others.

So technology is mainly relevant when it comes to infrastructures and protocols.

So when you're looking at technology, what you want to look for is what does the tech achieve?

What does it achieve versus the technology of the competitors?

Does it enable the infrastructure, for instance, to achieve greater speed, higher power?

If it's a dapp, for instance, does it allow for greater ease?

Does the technology allow the product to be used more easily than other competitors?

What's unique about the technology?

What makes it stand out?

If everybody is using the same technology, well, you may as well just go to the one that created it

first.

However, if you've got somebody who's creating something different and a different way of achieving

the vision in a similar project, but with better technology, that is a great thing because it's likely

they can achieve faster speed with that technology, greater power with that technology.

Now, what effectiveness does it have over existing technology?

So this is a good chance to bring up a feature in infrastructures that's recently been introduced.

So we had Etherium, which was the number one infrastructure where you could build decentralized apps

and launch them on the blockchain.

However, another cryptocurrency came in recently called Silica, and that brought in sharding.

Now, sharding is a way of partitioning off segments of the blockchain and making them do individual

tasks very quickly.

This allows it to scale faster than Etherium.

So that's the effectiveness.

It brings more scale.

It gives it more of an advantage over something like Ethereum.

Now, does the team have the expertise and skills to achieve that technology?

So let's use Ethereum once again.

So the founder of Ethereum Vitalik Buterin, everybody widely regards as a genius, as a person who

has a hell of a lot of experience in the technical field so he can achieve something like a theory.

You know, with Cardano, they've got Charles Hoskinson, who previously was CEO of Ethereum.

So he's got the expertise.

But if you have people who have just been, you know, C++ programmers trying to build the next Ethereum,

forget it, there's far less likelihood of that happening.

So you need to make sure that the team has the experience and skills to achieve the technology, because

a technology written down on paper may all sound good, but if they don't have the team that can achieve

it, it will never go anywhere.

And then lastly, for testing and credibility purposes, does the team have an MVP, a minimum viable

product?

So a prototype or an Alpha, a version of the product in its early stages that can at least be used

for testing?

And have they put the code of that MVP onto GitHub?

GitHub is basically a repository that you can access via a website and you can see, you know, have

they actually put their code down?

If they put their code down, then that means that other developers and other programmers can have a

look at it and test it for its credibility and see, yes, this works or no, it doesn't work.

And are there already test results that prove that the project is on the right path and they are achieving

results?

So technology is arguably one of the most fundamental things when it comes to the vision, certainly

in particular cryptocurrency projects like infrastructures.

So I think that's helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 97. How to get regular profits from your Investment

Roadmap.

So I look at roadmap when I am looking at cryptocurrencies to invest in because I am looking for continuous

bursts of value.

So if I've invested in something $0.05, I am looking for them to bring out an update or for them to

do some kind of testnet launch or something that brings that $0.05 to a dollar or to $5 so I can make

a ten X or 100 X on my investment.

So that comes with roadmap items.

So is there a roadmap, first of all?

And you will find that roadmap typically on the white paper.

So if you go to the website or normally say download whitepaper, you can download it and you can see,

right, where is this project going?

What are they looking to achieve in quarter, one, quarter to quarter three or four, all in January,

March, April, May, June.

All right.

So this is what you need to be looking for.

Is there a roadmap if there isn't a roadmap that can be quite worrying?

How regular are the updates?

So let's say I invest in a cryptocurrency in February, but their next roadmap update is until November.

That means that I've got to wait ten months until there is some burst of value.

Until then, I've got to rely on speculation.

So if there are regular updates and items that are being achieved on the roadmap, then it means that

there's going to be consistent bursts of value in your investment.

How significant are the updates?

Sometimes you can look at White Paper and one of their items is going to the Blockchain Economic Forum

in February.

Well, that's not much of a milestone.

A milestone is when you have built a product or built a feature that's significant for the product.

You are launching your testnet.

So the testing environment or you're launching your main net.

So when the blockchain actually goes live, the product goes live.

So significant updates are what leads to significant bursts of value.

If it's a tiny, tiny update or something that's insignificant, it will lead to nothing.

Are they likely to release regular value?

So these updates.

Are they significant enough to release regular value, not just value once every five or eight months,

but actually regularly, you know, every two months at least.

So I typically look for one update per quarter, one significant update per quarter.

So to give you an example ethos.

So in quarter one, they're looking to release the wallet.

In quarter two, they're looking to add a Fiat gateway to the wallet.

And in quarter three, they are looking to add social features to the wallet.

So essentially one update per quarter will lead to nice, consistent bursts of value.

Now if I invest in an ICO, then I typically look for listing to be the first update.

So the first thing that they're looking to achieve is listing because you can't sell or buy cryptocurrencies

unless it's listed on an exchange.

So if they don't concentrate on listing it, people can't buy it and it can't bring the value up.

So typically I look for listing.

Now if I invest in something in May and they don't list until November, forget it won't bother too

much of an opportunity cost.

So that's roadmap and why roadmap is significant and I'll see you in the next one.

## 

## 98. How to calculate your potential for gains!

When it comes to cryptocurrency investing, there are two main sentiments that drive investing.

One is emotion, the other is data.

So emotion is based on how you feeling in the gut.

Does this vision make you excited?

Does the team and tech behind that vision make you equally excited?

Making you think right?

That is a good investment and the data is good.

Or is it purely data?

You don't feel emotional about the vision or the tech or the team, but the metrics of the data make

you feel confident that investing in this is going to lead to a profit, whether you're a fan or not.

And that's where token metrics really comes in.

Now, you can use this in both aspects, but this is what the data people look at.

So Token Metrics gives you an indication of is the cryptocurrency you're looking to invest in undervalued

now.

How do you see if a cryptocurrency is undervalued?

I'm going to show you that very shortly, but that's really what you're looking at.

Are you buying a cheap cryptocurrency compared to how expensive it could be in the future?

And how you do this is looking at competitors.

So what you do is market cap analysis.

So you look at the market cap of the cryptocurrency you're looking to invest in versus the competition,

and I'm going to do that very, very shortly using a cryptocurrency called P Cheyne compared with Etherium.

Now, you can do this with both ICOs and existing cryptocurrencies.

In fact, this is really why a lot of people get involved in some of the infrastructure projects.

ICO Because they look and they see they can buy the potential next.

Etherium For about $10 million.

So it's a 10 million market cap when Ethereum has gone up to 140 million market cap.

So that when when the market cap of Ethereum has gone up to 140 billion.

So that is an enormous, enormous gain that you can make.

And that's why people invest in infrastructure, ICOs particularly.

But you can look at ICOs and existing cryptocurrencies for this.

And then what you also look at is the coin supply versus potential demand.

Now coin supply, you get all sorts of coin supply.

So you've got Bitcoin, which is 21 million.

That's quite a small supply all the way through to something like Tron, which has got a 100 billion

supply.

So if it's got quite a small supply like Bitcoin has at 21 million and it's got the biggest amount of

demand, that is why Bitcoin is the price that it is and a lot of cryptocurrencies are in the single

dollars or cents.

So if there is a small enough supply but a large enough demand, that could mean that the price would

skyrocket.

If it's a large supplier, not very much demand.

The coin won't really go anywhere.

And then does it meet my coin supply sweet spot.

Now this is a personal thing.

I've got a supply sweet spot.

About 500 million coins in circulation that gives good volatility could go up nicely.

It could go down quite slowly, enabling me to get out if there's any real bad panic selling.

So know it doesn't meet my supply sweet spot.

So I tend to look at the ones that have got 500 million as a as a kind of benchmark.

So that's what token metrics are.

Now, how does it work in practice?

So just to go back to the example I was giving you, so let's have a look at Etherium.

First of all, now it's currently at 53 billion.

That's how much it's worth 53 billion.

However, if we go down and have a look at the historical data of Ethereum, we can see where it has

gotten to.

Now you've got to make sure that you select market cap.

If you make it disappear, it won't show and you can't see that data.

So you've got to click on market cap right here and then the market cap will display.

So we go to the highest point.

It's been 130.

So we can zoom in.

If you just if you just click on that area, we can zoom in and we can actually see the highest point.

So market cap is this light blue line.

So we have to look at where it was the highest and that was here.

So 138 billion is what it has reached.

So now what we've got to do, having 138 billion in our minds is we look at a new cryptocurrency, one

that's just literally come out and that is called P, G and P chain allows for software people to make

apps and have a scaling solution, a blockchain scaling solution like Ethereum.

But as you can see.

This is significantly cheaper now.

It's not showing the market cap here, which is frustrating.

But just to give you an indication, the circulating supply is 350 million.

So let's make that calculations times and the current price is 12.1 cents.

So two times 0.1 to 1.

And that gives us a market cap of 42 million.

So 42 million is the current market cap of PCE.

Now, we have seen that the market cap of Etherium was 140 billion.

So we're going to do 140 billion divided by.

42.

350000.

And then we will see the potential multiplier.

So for plane to reach ethereum's highest size would give it a potential multiplier of 3305.

So if we did.

A 1000 investment in P chain times by 3000.

And five.

2.754 good 4785 for good measure.

That means you can turn your $1,000 investment into 3 million.

Potentially this would rely on p chain really doing well, exceptionally well.

I mean, as well as the second best performing cryptocurrency ever has done to make 3 million out of

that.

But what you can see is that it's very undervalued.

It's 3300 times cheaper than Etherium.

So it makes it better to invest in p chain from an investing and making profits and gains and multipliers

than getting involved in Etherium because P chain is very much like for like with Etherium.

So by buying the cheaper one, the undervalued one, you've got more likelihood of making a large profits

in the future.

So that is how you look at the token metrics and it's similar when you are investing in ICOs.

So just to give an example.

The Dev Network.

So the Dev network is is creating a blockchain service.

So it's kind of like Ethereum.

So what you need to do is you need to have a look and see what is the fundraising goal.

38 million.

So that gives you that is the market cap.

So based on the price of tokens and the circulating supply that they're going to make available to buy

during ICO, 38 million is their goal.

So that means that's their market cap.

So again, what you would do is you would go to the calculator and you would put right 140 billion divided

by 38 million gives you the potential multiplier that can be made looking at it as a comparison.

So now you know how to do it via coinmarketcap and on ICO websites like ICO drops and it can be done

both ways.

And these are the important metrics for being able to see has your investment got massive multiplier

potential in it?

So I that that's helped you a great deal and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 99. Getting more detail behind the token economics

If you want a more advanced way of being able to find out how undervalued something is, then you will

do a more detailed analysis than just simply looking at the market cap.

So I'm going to take you through this now.

Next on the right hand side is looked at as one of the future leaders of decentralized exchanges.

On the left hand side, we've got the undervalued version.

The one that one really takes care of that is much cheaper to get involved in.

So what you can do is you can simply look at the vision and compare them and see which has the better

vision, because vision ultimately drives the ambition of the project.

What has the value?

That's where the value is contained is in the vision and see how it compares, how the cheap one compares

to the leader and see if there's much of a significant difference.

Now, as you can see here, it was a draw even though the leader is quite clearly on the right.

Next one t okay.

Now you can see here two very good teams again a draw.

So you've got the vision and the team behind it drawing.

So that means that looking at this in-depth analysis, actually, there doesn't seem to be much difference

in what they offer yet.

One is undervalued and the other one is the other one's looked at as the leader.

And you can do this looking at the tech, you know, seeing the difference in performance.

And as you can see here, next does win.

They are the leaders in the tech.

But in terms of roadmap, they both give a lot of consistent bursts of value.

In the metrics, though, you can see that a fairly and the one on the left, the undervalued one has

much better gains potential time, 73 versus times 37 for next.

So you can see that in the metrics that wins in support nex obviously wins, but the verdict is that

they both have very good qualities.

But the ones with the most gains potential and the lower market cap is a feeling.

So even though the leader and the winner is next because it just has an advantage, actually there is

much more room to grow for a feeling other than nex.

So what you can do is just this more detailed analysis and I've just given you a very, very quick walkthrough.

The analysis I do when I when I do a clash of the Titans, the undervalued versus the leader, see what

the tale of the tape is, see how they compare.

And if there's not much of a comparison yet, one is way more expensive than the other going for the

cheaper one because that has more room to grow.

And that's how you can do it in a more detailed way.

## 

## 100. Look for these additional bonuses from your Investment!

Now this cannot be overlooked.

Token rewards.

So what rewards do you have either being a member of the platform or for holding the cryptocurrency?

Now, if you are holding the cryptocurrency that's giving you rewards, you're more likely to stay invested.

So token rewards enable people to hold because if they are receiving, let's say, a monthly or weekly

or quarterly or even yearly dividend or they are receiving a certain amount of free coins for holding,

they're more likely to stay invested versus a cryptocurrency offering nothing for holding.

So during the dips, these are less likely to be cryptocurrencies that fall dramatically.

Do they offer a masternode or at least staking rewards?

So a masternode is when you have a certain number of tokens to qualify for being one of the keepers

or watchers or overlords of the network.

So master nodes tend to be the key people overlooking and maintaining the blockchain network.

So if you have a certain amount of coins, let's say for Dash, you need 1000 dash coins to be a masternode

holder.

As a result of that, you get really good rewards.

So you get 45% of all the transactions happening on the blockchain rewarded to the masternode holders.

The mini version of that is staking, and this is where the proof of stake cryptocurrencies, if you've

downloaded what's called a staking wallet.

If you then put your cryptocurrencies, your coins into that staking wallet and then put that wallet

into staking mode, then you will be generating some free coins as a result of staking on the network.

The people who are staking on the network are the ones that are maintaining the network, making sure

that it's running properly, that they're achieving consensus faster, and so therefore, they get rewarded

for that.

Do you have power?

Do you have influence?

So, for instance, with the DASH community, if you have a certain amount of tokens, you can vote

for projects on the dash forums.

So dash community members, they will say, right, four, four, five, dash, I will make a video

every month or I will post blogs on Dash every month.

And and therefore they submit that project.

And then the people who have the voting power can actually say yes or no, so that voting power is great

and also influence.

So are you seen or more visible or more respected in the community for holding a certain number of tokens?

And then lastly, can you just earn rewards for actions?

So with Steem, for instance, now you don't necessarily need to be a holder of Steem in order to reward

from the Steemit platform.

But on Steemit you can write blogs and people pay you in Steem if it's a high quality blog.

So they'll upvote it and they'll give you some steam.

So you get some money for that, you get rewards.

Now if you hold steem tokens and have steem power, as it's called, on the Steemit platform, you get

better rewards and you can give better rewards.

So for having these tokens yellow and for them giving you better chances of rewards, you're more likely

to hold them.

And this is why I still hold my wife still got a load of steem power on steemit because instead of selling

it, I could just use it to get money on Steemit, which is perfect for me.

So therefore it encourages holders.

So if the cryptocurrency you're investing in has all of the attributes that we have discussed in this

section, then you have got a much bigger chance of making a profit, in my personal opinion, than

making a loss.

Because these are the elements that separate a cryptocurrency from being a quality one from a good or

rubbish one.

So I hope that's helped and I'll see you in the next section.

## 

## 101. How to assess your project's long term capability!

Community.

This is way more important than you might think.

Community can be the making or breaking of a cryptocurrency.

If the community is happy, if they're feeling bullish, if they are feeling positive about their investment,

they will stay invested and they will encourage more people to invest.

But if you annoy a community, then you could make them all leave.

But at the very least, having a community gives you great strength.

So look at the size of their social media presence.

How big is the Telegram group of a particular cryptocurrency?

One of the largest I've ever seen is in Ukraine.

They have got 80,000 plus people who are members of their group.

How many likes have they got on their like page on Facebook?

How many followers have they got on Twitter?

Have the project got a YouTube channel and have they got many subscribers?

This gives you the level of involvement that the community are giving or are committing to a cryptocurrency.

They've subscribed to it.

That means they're interested and this is a good thing.

If it's got no community or very small community like 3000 or less, then it means that it's not got

much support.

It's not very hyped.

Have has the unfair discussion channels like Telegram, Slack, Discord.

Do they have good team interaction?

So it's not just a load of investors saying When Moon, when Lambo.

What you've actually got are the team that are saying, yes, this is what we're doing, this is what

we're working on, this is what we're prioritising, answering technical questions and making the investors

happy.

They've got good team interaction.

This keeps investors happy, keeps them staying, keeps them loyal.

If you don't have high team integration, then you're probably going to have people that are scaring

each other and then people are just going to leave.

Not a good thing.

Quality.

What's the quality of the conversation?

In the discussion channels, are people engaged?

Are people you holding?

Are people interested in the tech?

Are people asking pertinent questions?

If that's the case, that's a quality channel.

If you've got people that are posting memes or stickers or emojis and all that kind of thing, shows

it's quite immature.

Shows that maybe the level of quality is not as high as maybe the ones asking good questions regarding

the project.

Now, it doesn't necessarily mean that if it's got memes and it's got stickers, you should keep away

because sometimes it's a bit of fun, but it's the level, it's the quantity.

Is there more quality interaction than there is low quality or is there more low quality?

There's more low quality.

You want to stay away from that because that's an investor group that could end up just leaving because

it's not it's not achieving gains quick enough.

Is there a community forum?

Are people discussing it on forums of people on Reddit, you know, promoting the cryptocurrency?

Are they on Bitcoin talk, promoting the cryptocurrency and telling as many people about it as possible?

Okay.

So if you go on Reddit, our cryptocurrency, which is a Web page, you can have a look and see what

people talking about in cryptocurrency.

And typically what you will see is that people from various communities are saying, this is what you

didn't know about this cryptocurrency.

These are the top five reasons why you should invest or a dummy's guide to the cryptocurrency.

You've got that.

That means you've got a good community and you've got a supportive and promotional community, which

is always good for increasing visibility and promoting the cryptocurrency in wider circles.

And then the hype level.

So how much are people talking about?

How emotional are people feeling?

How excited are people feeling?

And you will typically see this in YouTube comments, in Facebook comments or Facebook posts and on

articles.

So steam articles where people are writing about the opportunity and saying why they love it, why they

are invested in it.

So is there a high level?

Are people hyped?

Are people excited?

Are people feeling emotionally bullish on it if they are?

This is a great thing.

Now, hype is typically good if the people are quality members, if there are people that are actually

telling others good reasons why they would invest.

So instead of people just saying, oh, come to this cryptocurrency, come to this cryptocurrency,

join my community, join my community.

Thank me later, thank me later.

That's rubbish.

You don't want to be seeing that.

You want to be seeing the community saying, Oh, this is a top Internet of Things cryptocurrency,

or this is a top infrastructure because of this X, Y, and Z.

So high level, if it's good quality hype, can be magic for a cryptocurrency.

So I hope that's helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

# **Section 14**: What are the main buying strategies?

## 102. The short-term strategy!

Welcome to another section about buying.

Welcome to another section.

This section is going to cover buying strategies.

So you know now how to appraise a coin, right?

You know how to appraise it for its long term value.

You know how to essentially look for a coin you have some affinity with and has some, I suppose some

proven criteria which will help you determine whether it's got long term value.

But there are two main strategies when it comes to crypto coin investing.

What is the short term?

The other is the long term.

So the first one I'm going to cover is the short term.

And the short term strategy is called pump and dump.

It sounds really crass, but this is a strategy a lot of people use, a lot of cryptocurrency traders

use in order to just make massive gains in a coin.

So essentially, it's a short term strategy.

It allows you to make spectacular gains before the price of the coin drops.

So you don't need to have necessarily an affinity with the coin.

Now, when you research coins online, the best thing to do is to just have a look at what are the bits

of news that determines the value of a coin.

Okay, now you can find a coin that you have an affinity with, like I have with Steem, like I have

with Digibyte.

But if there's a coin that I have absolutely no affinity with, then it is worth looking on poloniex

for particular coins, seeing the value, and then determining whether that has a short term benefit

or a long term benefit.

Okay.

So if you look at the markets, if you have a look at market news, look at particular coins, pay attention

to what people are saying on YouTube and then do your research into that coin.

And you will normally see that a YouTuber or somebody in the cryptocurrency community, if you join

a Facebook group or something, will say there is a particular coin that's going to shoot up, do your

research about it, and make sure that you know enough about it before you actually make the trade.

Because sometimes market news really shoots up the value of a particular coin.

It can go from absolutely nowhere to somewhere.

It can be one of the best gainers on poloniex.

And then what you do is you get out when it starts to fall, it's just pump and dump.

You put money into it.

When the price is low, then the price goes spectacularly high and when it begins to drop, you dump

it.

You've made your gains from it.

It's a short term benefit.

You know, it's a coin that you don't necessarily have any affinity with.

It doesn't necessarily have an amazing community, but it has got some market news which really propels

the value from nowhere to the stratosphere.

So let me show you a couple of examples.

So wave coin.

Wave coin is a coin that is now worth $2.51.

And as you can see here, it's not far from its peak.

Okay?

At its peak, it was $2.86 as of May the 25th, which was literally a couple of days ago.

Now, if we just go back to the middle, well, let's just go back to the beginning of March.

Okay.

So at the time, the value of the coin was $0.19 and then it went up to $2.

86.

So if we just go on to my calculator.

And we put $2.86 divided by 0.19.

That is 15 times the value.

15 times the value.

So essentially, if you put money in at the beginning of March, if you put $1,000 in at the beginning

of March, then as of the 25th of May, that would have been worth 15,000.

So 1000 to 15000.

Okay.

So you have made you have ridden a spectacular wave in just the span of three months.

This is the typical scenario where you would do a pump and dump.

You basically buy at $0.19 because you've heard something amazing in the market.

People have been blowing up about it on YouTube and in the community.

You make your investment while the price is low and then you make extraordinary gains from it and then

you dump it at its highest.

Or if it goes down just a little bit, you know, if it goes down to, you know, the two kind of 47

to 50, you dump it, you dump it because it's reached its peak and it doesn't appear to be going anywhere

days after.

So that is one example.

And on that example, you would have made 15 times your money.

Now, let me just bring up another example, a very recent example, which is Ripple.

Ripple is now currently worth $0.22.

Now, if we just zoom in on this bit here.

If you go into Ripple, let's say again at the beginning of March and it was a 0.006 0.006, so it's

half a cent to by one ripple.

Then we fast forward.

To when it was at its peak, around $0.41.

So let's just do that now.

So let's do.

41.

Sense divided by.

0.006.

68 times.

68 times its value.

So in the space of two and one half months, it has gone from half a cent to $0.41.

It's since kind of dropped off.

A cliff has ripple.

It's gone down to, as I said, $0.22.

But at its peak, it was at $0.41 and you would have made 68 times what you put it.

So if you put $1,000 in at the beginning of March, around about middle of March time, and then dumped

it in the in mid-May, you would have made 68,000 $1,000 into $68,000.

That is amazing.

Now, Ripple is one of those cryptocurrencies that has made people spectacularly rich recently.

A lot of people have gotten rich off of Ripple.

Okay.

I know somebody that invested 100,000 into Ripple, 100,000.

And now they are a multi millionaire, a multi millionaire on this pump and dump scenario.

They heard about Ripple and its integration with Japanese currency, and the Japanese were going to

be integrating it in some way.

People heard about this and then they made a bet.

They pumped a load of money and some people pumped hundreds of thousands.

And I'm talking about the serious, really serious crypto traders, the guys that have been in it from

the beginning and have made millions already pumped 100,000 into Ripple and have made themselves multimillionaires

increase their wealth by a million times well or 68 times in the case of this currency.

Okay.

So if you were going to be making or putting even $100 into this at the time, just $100, which is

nothing really.

You know, you could you, you know, stand to put away $100 every month just to literally speculate

on the market.

$100 turn into 6800.

Is that not?

Absolutely sublime.

Okay.

So that is an instance where the pump and dump scenario matters.

Now, me personally, I had no association with Ripple, no association with Pivac's, no association

with waves, but saw the short term value of these cryptocurrencies, and that is basically the way

to see it.

What are people blowing up about?

And you will see this in the YouTube and cryptocurrency community, while the cryptocurrency community

on YouTube, you will see them blowing up that particular stock because you will see that name mentioned

over and over and over.

And everybody around about mid mid-March to the end of March were blowing up about Ripple.

I heard about it at the end of March, people were saying and people were already making gains at this

point where people had bought much lower and they're saying ripple is going to blow up.

Ripple is going to blow up.

Go for Ripple.

I'm no fan of Ripple.

Okay.

But you can see the short term gains that can be made from Ripple, whether or not you have an affinity

with it or not.

Now, Ripple is not an exception.

Lots of currencies go up like this and millions more will from this day.

This isn't the first nor the last to make excellent gains in a very short space of time.

Okay, so pump and dump is a scenario when you can see there is immediate short term gain to be made.

You don't have any affinity with it, but you've heard and you've done your own personal research to

back up what people are saying because this stuff will be backed up.

It will be somewhere.

Okay.

The experienced cryptocurrency experts know where to look.

They go on Google, they know where to look, how to look, and how many sources to look for.

And this is what you're going to develop over time.

You'll develop that intuition.

You may not necessarily make the biggest gains on the first currency that you pump and dump on.

However, you will learn over time to exactly spot when a cryptocurrency is about to blow up and when

you should get in it.

Even if you invested at this point, you would have made twice your money.

Okay, so it just goes to show you can make massive gains from something as long as it's keeping on

going up.

And that is what you've got to basically keep abreast of the upwards momentum.

And then as soon as it falls and look at the fall, as soon as it falls, dump it.

That's what people do.

So that is pump and dump.

I will see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 103. The Long term strategy!

So now that we have covered the short term buying strategy, let's now cover the long term one.

And the long term one is called buy and hold.

And this is the one that you mainly use for investing in for the future because it's much more steady

gains.

But you've bought a great entry point to be able to make the most of any gains that is made.

So buy and hold.

It is a long term strategy.

It's when you use the criteria that I've given you and when you develop your own criteria on top of

that, to identify whether a coin has great long term potential.

And I've already told you of two that have really good long term potential, which I went through in

the criteria.

Now these are coins and communities within the coin that you have an affinity with, you relate to,

you can stay in for the long term.

And that is what I try to basically drum home to you going through the criteria, you've got to look

carefully at the community and at the coin and if that has a personal affinity with you.

Now, Steem is a social network.

I love the social network behind Steam, the community behind Steam as well.

Digibyte.

I have a youtube channel dedicated to Minecraft, so Digibyte has an affinity with me.

Okay, so you've got to have an affinity with it in order to be able to stick with it for the long term.

Okay.

And then there's some market news that shows there is some long term prosperity of it.

Or at the very least, you can see there is some longevity in the prosperous ness of a coin and steam

is a perfect example of that.

And then you can stick with that coin during the falls and the crashes.

Now, literally a couple of days ago there was a crash and it was a time for great worry in the community.

So we're on coin market cap at the moment.

So if we just have a look at the market cap, literally three days ago, the bubble burst.

The bubble burst.

All right.

So you can see that over the course of years and months that essentially the market cap and the market

cap is essentially the amount of supply times the price.

So you can see the market cap was steadily increasing.

More people were getting into the game, more people were investing, and therefore more coins brought

out greater supply.

It brought out a humungous market cap we reached.

So if I just highlight this section here, we reached somewhere in the region of 91 billion.

The market cap was 91 billion, 91 billion worth of market out there.

And then on Friday night, tank, tank, tank, it tanked.

It went from the 91 billion all the way down to 65, actually went lower than that.

It went about 58, 58 billion.

It went down to 58 billion.

So essentially what happened is we had the value of the market go down by 33 billion.

And what happened was, is people were queuing to sell their stock.

They wanted out.

They saw that people were selling people were selling their stock, they were getting rid of it.

And then people panicked and the prices went right down.

The prices went right down for a load of stocks.

So let me just show you an example.

If I just show you doge, doge is like a joke coin I've been telling you about in this in this course.

So if you have a look, you can see that doge was going spectacularly high, spectacularly high.

It reached a real high of 0.003 of a dollar.

And then it just tanked.

It tanked in value.

It tanked right here to 0.001.

And this was the immediate aftermath from Friday, Thursday, Friday, it was prosperous and then it

just went down.

Okay.

Now people would see that kind of movement on their coin and think, Oh, I've lost it all.

Now for me personally, I lost 50% of my portfolio value at this period, and since then I have gained

it because this is a great price, this is a great time to buy.

However, what I said to people on YouTube is Don't sell your coins.

Because you have the crashes, you have the blips, you have the corrections.

Essentially, sometimes a coin corrects itself.

If the value goes way higher than the market believes it should be, then what happens is people just

start selling, they panic, sell, and then it makes the price completely drop.

And then it goes back up to what it should be, to what it should be.

And so these corrections, these these blips, these crashes, they cause the value to go down.

And it can encourage people to just panic, sell.

You've got to have enough faith in your coin to be able to ride these falls.

So if you have a pump and dump scenario, you dump it.

But if you have a long term scenario, you keep it.

A lot of people would have bought up here and sold down here because they are too weak to be able to

hold onto the stock.

They're too weak because they think, Oh, God, I've lost a load of money.

Sell it now before I make a humungous loss.

And a lot of people sold here.

And then what happened is, is that the price went up and people probably regretted their decision.

So you've got to be able and this will test your buy and hold mettle.

This will test your resilience.

Can you keep all of your currencies are not sell I didn't sell a coin I didn't sell one coin because

the cryptocurrencies I was investing in at the time or I'm still investing in are long term.

I want to realize the long term potential of these coins steem, digibyte, blitz coin and stratos,

which I've gone through in this course.

So let me just go and show you Stratis.

So I bought Stratis at an obscenely low price.

I bought Stratis around about it was around about here.

I bought Stratis.

I bought Stratis at $1.21 and I stocked up and now look, it is worth $6.

Now it had that blip the other day.

It had that blip.

It went up to three and a half dollars and then it went back down and it allowed people to get into

the market.

And people do essentially buy it because they'd seen that it was rising quite nicely.

And then people got back into the market and then boom, it's up to $6 double what it was the other

day.

Yet if I had sold at this point, I wouldn't have realized six times the value of my stock.

Stratis is one of my top performing coins at the moment.

Let me show you another one.

Blitz cash, which you've seen me buying in this course.

Blitz cash has also gone right up.

I mean, you can see a little bit of a minus there.

But let me just show you.

Let me just show you.

Blitz cash.

Okay.

Blitz cash.

You saw I bought the other day.

I bought it around about I bought it around about 24.

Yeah.

Round about here.

$0.30.

$0.30.

I bought blitz cash at and at its peak it has gone up to at its peak it got up to $1.26, $1.26.

So look at that.

Amazing gains that were made.

Now it has since fallen.

I have every confidence this is going to go back up.

But this is a period where I get tested.

It's a period where I say, right, look at this.

Amazing.

It's it was very, very low.

It gone spectacularly higher.

And then it went down again.

Okay, now this is the time where it tests your mettle.

I bought this obscenely cheaply as it was.

I bought this obscenely cheaply, and I managed to make some very good money and I'm staying invested

in it so that I can ride the long term wave.

Okay, now I make this may go down, down, down, down, right down.

And I've lost.

However, sometimes you lose, sometimes you win.

You can't win all of the time.

However, I have knowledge that tells me that this coin is going to stay being prosperous.

I bought this when it was 15028 and look at it now.

It is three times its value, still three times its value still.

So it's amazing when you stay buying and holding because you can you can realize the long term potential

of a stock.

But if we have a look at steam and steam is a slow burn, steam is definitely one for the future, in

my opinion.

So.

Steam was spectacularly high, about half it well, nearly a year ago.

Then it plummeted.

The community gained traction.

And then since then, it has gone up again.

Now, when the crash happened the other day, oh, it was the best time.

It was the best time to stock up on coins.

Now, I bought where?

I bought a few steam.

A few steam when it was $1 five.

I bought quite a few at its peak because I thought, it's going to go high, it's going to go high.

Then the crash happened.

It brought the price down to $0.73.

And instead of selling, what I did was I stocked up.

I stocked up, I went shopping.

I went shopping and bought more.

When you have identified a stock that you think has really great long term potential, if you experience

a blip, don't go thinking, I've got to sell it.

I've got to sell it because it's going to go down.

It's going to go down.

No, you buy and hold it.

If you've got the faith in the coin, if you've got the affinity with the coin, you buy and hold,

you go.

You basically have to tolerate the blips.

You've got to endure them.

It will test your mettle, but you've got to endure them.

And I bought a ton at $0.70 and I bought some more.

It was just under I bought some more $0.83 and I bought some more last night because it really went

down.

It went down overnight.

Yeah, it went down overnight.

When it's not showing on here, but it went down to $0.88 last night.

And I thought, stock up, stock up right now.

Stock up before I lose the opportunity to buy my favorite currency like.

See these blips as an opportunity.

That is something that's key for you to definitely understand.

See blips as an opportunity to buy more stock.

I know somebody who bought 30,000 coins at 130 is where he bought.

He bought at its peak because he saw it going up and then the blip happened and it made it go down.

It went down down and it went down further than $0.85.

It's not showing anything more than $0.85, but it went down much lower.

It went down to, I think, $0.68.

It went down to $0.68.

And it's right back up again to nearly a dollar, right back up again to nearly a dollar.

But what we're doing is we just continuing to stock up because when this rises, we will be grateful

for buying at this price.

When a week ago it was much more.

A week ago it was much more than that when it was $1.30 as of May.

The 21st is now May the 30th, 31st, May the 31st today.

And there is potential if you bought at $0.68 or $0.75 to make almost double what it was a week ago.

To me double what it was a week ago.

So look at what can be made from these blips.

Don't see it as a massive failure.

Don't see it as a massive problem, see it as an opportunity.

So that is buying and holding long term strategy.

You use the criteria to identify the long term potential as a community you enjoy as a coin you have

an affinity with.

There's some there's definite prosperity in the future, and you can stick with the coin throughout

the peaks and troughs.

So buying and hold is the main type of way to invest for the long term.

But pump and dump is certainly a strategy to fund that investment fund, to be able to make extraordinary

gains in a coin whilst it is hot and then dumping it as soon as it starts going cold.

So these are the two main buying strategies that you now have the power to unleash on the coins.

So I hope that this help to you and I will see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 104. Playing the Market!

Playing the market.

So playing the market is about having a mixture of the buy and holds and the pump and dumps.

So you don't necessarily want to just be looking at one coin to do a pump and dump and necessarily one

coin to do a long term.

What you want to be doing is you want to be playing the market, you want to be seeing the movement

of cryptocurrencies and be able to make the deductions of pump and dump and buy and hold through looking

at the cryptocurrencies and play the market, essentially.

So playing the market is essentially hedging your bets.

Hedging your bets means betting on a lot more than just one.

So you're spreading the risk.

That's what you're doing.

So if you've got one particular coin that is tanking and one that's rising, you're spreading the risk.

And what happens on any given day is the one that was falling the day before will go up and the one

that was rising goes down and that is playing the market.

So you are spreading the risk.

Playing the market involves betting on more than one coin at a specific time.

So for instance, Stratis is one of my coins.

Stratis is a long term.

Digibyte is a long term OC doge and einsteinium and things like that.

These are short term.

So I basically used Einsteinium as a way I can't even find it.

Now I stay in the areas I einsteinium.

Okay, so I einsteinium.

Did really well.

I bought while it was about to ride a wave.

I rode the wave.

I dumped it.

Doge was another one.

OC doge was another one.

Now I don't see the long term value in doge.

Doge in my opinion is a joke coin oc.

I rode the wave of doge.

I bought a roundabout.

Yeah.

No it was I bought around about here.

I bought ages ago dogecoin.

I bought dogecoin ages ago.

I've been buying and implements here, here, here and building up the dogecoin road.

The wave dumped it.

It then went down in value and I bought more OC I bought some more just to ride the wave again.

OC So these were pump and dumps.

There are few more pump and dumps.

Next was another one, but I've since sold all of my in because next next essentially dived OC.

Once it started diving, I left it OC.

Once it started diving, I left left it so I invested in next ages ago must have been around about don't

know maybe it was around about here.

I invested in the next I rode a wave.

I kept it.

It rode another wave.

I dumped it.

I dumped it well before the crash.

So I and so what you see is I was using stratis, I was using steam, I was using Digibyte as my longer

term coins on this particular exchange.

And I used things like Dogecoin and Einstein, the M and Next and a few others.

There were a few others that I was betting on at the same time to hedge the bet, write the waves,

and then dump them.

So as you see a lot being made, dump them.

So playing the market is a really good strategy to spread the bets if you have a particular currency.

So as I have mentioned tons and tons of times already, steam.

Steam is definitely one of this is the one I have the most, I suppose faith in being one of the best

long term strategies, one of the best long term coins.

So I've just bought a load here.

Okay.

And the price is low.

So at the moment I'm not making many gains.

So when the price really dipped, I bought some here, rode this wave, it went back down again, bought

some, bought some and I bought some last night.

When it went, it went under it went under the 41200 it went to three nine.

I went to 386638600 and I bought a39100 because I put a buy order before I went to sleep and then overnight

it bought it.

So essentially Steam isn't making me a lot of money at the moment.

It's probably one of my least performing cryptocurrencies, but I know it's good for the future, so

I use playing the market to make sure I am keeping money coming in.

Despite the fact that some of my cryptocurrencies are at the moment, consolidating is a basically quite

level before any waves and steam I've got in there at the right time.

It's still a great price.

I'm really considering buying more OC and Digibyte Digibyte.

When I showed you Digibyte Digibyte was in the 504 hundreds.

It's been in the six hundreds.

It then took a massive dive the other day.

It took a massive dive the other day it went to under 500.

Look at this.

Look at this.

It went down to four.

I think it went down to four, four, zero.

It went down to four, four zero and I bought a load at 490 when went up.

And then I bought a load when it was at 490 and now it's 808.

So it's nearly double what it was a few days ago.

So this is one of my better performing cryptocurrencies.

And then Stratis Stratis is being stratospheric at the moment look amazing.

And you saw when I bought this and look at this, it's amazing.

So what I'm trying to say is, is that playing the market is a great way of hedging your bets and also

making sure that you are prospering at times when your longer term currencies are flatlining a bit.

So when it's just at a low price, which you're happy with, I'm happy with the price of steam at the

moment because I bought at lower than it is right now, but it's still not much higher.

So whilst it's still quite level, other coins are bringing up the value of my portfolio.

So playing the market, what you've got to do is use a mixture of pump and dump and long term coins

in order to play the market.

Use the criterias.

Research, research, research.

Don't gamble research.

Research.

Well, don't just think oh you know LPC sells good.

I'll go for that or DCR.

Sounds good.

I'll just go for that.

No, you've got to research.

Chip researcher and I've shown you how.

Research the coin.

Do your own research on Google.

Look in the different communities.

What are people saying?

And then make a deduction of what to pump and dump on pump and dump and long term buy and hold are good

strategies to make sure that you are not making many losses.

And if you do make losses, then the gains will bring up your overall portfolio value.

So essentially do that.

I do know of people who just go only buy that amp, buy that LVC, buy that XRP, buy that V RC, buy

that.

And then they just hope on a wing and a prayer somebody and what happens is, and this is quite typical,

but I don't recommend you do this.

What happens is, is literally VRC will go right up and omni coin which is already quite high right

now, will go right there and then you'll see those movements going vice versa.

So playing the market is a good strategy to make sure that you are keeping your retirement fund funded,

keep your retirement fund funded.

So I hope that's helped you.

I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 105. How to react when your investment loses money!

How do you react when your investment takes a dive?

How do you react?

How does that make you feel?

Okay.

It will make you feel rubbish the first time it happened.

Because what happens is, is that when you are playing this crypto game, you kind of feel like your

money isn't real because it's digital.

You know, you've turned it into digital money and it feels like monopoly.

However, if you looked I mean, even if you use the value of $500, if you if you had $500 stacked

up in wads of cash in your hand, you would think, I'm not going to throw that away.

I wouldn't throw it in the bin.

And when your currency goes down, you suddenly feel like that money is real again.

It doesn't feel like you're playing a game anymore.

It feels like that money is real and you feel, Oh, my God, I've lost half of that stash.

I've lost half of that $500.

And then what happens is, is that people at that point and this is the wrong attitude to have.

What happens is people think, you know what, I'd rather lose that to 50 and keep my other half than

lose it all.

And then what happens is they just they just they sell for virtually nothing and they keep their to

50 and then they go away and then they leave the crypto game.

And then what happens is, is that that stock goes up and then they realize they could have not only

made their 250 back, they could have made another 250 on top of that.

And the and the price crash, the coin crash that happened the other day exposed those people, exposed

them because so many people left the market cap went dramatically down.

And the reason why is because people were just taking their money out of the market.

People didn't want to lose more than they had already lost in that crash.

So they went away and they took half their money with them.

And then they come back and realize that if they just left it, then they would have made it back up.

And so they are now coming in and buying.

The prices have gone up since the crash and they are going to lose more money when what they should

have done is consolidated it.

They should just think, you know what?

Okay, fine, take stock.

I've lost a bit of money.

But it will rise again.

It will rise again, and then it will be okay.

Now, are you lost?

Half of my money that night was literally three nights ago.

You can see it on YouTube.

I went on YouTube and I said to people, I'll show you it right now.

So this was the video that I did on the morning after the crash, and you will hear exactly how much

I've lost and also what my mentality is and what I encourage other people to do.

So just have a look.

So it has just a tank, tank, tank, tank, tank back.

And I woke up this morning to some amazing prices.

The first thing that I looked at this morning was my deposits and withdrawals.

I had $450 in here yesterday, and when I looked this morning, I had 240.

Yes, it was whittled down by 50%, and now it is on the way back up.

So the bubble popped.

The bubble popped.

And is this a good thing?

Yes, this is a glorious thing.

If you're watching this right now, get on poloniex.

If you haven't yet started crypto currency trading.

Follow the exact steps I went through yesterday and get on Poloniex or Bittrex or whatever exchange

platform you want to go on, whether it's Bittrex, Kraken, Bitfinex or Poloniex.

I'm sticking to Poloniex because I love the way the whole interface looks.

Get on that and start investing.

Okay.

The reason I say that is because it's just going down.

It's now slightly on the up this morning.

About 3 hours ago would have been the ideal time to be awake and investing.

So as you can see there, what I have basically said is, is when the value of cryptocurrencies go down,

it's a glorious thing.

It's a great thing.

That is the time to go shopping for more.

Because what happens is, is that when the value goes back up, not only will your initial holdings

value go up, but what you have bought an insanely low price will also go up and thus creating a massive

gain overall.

Massive gain overall.

And this was the day after.

And you can see the mentality that I've got when I explain that I've lost 50% of what I had, 50% of

what I had, and now it is way, way, way above that way, way, way above what it was before the crash,

because of me following my own advice.

So essentially, when the value of your coin goes down, how do you react to it?

You don't panic.

That's the main thing.

Do not panic.

Okay, be rational.

Okay.

Now some cryptocurrencies go down, they stay down.

And a lot of cases like in the case of doge, I suppose in the case of doge people, the market value

of doge for a joke coin was extraordinarily high.

It was extraordinarily high.

It's correct in itself, but it will go back up again.

It's correcting itself slightly, but it will go back up.

So you have got to be resilient.

This will teach you resilience.

There were tons of people that left the market that day.

Tons of people.

And those were the weaker.

You've got to be strong.

This is my money.

I'm not joking.

This isn't someone else's money.

This is my money that I lost that night.

It was gone.

But it came back.

It grew like a flower.

It was amazing.

It was literally like when you cut your hair, you cut it.

You can shave it right down.

You've lost your hair, and then all of a sudden it goes back up again.

It happens.

Okay.

You've just got to apply the same logic and rationale and positive thinking to cryptocurrency trading.

Prices go down.

Steam has been anywhere between 48,030 8000 over the last three days since the crash.

And I'm comfortable with that.

I'm happy with that as I know that now is the time to keep pumping money into it, because I have a

strong belief that steam is going to be amazing.

You know, ever since the crash happened, you know, I'm a member of Steam and look and the community

have been amazing on Steam with 69 followers.

I've only made two blog posts.

I've earned money on these blog posts, you know, $66, $24.

The community are amazing, the website is amazing.

And essentially it just needs to go out to more people, needs to be released, the proper version needs

to be launched.

And then I know steam could go up by ten to 30 to 100 times.

There are other currencies that have done much better without a platform and unique proposition to steam.

So I'm happy with the price as it is.

So you can see my attitude, be inspired by the attitude because the worst thing you can do is sell

it and lose it.

Because the money goes back up.

And in my case, oh, it went right up.

So I hope you've enjoyed this.

I hope that this has given you greater confidence when you start losing money and when you lose money,

if you're finding that you want to hit the bottle or you want to, you know, I don't know, do something

negative.

Then think of this video.

Come and watch this video.

Be positive.

That's the key thing.

Don't panic, sell.

The price goes back up.

And as long as you're hedging your bets, you're going to continue to make money.

And the money will be retrieved somehow.

But so many people the night of the crash got exposed.

So many people just left the market.

They weren't strong enough.

And you've got to develop the resilience so you can be in it for the long game.

I hope you've enjoyed this and I'll see you in the next lecture.

# **Section 15:** Cashing out!

## 106. Cashing your Profits out back into Fiat!

Last thing I'm going to cover is how to cash out.

So what you need to do is you will need to go to whatever exchange you have or whatever wallets you

have that contains the Bitcoin that you want to cash out.

And then what you do is you send that over to Coinbase.

So you send it over the same way you sent it from Coinbase to the exchange.

You send it now from exchange or wallet over to Coinbase, and then you will have your Bitcoin wallet

where it will say how much Bitcoin you have.

Now, obviously I've sent all of my Bitcoin away to the exchange, so I've not done this back.

But what you will see here is the amount of Bitcoin that you have that you have now sent from the wallet.

Then what you need to do is you need to go to the buy sell area and you need to go to sell instead of

buy where we were earlier, we are now in the sell area and whatever's in your bitcoin wallet is however

much Bitcoin you've transferred from the exchange or wallet back over to Coinbase.

And then what you need to do is deposit it now to your Euro wallet or your GBP wallet.

Now I operate in GBP, so I send it to my GBP wallet.

So what you do is you just go in here, you sell the max and you sell that Bitcoin instantly, and then

it will go into your GBP wallet.

And then what you do is you go over to accounts and then you find your currency wallet.

In this case, it's my GBP wallet.

And then what you do is you click withdraw, and then what you need to do is you need to add a bank

account and then you can send your GBP balance over to your bank account, and that is how you cash

out.

So very, very simple.

There is a fee involved, but hopefully there's another service coming out soon which takes out the

fees altogether.

So I hope that that has really helped you with how to get involved in cryptocurrency, what to look

for when investing, how to invest, what the best cryptocurrencies to invest in are, and then how

to cash out at the end of that journey.

That, of course, is all depending.

If you want to cash out into your fiat, you can of course cash out in Bitcoin.

So how this is all helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 107. Cashing out - Advanced! How to AVOID high fees when selling.

When it comes to cashing out your cryptocurrencies, there are a couple of other options for you.

The first option is Coinbase Pro.

Now, I've taken you through the Coinbase system.

This is on the Coinbase website or on the Coinbase app now because Coinbase is the number one retail

Fiat gateway, you know, it tends to be the one that people use.

However, the fees can be quite high.

1% sometimes.

I believe 10% is the highest I've heard of as far as taking this amount off of you when you are selling

your cryptocurrencies.

Coinbase Pro is an addition to the Coinbase website, but a more pro version.

Now what you do is you essentially set up an account on there, you get a Bitcoin address, you send

your Bitcoin over to your Coinbase Pro address, and then you can sell that into euros, dollars or

pounds and various other fiat currencies.

But you do it at a much reduced fee.

Sometimes these fees are anything from zero to 0 to 5% of the actual transaction.

Now there are other options if you're looking to cash out large amounts of Bitcoin.

So if you're looking to sell anything from $30,000 or pounds or more of bitcoins, then you want to

consider an OTC desk or over-the-counter crypto desk.

These are people that will just buy it off you and give you money and give you the cash equivalent into

either PayPal or Western Union or National Bank transfer.

So when you go to Bitcoin.com, for instance, you want to get a quick sale and you want to find an

appropriate buyer for your cryptocurrency.

So this person has done 50,000 trades so you can rely on them pretty much.

There is another one, which is one that I have previously looked at, which is a bit broken at UK law.

Now the limits are quite high, so as you can see, she would be looking to buy bitcoins up to the amount

of €1 million so you could sell her around about ten bitcoin.

Okay, so this is what you need to be looking for when you are doing large quantities of selling.

Also, you want to consider OTC desks like Kraken, for instance.

There are various services that provide them.

When I am cashing out my cryptocurrencies because I'm dealing with larger numbers, I do use an OTC

desk.

The fees, if you pick the right one, can be very, very minimal.

So I'm talking about 0.25%, 0.5% transaction fee, which in my opinion is excellent.

I'd be quite happy with that.

So these are ways in which you can sell your bitcoins cheaper.

It's a little bit harder.

It involves a little bit more of a process.

However, if you are used to doing sending of Bitcoin to various addresses, then it won't be so difficult.

And you just need to make sure that who you are dealing with can be trusted.

I hope that helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

# **Section 16:** Meme Coins - Can you be the next Shiba Inu Millionaire?

## 108. How someone invested $13k and became a Billionaire with Meme coins!

Welcome to another section.

In this section, I'm going to be educating you on meme coins.

Meme coins have taken the cryptocurrency world by storm.

Out of the 14,000 or so cryptocurrencies that exist.

Meme coins are the biggest population of these cryptocurrencies, and if you get into the right one

at the right time, you could be made for life.

And no greater example is given than this one here.

The greatest trade of all time.

It's not related to Bitcoin, it's not related to Ethereum, it's related to a meme coin called Shiba

Inu.

So the best ever crypto currency investment was a meme coin.

Last August, a trader bought $13,000 worth of Shiba Inu cryptocurrency, and today it is worth 5 billion.

So he has turned a small five figure sum easily what most people could afford, and that has multiplied

384,000 X on that investment.

Whilst meme coins are actually very exciting because I have invested in them myself.

One of my first cryptocurrency trades was Dogecoin, which is the founder of the meme coin market in

cryptocurrency.

And whilst you can make incredible money, there is incredible downside and risk.

So what I'm going to teach you about in this section is the following What are meme coins?

Why are meme coins such a hot trend?

Why are meme coins potentially bad investments?

And if you're going to invest in a meme coin, what should you look for when investing?

A huge portion of the cryptocurrency market loves investing and speculating in meme coins, so if you're

wanting to do it, make sure you take this guide first.

## 

## 109. What are Meme Coins and why are they valuable?

What is a meme coin?

A meme coin is a joke, a novelty coin with no real intrinsic or fundamental value.

It is just based on an internet meme.

Now the doge was an internet meme much wow etc. and this became a coin.

Dogecoin was founded in 2013 as a joke.

Dogecoin is a cryptocurrency created by software engineers Billy Markus and Jackson Palmer, who decided

to create a payment system as a joke, making fun of the wild speculation in cryptocurrency at its time.

Despite its satirical nature, some consider it a legitimate investment prospect.

Dogecoin features the face of the Shiba Inu dog, and this will give you an indication why Shiba Inu

did so well.

It was introduced on December six, 2013, quickly developed this online community reaching a market

cap of over $85 billion since one of the major cryptocurrencies as of today deems itself a fun and friendly

Internet currency, referencing its origins as a joke.

When you're investing in cryptocurrencies, you're typically investing in something with strong fundamentals,

something that solves a pain, an incredible team behind it, institutional investors and venture capitalists.

All of these support the growth of a long term business.

But meme coins, they are not businesses.

They are a pure novelty coin.

Now what it typically does is it depicts a meme on the coin face, which you can see from this bunch

here we have got a dog, a dinosaur, another dog, a cat, a gorilla, a rocket and a popular TV show.

Breeds of dog or various breeds of cats, other animals.

You'll see pigs, you'll see wolves and you'll see pop culture references.

You'll see Elon Musk Squid Game, which is a cult program recently launched on Netflix.

The value in it is simply in its ease.

If you were to explain to your next door neighbor what Etherium or Bitcoin is, you'd probably struggle.

And if you didn't struggle, they would probably struggle to understand.

So with a meme coin, it's completely different.

You can't but understand a meme coin.

They're easy to explain.

It's a dog coin, simple as that, or it's a cat coin.

There's nothing else to it.

It's easy to understand, it's easy to explain, and it's easy to adopt because people understand it.

Because you can tell your neighbor next door, Oh, I invested in this this dog coin.

They may have a dog, and they'll be like, Oh, I fancy some of that.

So it's easy to adopt.

Whereas if you told them about bitcoin and blockchain, they'd be falling asleep.

The price of it going up is purely speculative.

The price of it going down is because of a lack of speculation.

So when it revolves purely around speculation and no product strength, then it is very risky and they

are very easy to create and market right now.

I could create a meme coin, I could create one in the next 10 minutes.

You could create one in the next 10 minutes.

It's super easy to create and as long as you're early, you know, there is a market out there captured

by meme coins that are just wanting to jump on the next one.

So it's easy to mark, it's easy to build a community as long as you've got some personality behind

your coin, it's very, very easy.

And that is why it's so dangerous, because you have got many, many opportunistic founders out there

just wanting to make money.

And they are very successful in the short term, but most stay long term.

If we have a look on Coinbase, Shiba Inu is currently the second most valuable meme coin.

And as I will show you here, the typical whole time for Shiba Inu.

So when a trader buys it to when they sell it is 19 days versus something like bitcoin which is held

for 75 days on average.

So although we see success stories where somebody invests 13,000 into Shiba Inu and makes 5 billion,

there is one success story for every 2000 failure stories.

And even when a lot of people make money and multipliers investing in meme coins, they soon lose it

because they get too greedy.

They get too optimistic about this coin surviving the long term.

They end up losing all their gains because these coins drop so fast.

## 

## 110. Why do Meme Coins soar in value so much!

Why do meme coins have a market cap of 59 billion, which is bigger than metaverse, nearly equal to

that of the entire NFT market?

Why do people love these joke coins?

Well, because, like I said, there's massive mass market appeal.

It's easy to understand and explain.

It's entertaining.

You love it, you're excited by it.

It's way more interesting to say that you own dog coins than it is to say you own a blockchain or infrastructure

because most people in the outside world will not understand the technicalities, but they will understand

the fun ones.

So therefore it's entertaining and they have that psychological feelgood factor.

One of the main reasons why these tokens are loved is because of their value.

You can literally buy millions of these for very little money and it makes you feel good.

So for instance, if I was to put $100 into buying baby doge, I would be getting 3 billion tokens.

If I was to buy $100 worth of Bitcoin, I would get 0.001 of a Bitcoin.

So you don't feel like you're getting much for your money when you're investing in coins with fundamental

strength because typically you are buying a fraction of that coin for very little money.

So if somebody says, Oh, what cryptocurrencies do you have?

Oh, I've got some baby dogecoin.

Oh yeah, how many of those have you got?

Because most people don't even have one Bitcoin.

And you say, Oh, I've got 300 billion of those coins.

I'll be like, Wow, that's a lot.

And you didn't have to spend that much on them.

There is that hope.

It will go to $1 and if it's worth $1, then you have made $341 billion.

So that is the hope when people invest in these coins and they get millions or billions of them for

very little money.

They all hang on to our hope that that coin is going to go to $1 or even $0.01, which will make their

3 billion worth about 30 million.

So there is a really good feel good factor psychologically that you have a lot of tokens for your money

and you have these hopes that one day or each a dollar, if you are early or you're in a unique meme

coin that has a personality that stands out and or you are buying them in a bull market, it can lead

to insane gains and multipliers.

The times when people buy meme coins is when there is a lot of greed in the market.

So today, for instance, you will see there is a lot of red in the meme coin market and the reason

why is because of a lack of greed.

We have a look at the Greed and Fear Index.

We are currently at 52, which is neutral, so there isn't money flow going all over cryptocurrencies

and when there is, for instance, extreme greed like we saw last month, that is typically when meme

coins absolutely thrive.

Another appeal to Meme coins is there's no VCs, there's no institutional investors.

That means there is no manipulation.

So when you invest in something like Ethereum, Solana, Avalanche or even one of the earlier, more

low market cap, fundamentally strong cryptocurrencies is open to manipulation because a load of venture

capitalists and institutional investors bought these cryptocurrencies at such a low price that as soon

as it achieves a high price, they can sell them.

But institutional investors and VCs don't touch meme coins because there's too much risk.

So that leaves it completely open to the retail communities that get into meme coins.

There's open distribution, so typically with traditional cryptocurrencies they will be releasing supply

over time.

So typically they'll release 10% upfront, then they'll release another 10% and 10%, whereas with meme

coins they tend to put them all out there.

As a result of that, there's not likely to be dilution of the cryptocurrency.

When a cryptocurrency has only got 10% of its supply out there, then you've got the rest of the 90%

that could dilute that price.

But most of these meme coins have open distribution, so the coins are already out there, so it can

only really appreciate in price.

And also for those in cryptocurrency that cannot be bothered to do research, they don't want to do

any hard work.

They don't want to put effort into cryptocurrency investing.

They just want to invest in something they understand.

There's no research required, so mean coins are an easy option as a strong sense of social drive and

community.

When it comes to meme coins, they are basically propped up completely by community because they don't

have fundamental strength.

It's the community that keeps the price support.

When the community is optimistic and excited, it builds on itself and as a result, the price goes

up.

But as soon as soon as people lose interest or lose faith in that cryptocurrency, the value sinks meme

coins are hot.

Because when you buy a meme coin and you join the Telegram group, you will see you are with like minded

people all want that coin to grow.

They are all fantasizing about that coin being $1 one day.

And there is a real good sense of being within a community of like minded people, and that is exciting.

Retail investors hope that what they are investing in will be the next doge, the next Shiba.

They're hoping that their one meme coin will end up being that success story that Shiba Inu was.

## 

## 111. Why can Meme coins be a bad investment?

So now you know why meme coins are hot.

Why are they also not hot?

Threat of rug pull.

A rug pull is when the founder creates the market.

They've got lots of people investing in it and then all of a sudden with their investors, they pull

the rug from under them.

They all fall and lose their money and the founder has all the money.

And then that coin goes to zero.

Squid Game is one of the biggest Netflix series of 2021.

Now somebody created a meme coin around squid game that cryptocurrency started at about a millionth

of a cent, and what happened was it went all the way up to being worth $600 a token.

So all the people that bought it when it was worth a fraction of a cent were paper millionaires and

billionaires.

But what they found was, is they couldn't sell it.

Why?

Because of an opportunistic founder that put something in the code that stop people from being able

to sell it.

And as a result of that, the squid game coin promoters vanished with investor millions in rug pull

scam.

They pull the rug under the investors, leaving the investors with nothing when they thought for a moment

they were millionaires and billionaires.

The rock is the biggest threat.

You are putting your hard earned money into a meme coin, hoping that you'll get a fantastic return

on investment.

But there are so many founders and bad actors out there that are looking to cash in on a trend, take

the money and leave everybody broke.

Now, the thing is in cryptocurrency is that in most occasions you can't find out who created the coin.

You can't find out the details, you can't find out their address.

You can't even find a name.

And as a result of that, it's such a big and easy opportunity for opportunistic scamming founders out

there to make a quick buck from this industry.

And therefore, this is the highest risk in cryptocurrency.

I mean, coins have got a short shelf life, typically in the biggest gainers, which you'll always

see in the middle of the screen here.

It is a meme coin that is the highest gainer 35 X was made on gen shin ship Inu.

Typically what you see that they are after is that coin is the biggest loser.

It's lost the most value in the entire market.

So it's got a short shelf life.

You make the gains at first, you make the gains early.

Once the growth dies, people move on to the next opportunity.

As a result of that, cryptocurrency goes down.

Coins with fundamentals have long roadmaps, they are constantly achieving.

And as a result of that, those who are investing are constantly getting a burst of value from their

investment.

But you don't get that with meme coins.

So really it's all based on the community strength.

When the community is very, very bullish and very, very excited, coin goes up.

But once people move on and stop getting excited, that coin dies without having actual substance.

Good tech, good team, fantastic value proposition.

Without that, the only thing that supports the price is the community that are invested in it.

Once that goes, then that meme coin is dead and buried.

Lack of trust has lots of bad actors in the space and also people with zero experience.

What you will see with fundamentally strong coins is the reason why millions get pumped into them on

a daily basis is because they've got experienced teams.

They have got teams that have worked either within crypto, within banking or within the industry that

they're coin addresses, but with mean coins you need no experience.

It's just so easy.

And as a result of that, you don't necessarily trust that the coin you invest in has any lasting effect

and the burn rate is incredibly high unless you are very, very early.

Like at the very beginning of that cryptocurrency's growth, you're at risk.

## 

## 112. How to Invest in Meme Coins and make HUGE money!

So what should you be looking for when investing in a meme coin?

You need to be looking for a strong brand.

You need to be looking at something either recognizable like a version of Doge or Shiba, but in a different

guise, but still can stand out on its own.

Or an animal.

Or public figure, TV show or symbol.

Right.

Something that is trendy now.

So you are looking for something with a strong brand because the strong brand is what encourages people

to migrate over to that meme coin versus the one that you were previously in.

You want to go into something less than 1 million market cap.

Pulse -- 0.00009.

And that coin went up to 0.0007.

So it basically virtually ten X within the space of a couple of days.

Now the reason why is because Pulse Fed was well under a million market cap, so it went from being

under 1000000 to 8 million market cap.

So if you get into something early.

Not only does it mean that you can ride the wave when it goes up by eight X, but it also means that

should that coin plummet, write down which this one clearly has, you're not going to get burnt.

If you had gone in at this point, there is severe chance of getting burned.

So you want to be getting into something under $1,000,000.

Ideally, $1 million may sound high to you as a market cap, but believe you me, there are tons of

meme coins with multiple hundred millions.

So 1 million actually is extremely low for a meme coin.

So if you get into something at 1 million market cap, it's early.

It hasn't yet had its rise.

There is potential for growth as that cryptocurrency builds its community.

The more people that join and even if ten people join every hour, that is more money going into that

cryptocurrency.

And that leads to price appreciation, uniqueness.

You are looking for cryptocurrency that has something unique about it.

If it's the same as something else, then what makes it stand out?

Why should people invest in that coin now?

Pulse Fake is an example of a cryptocurrency that has taken an existing brand, so Fake Token is one

of the major meme coins.

And what they did is they operated on the Pulse network rather than on Ethereum or Binance Smart Chain.

So they took the brand and moved it over to a new chain.

And similarly, obviously, we have Shiba Coin and this cryptocurrency called Shiba Vélez basically

took the Shiba Brand and put it on the blockchain and actually was the first meme coin on the blockchain.

And as a result of that, this did extremely well, particularly for those that got in early.

So what you should take from that is, is they've got an A strong brand from a different blockchain

and they have moved it to a new blockchain.

So they have called it either pulse fake or they've called it Vela Shiba.

And what happens is that opens it out to a completely new chain and a new audience.

So another thing is to evolve a popular idea or trending name.

Dogecoin is actually the breed Shiba Inu.

So although it's called a doge, the actual breed is Shiba Inu.

So what happened as a result of that is Shiba Inu was created.

Now the most famous Shiba Inu on the planet is this one here called flocking.

Elon Musk, the founder of Tesla and SpaceX X, he bought a Shiba Inu dog and he called it floppy.

So what do you think happened as a result of that?

Essentially, flock DNA was created and now this is one of the top cryptocurrencies has got $1.8 billion

in market cap and it achieves $40 million in volume on a day to day basis.

So what's happened in that instance is that the guys who created Shiba Inu evolved it from a popular

idea of doge into the actual breed of Shiba Inu and the people who created flock.

Inu looked at Shiba Inu found the most famous Shiba Inu in the world and created flock inu.

So when you evolve a popular idea that can go extremely well, if you are wanting to avoid getting rug

pulled, you need to do some risk mitigation.

So you need to make sure that the migrating code has been removed from the smart contract.

So most of these cryptocurrencies have got smart contracts.

So if you have got the migrating code removed, that means they can't lock your money in, just swipe

it away from you.

So make sure they have moved that migrated code and typically it will be in their documents.

You will also want to be looking for signs of an order.

So what we can see here with Floki Inu is they have had an audit.

That audit was carried out by certain key.

So when a cryptocurrency has had an audit, that means.

So this audit company has looked at the smart contract and made sure there is no malicious code where

the founders can just swipe the money away from its investors.

And if you don't have either of those, what you are looking for is a dockside team.

That means they are not anonymous.

That means they have displayed their names and their details.

As a result of that, you have a level of trust that they're not just going to run away with your money,

because if they do, you know exactly who to target.

So to give you an example, there's this cryptocurrency here called Doge Dash.

So it has taken the idea of doge and has created a game out of it rather than it just being a coin.

And what you can see here is that the founder has actually publicly dox himself, Paul Cassell in you

can see his profile on IMDB, his LinkedIn profile and his Instagram profile.

So by doing that, you have got an element of trust and that will mitigate a lot of the risk involved.

And then lastly, what you are looking for really is a meme coin that exploits multiple narratives.

So you are looking for something that's not just a meme coin, but also contains Nfts is also providing

a game or a metaverse, or they are creating their own decentralized exchange or even their own blockchain.

One of the reasons why Shiba Inu has done so well is because they have built on the idea of being a

meme coin.

They have also released a decentralized exchange called Shiba Swap and from Shiba Swap you can actually

trade coins and this is where you can buy Shiba Inu cryptocurrency.

So there's the native coin, which is Shiba Inu.

Then there's a secondary coin called leash and another coin called Bone.

All three of these are within the Shiba Inu ecosystem.

Also what they do is they provide you defi.

So with Berry and with Werth, Berry is another example for staking and woof is an example of yield

farming and they have got nfts.

So they have recently brought out a batch of nfts called Shib bushes and shib bushes have actually performed

extremely well on Opensea.

The floor price of a shoebox is around about one Ethereum, which is about $4,000.

So to buy a shipper usually costs at least $4,000.

So that shows you how Shiba have built on the idea of being a meme to try and become more serious.

And something else that sheep are doing is they are actually creating their own blockchain called the

Siberian.

So this is meant to be a layer two solution that sits on top of Ethereum and allows you to have faster

transactions, lower price, to use the example of doge dash.

This is clearly a meme coin, but also it is a playable game and they have got nfts coming game launch

NFT and they are doing their own marketing.

So you can see that this cryptocurrency is trying to build on just being a pure meme brand.

They are trying to build intrinsic value outside of just being a meme coin.

So if you can invest in a meme coin that is actually building on top of being a meme coin and actually

trying to build some fundamental strength, this is going to increase the opportunity of that meme coin

actually exploding in value, much like how Shiba did.

So.

In an ideal world, you are going to be looking for all of these in convergence in order to make successful

meme coin investments.

But I cannot discount luck plays a big part.

Sometimes something does well just because of pure luck.

So I hope that helps.

And I'll see you in the next section.

# **Section 17:** DeFi Cryptocurrency Investing & Yield Farming 2020/21 (Sept 2020)

## 

## 113. Introduction to DeFI & Yield Farming

In this section of the course, we are going to be looking at defi cryptocurrencies and yield farming.

Defi coins similar to the ico boom in 2017 has become the hottest property in cryptocurrency.

This is the defi charts which you can find on coinmarketcap.

If you go to the charts and you click Defi.

Now Defi has become so big that actually 26 of these defi coins are in the top 100 cryptocurrencies

all the way down to new mer.

So why should you know about it?

You need to understand why this has become such hot property, because over the coming six months to

two years, these cryptocurrencies are going to be helping the cryptocurrency ecosystem make is pric

up to the wider world, the mass market, the people that are not in crypto currency at the moment.

Why?

Because this is offering traditional finance, but in the cryptocurrency space.

So what you're going to learn in this section is the following What is Defi and what are the success

stories that have come out of Defi cryptocurrencies?

You're going to be looking at why you need to invest.

What are the properties of defi cryptocurrencies that are so investable right now?

Then we're going to be looking at yield farming.

Yield farming is like super master nodes.

It's like super proof of stake rewards.

This is a way of being able to get unbelievable, unfathomable returns from staking or locking up cryptocurrencies.

You're going to find out what the positives and negatives are of yield farming.

It's very, very early concept.

It has got humongous rewards at the moment.

I imagine over time it may temper down or become slightly controlled, but you need to know what these

are before you get involved in it, because the rewards are outstanding.

But then so are the risks and you're going to see some crazy yield farming success stories.

So this is really designed to educate you on Defi, so I look forward to seeing you in the next lecture.

## 114. DeFi Essentials - what is so powerful about it?

What is defi?

What does it mean?

What does it stand for?

Well, Defi essentially means decentralized finance.

Now, why is this so popular?

It's because apps or platforms in the Defi space are providing traditional financial services.

So a lot of cryptocurrencies that exist in the cryptocurrency market, some of them don't really solve

a pain.

They don't really provide any wide value.

Some are joke coins, but defi coins are designed to have some use case, some utility, a utility that

replicates what people are used to in the mass market, people that generally deal with banks and get

services from banks.

So this includes lending.

Now lending is quite possibly the most advantageous activity you can get involved in in DEFI because

you get a yield, you get a return on locking up tokens, borrowing insurance, trading exchanges,

stablecoin issuance.

All of these are covered by the defi umbrella and it opens finance to all.

Essentially, it takes away all the restrictions that the billions of people in the world can't use

as part of the traditional banking infrastructure.

Because there are restrictions.

You have to have certain amount of money.

You have to have a certain amount of wealth.

A lot of the people who are unbanked in the world who don't necessarily comply with the criteria to

be able to operate with banks, these restrictions are completely removed and it opens finance to everybody.

This is what Defi is and why it's a very investable type of cryptocurrency at the moment.

## 

## 115. Proof DeFi has made 75x returns!

So one of the five success stories that have happened in 2020, the year in which Defi has really been

born.

So let me share with you some coins that have done extremely well.

So first we have Russell Reserve right at the beginning of the year, this was 0.01 $0.03.

It was very, very cheap and it was off the radar since Defi came in and made it trendy.

It has gone up 23 X.

It has reached a high of 3.1 cents.

Then we have EMA.

Now, EMA is a very new cryptocurrency.

It only came out a couple of months ago and on its launch was $1.16.

It has since reached a high very recently of 27.63, and it's still a high token price.

It's maintained its growth.

So this has given a multiplier of 24 X.

If you put a $1,000 in when this was 1.16, you'd now have $24,000 if you cashed out at the top.

And number three, we have yearn finance.

Now, this is remarkable.

It's quite a remarkable story.

Yearn.finance Yearn came out literally a month ago.

It was $803 per token.

Now, when Yearn came out, how it really grew is eight its token metrics.

There's only 17,000 of these tokens, which makes the supply very, very scarce.

But also people were able to generate it via yield farming.

So it got a lot of attention and now it is worth $36,000.

This is the price today.

That is a 44 X multiplier.

Now, the great thing about yearn finance is people have actually earned yearn by locking up tokens

and being able to earn yearn on a day to day basis.

Now, when I first started yield farming yearn, I was earning 0.2 yearn a day.

Now that means that over the course of five days I have one yearn token that now is worth $36,000.

So this has been incredible.

44 X game.

Then a number two we've got LED came out at the end of 2017 and at the beginning of the year it was

1.5 cents.

Today it is worth $0.88.

That is a 58 X profit.

If you had invested $1,000 in land taken at the beginning of the year, you'd now have $58,000.

That is how much it's grown and how popularised it has become because of Defi.

And then we have got band protocol.

This was $0.23 at the beginning of the year.

It has reached a high of $17.69, which is an outstanding multiplier.

74 x Now most people could retire on that $1,000 invested in band protocol at the beginning of the year

could have been worth $74,000 by now, and that is only in about eight months since the beginning of

the year.

So it just shows you who really how defi has exploded out of the blocks.

And as I've said already, 26 current Defi coins are in the top 100.

That's over a quarter of the top hundred are defi coins.

So I hope that explains to you why defi is a big deal and don't ignore it.

## 

## 116. Top 5 reasons why DeFi Coins are so hot!

So why are defi coins so hot?

Why should you be considering adding it to your portfolio?

What is it about them that is making them boom right now?

Well, first of all, this is a boom period this year and next year.

I imagine that defi coins are going to continue to be hot.

Currently, cryptocurrencies in the defi space are worth $20 billion collectively.

That's the value of it.

And as I've shown you already, 26 of the top 100 cryptocurrencies are defi.

It shows you it's a big deal.

And right now everybody is jumping on the newest if it's defi and it's just been launched.

Everybody wants it.

It's mainly the lending and borrowing platforms that soar so well.

Why?

Because there's a double edged benefit to these platforms.

Not only can you get involved in the platform itself and get yields out of it, you can also make great

money on the gains, on the multipliers.

Now I'm going to be showing you how you get a high percentage return with these lending and borrowing

platforms.

Compound Yearn.finance and lend are relatively new and enter top three cryptocurrencies very, very

quickly.

Yet once that they were established as defi cryptocurrencies boom straight in lend just soared.

It was the first to soar.

It soared 30 x pretty much straight away.

Compound entered the top 50 straightaway and then just surged.

Surge up into the top 20 and Yearn.finance took less than a couple of weeks to get into the top hundred

and now it's in the top 30.

So they really saw they saw an astronomical pace.

They literally die out of the blocks if it's high quality.

Yield farming when they have the yield farming properties to it, it really does so.

Yearn.finance was an $800 coin and is now $36,000 per coin.

It's more than Bitcoin on each individual coin.

And why?

Because they give a very good rate of return compared to proof of stake coins or staking cryptocurrencies

where you lock up your coins in a staking wallet and then you get dividends on a daily, weekly or yearly

basis.

Yield farming completely destroys the rewards you get in staking.

Now 8 billion of real money has been locked up into the platforms, and this is just the beginning.

So not only has it got extraordinary value as a cryptocurrency, as a project, but it also has a lot

of money going into them.

And these platforms are being used.

There is use case.

And one of the things that are very, very important in crypto currency is that the cryptocurrency has

a utility.

If it has utility, it's got greater chance of exploding in value.

## 

## 117. How & where to buy new DeFi coins as they launch!

So where do you buy these new defi coins that launch in the cryptocurrency space when a new defi coin

gets launched, that is probably the best time to get involved in order to maximize the opportunity

to make profits.

Now, I'm going to be showing you how you find most of these defi coins, and I'm going to use it with

this example.

Linear finance, linear coins literally just launched today.

It was a very small cap defi cryptocurrency with great staking rewards and a real opportunity to make

lots of money.

So how would you find it?

The typical exchange to find most defi coins is a website called Uniswap.

Now Uniswap is in essence a decentralized exchange and probably the most popular at the moment.

I would call it the Binance for decentralized coins.

So what Uniswap is, is essentially it's ERC 20 token exchange or Ethereum based token exchange.

Now in order to be able to use Uniswap, so you go to Uniswap dot org, you go to launch app and what

it will ask you to do is it will ask you to link your metamask wallet.

So if you don't know what Metamask is, Metamask is essentially an Ethereum based wallet.

It carries your Ethereum, and what it enables you to do is it enables you to connect to the Uniswap

interface so you can either download it on your phone or you can download it as a chrome extension on

your computer.

And it just sits there as a hot wallet, basically an easy to use wallet.

Right now, it's not in cold storage.

Your Ethereum is just ready to use and interact with the Ethereum blockchain.

So once you have created, once you've downloaded it first and then created a Metamask wallet, then

you are able to buy coins on the Uniswap website.

Now I just want to show you something else.

So let's say I've got 4.9 Ethereum in my Metamask wallet.

Let's say I want to buy in linear finance today.

So I go to select a token and I would look for L and it's not there.

It's basically it would come up as LEHNER or linear and it doesn't come up.

So what you have to do in most circumstances is you need to find the contract address for the cryptocurrency.

So I'm just going to do that right now.

So I found it on this site here and it says the con and this is from linear finance themselves.

The contract address for Lena is this so you basically copy that you go back to Uniswap and then you

will paste the contract address and then it shows the token right there and then you can add it.

And once you've added it, then you are able to buy it.

Now I already own some, so it doesn't necessarily need to be done for me on this occasion.

But now that I have added it, I'm going to select a token and I can go to Lena and I can buy some Lena

or I can sell some Lena.

Now, Uniswap being a decentralized exchange means it doesn't necessarily need to comply with regulations,

etc. It's just a way for people with an Ethereum wallet to be able to interact with the Ethereum blockchain

and be able to buy ERC 20 tokens to swap ERC 20 tokens for another.

So you can use a theorem, you can use all of the various ERC 20 tokens.

Now I also want to just let you know about is sometimes Metamask does not necessarily just add your

token.

So what you've got to do when you have bought something on the Ethereum blockchain via metamask and

it hasn't yet shown in your Metamask wallet is you have to add it as a custom token.

So I'm going to use the example here of the of linear finance.

I've added that and normally what it will do is it'll pre populate the token symbol, the decimals,

and then you just add token and then it will show up on your wallet.

So that is how you add custom tokens and that is really how you buy defi cryptocurrencies via uniswap.

It's actually very easy to do.

## 

## 118. How to reduce Gas Prices in transactions!

I just want to give you a little tip when it comes to gas fees using Uniswap.

So I'm just going to give you an example here.

I've got 39,000 hex that I want to sell into Etherium.

So what I'm going to do is I'm going to show you what happens when you do this swap or attempt to do

this swap.

So you confirm the swap.

Now it will go to Metamask and it will show you the fee involved.

So if I want to do that fee from Hex into Ethereum, it's going to cost me $31, which is a hell of

a lot of money, in my personal opinion, wipes out a lot of the profit.

So this is what you can do.

What you can do is you can actually change the rate at which the transaction is processed.

So it has gone to fast right now.

Fast 54 seconds.

That's $31.

All right.

Now you have to pay a $31 if you pay it at $31.

That essentially wipes out some of your profit.

That doesn't have to.

That's a choice.

What you can do is you can opt for the slower transaction.

So this one is around about 3 minutes and 6 seconds and that is $0.39.

So I've already saved myself $31.

Now all I've got to come up with is the potential that within that 3 minutes, not a lot is going to

happen with the price.

Now, the reason why people choose the fast gas prices is because they want it to go through now.

They want to either buy something quickly or they've heard this piece of news and they don't want the

price of what they are selling to fall so drastically that they lose the profit.

So they try and sell it now.

Now, if the price is relatively stable, you don't necessarily need to have a fast transaction type.

I only ever recommend doing this if it's time sensitive.

If you actually recoup that money back in the profits you make in such transaction, if it's going to

make no difference, then literally opt for the slowest one.

You can also go to advance where you can even more reduce the time and the money involved.

So that is how you can avoid paying the high gas prices.

So I'm going to go slow and I'm going to put save this is now going to recalibrate the gas fee and then

I'm going to go confirm.

## 

## 119. Yield Farming can get you 600% yearly rewards! Why?

So what is yield farming?

You may ask, because it does sound like quite an odd term to have in cryptocurrency farming.

But this is going to make it very, very clear to you.

You earn cryptocurrency by either locking or lending your money.

So you've got your capital.

You put it into the platform.

You either lock it up in the platform or you make it available to lend to other users.

And you are given a return, a dividend, in essence.

Now, what is called farming is because you find farms, you go, you find pools.

So you enter into a pool with a number of other people and you are looking for the best crops.

And by best crops I mean the best returns that give you the highest percentage yield.

Now, this is a pro-level game.

I'm going to be telling you more about that in a bit.

But this is very advanced level stuff.

You can get involved, but you really need to understand what you're getting involved in.

That is where I'm looking to help you.

But essentially you are looking for farms.

You're looking for pools that give you the best return.

So somewhere that you can look for pools is on yield farming info.

Now if I just go into creme de finance, this is one of the newest platforms.

It's not quite in the top 100 yet, but I have no doubt about the fact that this is going to probably

go into the top 100.

So if you go into cream finance, you can see what the percentage yield is, 829%.

And now this is meant to be on a yearly basis.

Now you get hourly, ROI, daily and weekly.

So you are constantly getting rewards, but you're meant to be able to get on a yearly basis 800%.

So 830% is what you're looking to be achieving on a yearly basis.

Now, let's assume it stays at that rate for a year and you put $3,000 in.

You could be making $24,000 a year by investing $3,000 by essentially locking up or lending $3,000.

Now, that is crazy, but that is the type of rewards that you can get.

Let's just put 1000.

So let's say you are looking to get involved at minus some in yield farming up $1,000 in to cream finance's

pool.

You could be making $8,300 a year.

I mean, that just is crazy.

Now there is an extreme end.

Like I've told you, this is very much a pro level game.

Now, are people that are really getting involved in new farming have a lot of money.

Okay, so let's just use 100,000 as an example.

Now let's assume that it stays at 830% over the course of the month, not the year.

Let's imagine that over time it gets diluted and the rewards are less.

That would be $69,000, which is just ridiculous.

If you put 100,000 in, you make 69,000 a month.

Now, if you divide that by the number of days in a month, that's $2,300 in one day.

So if you put 100,000 but $2,000 a day, I mean, it is just crazy.

So that is what is meant by finding the best pools, finding the best farms and essentially farming

for the best yields.

Now, the less farmers there are in a particular pool, the more return you get or the higher the yield

you get.

And the more people hear about yield farming and get involved.

They put they put money into the pool and then they dilute the percentages.

The more people get involved, the more dilution that there is.

But because it's a pro-level game and because it's quite dangerous and quite risky to get involved in,

not many people are getting involved in that.

You've got to have balls of steel essentially to get involved in this.

So this is why people are making so much money right now.

So you are looking for the best farms, the ones with the least farmers, so that you can get the most

yield.

Now how the locking up works is it's liquidity mining.

Essentially what you do is you get your liquidity, your capital, and you invest it into the pool.

You put that capital into the pool and then that mines the token.

So the returns are incredible.

They are higher than proof of stake coins by a long, long way.

Even the best proof of stake coins like 43%.

And when you look at 600 to 800%, I mean, it's a no brainer.

And all is done via smart contracts.

So it's Etherium based.

You need to have metamask and you need to have a theorem in that metamask and you will need to have

other cryptocurrencies, like, for instance, Tether or Dai or a cryptocurrency that allows you to

get involved in the liquidity mining.

Some of them will need you to get a particular type of coin, let's say beeped coins or y curv coins.

What you would do is you would essentially swap your tether for the particular coin you need in order

to mine, let's say Yearn.finance or green finance or whatever.

The coin is going to give you the best yield, but it's all done via smart contracts, so it gives you

an element of convenience with it.

So that is what yield farming is, is a big deal.

So in the next chapter, I'm going to be explaining is the benefits of it, and I'm also going to be

looking at the negatives of it, because all that glitters isn't always gold.

## 

## 120. Why you need to become a Yield Farmer Today!

So what are the positives of yield farming?

Well, essentially, extremely high rewards, extremely high profit, 800%.

And that is just one pool.

There are others I've been involved in that have been 900% or more.

And they are true.

It's all done by a smart contract.

So it's it's it's undisputable.

That is the rate that it is.

It removes the headache of trading and investing.

So let's say that you get involved in Bitcoin, you decide to invest in Bitcoin one day and then two

days later it crashes.

You've lost a load of money and you're frustrated.

You're thinking, I want to be in this game to make money.

This removes the headache.

You are constantly being given free money, essentially by liquidity mining.

So you don't have to do the trading, you don't have to do the investing.

You don't need to be, you know, constantly getting a headache or constantly looking at your trades

to make sure you stay on top of it to make a profit.

This is a way of making money without really having to get involved in the trading and investment aspect

of cryptocurrency.

It gives you retirement level passive income.

It's a passive income generator that is in turbo mode compared to everything else out there in cryptocurrency.

Proof of stake coins have always been the best cryptocurrencies to get involved in because you buy them,

you lock them in a staking wallet and you are given daily, weekly or yearly dividends.

But with yield farming, you are given such crazy amounts of reward on a daily basis.

So it can really help you.

I mean, if you put serious money and I do know of people I know of two people that have put upwards

of a million into yield farming and they are making anywhere from 80 to $100000 a day.

And then what they do is they bank that, they can bank that, and then they can use that for their

retirement fund.

It's just unbelievable.

Now the rewards are paid in real time.

This is one of the best things about it is that you don't have to wait.

You don't have to stay on forever and ever and leave them staked in a wallet for a year, two years

or five years to be making the income you get paid in real time.

You generate the tokens that you are looking to, liquidity mine in real time.

You get it on a daily basis, you get it on a minute basis in yield farming so you can take it out at

any time.

And this is a good thing.

There's no lock periods, there's easy money mobility.

If you have farmed particular farm, you can then take your yield and go to the next one.

You can find another pool where you can get lots more yield.

So it's easy money, mobility, you're not locked in.

And that's the great thing about it.

It's smart contract lead, which is there for convenience and also for an element of safety.

You don't need to be inputting addresses and all that kind of thing, which could make your cryptocurrencies

get lost somewhere, get lost on the blockchain.

So Smart Contracts gives an element of convenience and safety, but I say an element, not complete.

There's constant opportunity.

There's five new farms a day.

Okay.

You need to be looking on the yield farm index.

You need to be getting involved in the yield farming community to see what other farms there are, what

other cryptocurrencies are offering it.

But there is constant opportunity.

As multiple compounding streams of income.

You can yield on cream finance, you can yield curve finance, you can yield yearn finance, you can

yield in multiple pools.

You just have a separate liquidity amount and you set it aside for each pool and then they compound

on each other.

They add on top of each other and it's open to all.

That's another great opportunity is open to all.

However, there's kind of a caveat.

You need to be kind of aware that what you put in you may lose.

## 

## 121. Why you need to be CAREFUL of Yield Farming!

So while the overwhelming negatives, there's an extremely high risk of loss, extremely high.

And the reason why is because these yield farms.

Okay, they sound great.

You know, the concept of it, but within it is code.

And on a lot of the cases, it's untested, it's unaudited.

A lot of them are almost like testing their environments.

They don't necessarily know what's going to happen.

It's not necessarily stable.

There could be bugs.

Now, bugs are bad news, particularly when it comes to smart contracts because a bug could cause your

money to be lost.

The pools can shut down.

They can shut down without you knowing.

If you're not part of the community or some form of group where you can find out what is going on with

a particular pool.

It could just shut down and all of a sudden the percentage yield is zero.

You can go from 900% to zero.

And then, of course, hacks, because these are untested, unaudited, you know, they could be hacked

by some very intelligent hacker.

That's extremely high gas fees because this is on the Ethereum network and the Ethereum network because

of yield farming has caused a lot of congestion on the Ethereum network and they haven't yet scaled

Ethereum.

It's not yet Ethereum 2.0, maybe by the time you're watching this, but currently it's not Ethereum

2.0.

It's not scalable.

So there is congestion and when there is congestion, you have to pay higher fees if you want something

to happen now to interact with the smart contract.

So when you are making any action as far as the Smart contract is concerned, it may involve gas fees

and those gas fees could be in the hundreds of dollars.

When I got involved in Yearn.finance, I must have spent about $150 in gas fees overall.

So you've got to be very, very careful as it gets more congested.

The fees are higher.

Again, this is something that makes it kind of elitist.

There are very difficult processes involved in high yield farming.

It's not simply a case of you get your tokens, you lock them on a platform, you press a lock and bang.

It's already staking for you.

It's liquidity, mining for you.

Often it's not the case.

There's normally a 10 to 30 step process and it's not easy, you know, and it varies per platform when

you do it on, let's say, for instance, yearn finance where that was about 15 steps, you know, just

because it was a certain way on the end, finance doesn't mean it's going to be the same on cream finance.

It could be a lot more steps, it could be less.

And there is a lack of information on this.

There are tutorials on YouTube for particular liquidity mining pools.

If you wanted to get involved in yellow curve finance or yearn finance or cream finance, there is information

on the Internet.

How much do you trust that information and how complete is that information?

So don't enter into this unless you are fully aware of the risks because it can be a long, drawn out

process and an expensive process.

There's no real safety net.

You can you can permanently lose your money because it's decentralized.

That is the nature of it.

That is why it's unstable.

That's why the yield is crazy high.

It's because it's unregulated.

If things go wrong, there's no one really to ask and try and get some help recovering funds.

So you have to be aware you can permanently lose your money.

Tracking is very difficult because of the unstable percentages of the yield farming profits.

You know, it could be 910 one day, 100%, the next day, 20% the day after.

You know, it's changing all the time is unstable and it is sometimes hard to profit, maintain and

move your money to do all three things at once, to be able to keep track of everything, particularly

if you've got quite a few funds that you're yielding.

You know, you could be completely ignoring something because something new has come up and you're really

loving the rewards you're getting there.

You may ignore something and then all of a sudden go to it and realize that you're actually earning

nothing on that pool.

So it's very difficult to maintain and track everything, but if you keep on top of it, you can, but

you have to dedicate yourself to doing so so it can be difficult.

It's a whale game.

It is kind of exclusive.

It is open to all, but it is exclusive.

It's relatively elitist in terms of its people really with money or can afford to lose money, i.e.

on the fees or if something goes wrong with the smart contract.

You know, even the telegram groups related to some of these yield farms cost 5 to 10.

Etherium To just get into the group so you can get some guidance.

It's not easy necessarily to get into these pools and get into these communities.

And because it's a Wales game, it can easily be manipulated.

These could be rinsed, they could be completely exploited.

These farms can be exploited for everything they are worth by the whales, and then the whales can pretty

much leave it ransacked.

So there's no yield for everybody else.

So that's something you've got to be aware of.

There's minimal to no transparency with these platforms.

Like I said, a lot of them are very early stage.

You can't really get a lot of information.

The infrastructure isn't really there.

I showed you yield farming info, which is one of the ways in which you can see what pools are available

and what are the potential rewards you can get.

But other than that, there aren't many websites or communities where you can find out what is happening.

Is that pool about to close down?

Has something been found?

A lot of the time you find these things out when it all goes wrong.

And that has happened with a cryptocurrency recently where it exploded to over $100 per cryptocurrency

and then tanked because there was a problem with the code and a lot of people lost money.

So this is another big problem.

You know, you really need to kind of know someone and have some kind of guidance from someone, if

you can, in this.

There's various numbers of token swaps involved in the process.

This goes back to the process and there is quite advanced level.

You've got to swap tokens, you've got to swap maybe.

Etherium for tether, tether for y, curve y, curve for bpt, bpt for yearn.finance.

There's a lot of token swaps, and with every token swap, with every interaction, there are fees and

there can be quite a few.

Sometimes there may not be any, but there can be a number of steps in terms of swapping tokens, and

each time there will be a fee.

So you've got to make sure you've got Etherium and essentially in your metamask to be able to pay for

these fees.

And it has to be it should be probably about $300 worth in order to safely cover them.

It's a small and it's a new space.

That means that a lot of what's out there at the moment is unpredictable.

What's what's come out recently?

People have jumped on.

They've tried to do the yield farming straight away.

And it has worked.

But it only works until it doesn't work.

And once it doesn't work, it's kind of too late at certain times.

So these are unpredictable.

You've got to know that when you get involved in the yield farming, there is always that potential

for it to all go wrong because it's unpredictable.

It's not centralized.

It's not it's not managed by any central authority.

It's not managed by a group of people.

Some of these do have governance, but that doesn't necessarily mean that you're completely safe.

So the best way to view yield farming is that it's lost money.

So you have already lost the money.

That's the best way to view it, because what you don't want to be doing is thinking that money, the

best case scenario, you will make a lot of money from it and you'll be able to get your yield out and

you've added to your retirement pot.

Worst case scenario is you lose it.

So the best case is to think of the worst case.

So it's best to think you've lost that money.

And then whatever benefits you get from investing in yield farming, then that's a bonus.

## 

## 122. Crazy yield farming success stories!

So what are the crazy return stories on yield farming?

So these are people that I've actually spoken to.

So the whale version.

So I know of a whale that was making $73,000 a day from locking up $675,000.

I know someone else also who invested about $80,000 and was making $19,000 a day.

It's just unfathomable.

But it's so true.

This this really did happen.

And I've seen the proof of it.

You know, I can't share the screenshots, but I have seen that the returns are absolutely crazy.

Now, for the more realistic outlook of yield farming, there is a retail version.

Now, this is something I have personally done and a few people within my community have also done.

They have locked up round about 2000.

Could be 3000.

Could be 5000.

But to use 2000 as an example, because this is what I did initially with Yearn.finance, is I locked

up $2,000 into one of the best pools, one of the best funds for earning year and finance and locking

up 22.

K I was making $50 a day just like that, $50 a day, and I was earning a fifth of year in finance every

day or couple of days I was doing yield farming.

So locking up two K and making $50 a day would actually total $18,250 a year if that was the case.

So the returns are unbelievable.

You know, it will take very little time for you to make your money back.

So that just gives you an indication of what yield farming can actually yield for you.

So it really is the opportunity at the moment, and there's a twofold opportunity.

Firstly, it's investing in the actual token itself, like for instance, actually investing in the

finance, preferably when it's at low like $800.

So you can invest in young finance and it would have made a massive multiplier on that over a 40 x gain

and or get involved in the yield farming aspect of it where you are earning yearn.finance.

So you invest in it and you earn it via yield farming.

So that gives you an indication really of the landscape right now as far as yield farming and DEFI is

concerned.

So I hope that this is really educated you on the defi space.

## 

## 123. NEW Yield Farming coin index!

I've previously shown you this example of how to find out the yield farming rewards.

But today Coinmarketcap has added a yield farming index.

Now this has is full of information.

So if we go to the farming page, then you can see all of the various defi infrastructures and you can

see all of the various pools and what they are offering in terms of ROI.

Now, this isn't really necessarily done in percentage order.

It's typically, you know, the total value locked into the platform ranks.

The platform now sushi is one of the most recent ones.

And as you can see here, some of the sushi pools have got relatively decent ROIs like this one here

at the bottom, 561% yearly ROI.

If I look here at Pickle is the new at the moment in the defi cryptocurrencies has become almost a little

bit of a novelty with these food or food and drink related coins.

But this one pickle, as you can see your pickle power here, this pool could gain you a 3,218% yield

on what you stake on the platform, which is utterly insane, 8% on a daily basis.

So you will never really see rewards like this.

And sometimes rewards like this is not to be trusted.

But using this yield finance index, you are able to see what are the available pools out there, what

cryptocurrency defi infrastructure is related to.

And you can make a decision on what yield farms to gain some great rewards from.

## 

## 124. Beyond DeFi - what is the next boom you NEED to be aware of?

So now you have learned about defi cryptocurrencies and yield farming, but where is the space going

moving forward kind of long term?

So what we have seen recently with defined yield farming is opportunities to make gargantuan amounts

of money.

Having said that, there is risk associated with it because you're dealing with decentralized platforms

that are kind of untested, unpredictable, and you could be left losing money with nowhere to go.

Something that is bubbling under the surface at the moment is CFE, which is basically centralized finance.

So it's offering the rewards of decentralized finance, but with the safety net of centralization that

there is kind of some customer support.

And the person that seems to be leading this is Ceesay, who is the founder of the Binance Exchange.

So as he put in his tweet very recently, literally just a few days ago, Defi is great, I love it.

But CFI is about to give it a run for its money and what it means is going to be vetted projects not

bulletproof, but there's going to be maintenance behind it.

And the reason I see this see this doing well is because what happens is in cryptocurrencies, you tend

to have some kind of rogue early starters, some early offerings of services that seem quite exciting.

So you've got sushi, sashimi, pickle and some of the others that have done quite well, like Yearn

and creme.

And then what happens is, is that you get some legitimate plays, you get people with a lot of experience

and teams with a lot of experience that decide that they also want to get involved in either Defi or

CFI.

And so they start coming into the space.

And these are projects where your money is a little bit safer, the projects are a little bit less unstable

and there's a bit more legitimacy in customer support.

So although this is kind of bubbling under the surface at the moment, I do see it as being a potential

future.

I don't think necessarily there's going to be the same rewards, but what you're going to see is you're

going to see some legitimacy and some safety with it.

Now, recently, Binance did actually list sushi, and there was a big problem with sushi, and the

price of it dramatically fell, I think, from about $10 to $1.

And it did it did kind of recover a little bit, but I think Binance learn from that experience.

They wanted to muscle in on the Defi space, but not bring the credibility down.

And with that, with what happened with sushi, it did kind of bring the credibility down.

So what I'm imagining will happen is that Cefi is going to emerge.

So CFI is centralized finance, the opposite of decentralized finance.

Instead of just using smart contract code on the blockchain, you are trusting a centralized intermediary

who is performing all the various operations, such as a basic exchange like Uniswap lending on the

exchange like you've seen with yearn and lend and other decentralized platforms and staking on an exchange.

Most importantly, it's you, the user, interacting with the centralized trusted intermediary who is

taking custody of your funds in order to provide financial services.

So essentially it's got that safety.

There's custody there.

You're not going to potentially lose your funds because of a smart contract bug or it hasn't been audited.

So that is where I see the space going.

I see it evolving to that space.

So it is something to definitely keep an eye on.

But since we made the announcement about Sea Fee and that Binance would kind of be at the forefront

of developing that technology, all those platforms that the price of their token has has grown quite

a lot.

Actually, as you can see here, it kind of gone from $23 and then it spiked up to nearly $33.

So CFI is something that I imagine that maybe in the latter end of 2020 or certainly in 2021 could be

giving good multipliers on investments and also give much better staking rewards or much better incentives

than traditional proof of stake cryptocurrencies do.

But as I said, you're also going to be seeing legitimate and well established teams and projects getting

involved in Defi too, less of the unstable platforms and more of the more stable platforms without

being centralized but at the same time being maintained.

And this is why I particularly like Linea, because this has got quite an established team getting involved

in the Defi space, offering great staking rewards, I think around about 600% or so, which is amazing

for an established team to be offering.

So yes, this is where I see the space going between the short and long term.

# **Section 18:** Technical Analysis - Advanced Cryptocurrency Trading tactics!

## 125. What is a Bear Market & Bull Market?

Welcome to this section where we are going to be taking your cryptocurrency trading game to the next

level.

We are going to be looking at technical analysis.

How do you analyze the charts?

How do you analyze the trends?

How do you analyze the movement of the coin?

That is what technical analysis is, what's going to hopefully reveal to you.

So what we're going to be learning in this section is how to spot when a coin is about to soar.

When is the market in favor of that coin actually rising in value?

How do you find the optimal price of a coin?

So there's lots of people that say, you know, Superman, what do you think of Lisk?

What do you think of Iota?

What do you think of next?

Okay, a lot of these are incredibly good cryptocurrencies.

However, if you don't get in at the right time, you won't make significant gains.

Bias support versus seller resistance.

This is where you can see essentially the red candlesticks versus the green candlesticks.

The green candlesticks are people buying and the red candlesticks are people selling.

And there's a bit of a resistance.

So there's support where the buyers are supporting the growth of the coin and the surge in value.

And you've got the resistance barrier, which is where the sellers are stopping it from reaching higher

value.

Then we're going to look at candlestick analysis.

We are going to look at the candlesticks that make up the soaring and falling of cryptocurrencies.

And then we are going to be plotting trends and trend lines on our charts.

All right.

But the first thing that you need to know is what market activity is.

Okay?

So this will give you a lot of context as to what we're going to be discussing in this section.

So firstly, what is a bear market?

So a bear market is when prices are generally going down and there is more selling activity than buying

activity.

All right.

That's what's called a bear market.

So if somebody says, oh, it's a bear market right now, it means people are more selling than buying.

Then you've got a bull market and a bull market is where prices are going up and there's more buying

activity than there is selling activity.

So the way I want you to remember this is the way they attack a bear attacks down like this.

So if you imagine a bear is about to attack you and they're massive, they attack down at you.

So that means price going down.

Okay.

Bulls, on the other hand, like if you see, you know, a bull with a bull fighter when it goes to

attack, it basically attacks like that, it goes up and tries to get its horns into them, just, you

know, either toss them into the air or stick them in, but they attack up so bears down and bull is

up.

And that basically provides context for what we're going to be discussing further on in this section.

So I will see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 126. How to spot if a Cryptocurrency is about to Soar or Crash!

Welcome to another lecture.

Now, in this lecture, I'm going to show you how to spot bear and bull markets within a coin.

You will also see bear and bull markets happening across all of cryptocurrency.

But I'm going to show you specifically for coins.

All right.

So what we're going to use is we're going to use this tool called coinage.

And coinage is basically a place where you can analyze the movements of coins over time and be able

to spot very, very good signals, spot very, very good signals when to buy, when to get out, what's

happening in the market, where the trends are all sorts.

All right.

So we're going to be using coinage.

And coinage is a free tool for the first 30 days if you do a free trial.

And then ever after it would be $15 a month.

However, if you're going to be doing cryptocurrency trading for the long term, you know, you're probably

going to be spending a lot more than $15.

So it's going to make $15 more of an investment than an expense.

All right.

So this is what the interface will probably look like the first time you log into coinage.

Now you can actually make this sync up with your exchange.

So you can actually do buying and selling on here.

We're not going to be doing that in this section.

What we're going to be looking at is we're going to be looking at all these different signals we can

get from the charts.

All right.

But this is what it will look like at first.

You'll get a list of all of the different cryptocurrencies, all of the different exchanges.

You will have the main chart area here and then you'll have an interface here.

This will either have, you know, markets, it will have a particular interface where you can actually

buy these coins and all sorts.

But we want to take this panel off if we're going to be doing our analysis.

Okay.

So the first thing I want to show you is how to spot bull and bear markets when you're looking at a

chart like this.

So this is essentially pivot.

So pivot has been chosen because this is the last coin I looked at.

All right.

So Pivot has been chosen and this is the movement over time.

All right.

So what we're going to be doing is we're going to be adding an indicator.

So indication of what's happening.

Essentially, we are going to be using MACD.

And a MACD indicator essentially shows the moving average price of or moving average value of a coin.

All right.

So that is this section right here.

So what I want to do is I want to get the brush up.

Okay.

So this will be one of the default things that you'll probably see.

So the first thing I want to tell you is that a bear market.

Can be signified by an m OC.

If you see m shapes, that's a bear market.

That means the price is about to go down.

If you see a double U-shape, that is a bull market.

All right.

So M is bear.

W is bull.

All right, M is bear.

W is bull.

And essentially what you need to do is you need to look for the M's and the W's in this Mac D indicator.

All right, so here's an M.

So what happens straight after the M?

The price goes down a bit.

Right there.

You can see the price is going down.

Okay, here's a W.

So we'll draw that W in and what happens straight after the price goes up.

So it happens not long after.

So you've seen the W form and you will know that pivot is about to rise in value and you can see it

right here.

So once the W actually ends because this is the signal line in the middle.

Okay, so this signal line, so essentially when the W ends at the top of the signal line, go in.

This is how you spot the potential soaring of a cryptocurrency.

So if you had put your money in there, you could ride this wave where it has gone from.

If we have a look on the right hand side here where it says five three, seven three, oh, that's about

the price where it actually is.

PHI Yes, well it's about 52253010 when the W ends and then it goes up, up, up, up, up, it goes

up to 60 1833, which is a load of points added to the value of the coin that you could have ridden

if you had got in at this point.

Let's have a look for more.

So.

Here's an m.

And then as soon as the M comes in, look, the value goes down.

Value goes down.

So that's when you sell potentially if you are a buyer or seller trader or if you just want to know

what's likely to happen next.

This show, this M shows the price is about to go down.

There's another M right here.

So look up.

And over and goodbye.

There she goes.

Quite a big drop there.

So it went from 46167 all the way down to 2762.

Oh, that is unbelievable.

All right.

That's a huge drop that you could have spotted with the M.

All right.

So the M signified that massive drop and then we've got a W here and then what happens?

Voom.

So when you see the W ends, invest OC and you can write this massive wave, look at it.

It went right back up and even further than when it was at this point.

OC And then there's another W Right here, look.

W Okay, so basically there's nothing coming up the other side.

It's just a straight W underneath the signal line and look what happens straight after the W volume

one right up.

So spotting the bear and bull markets with the M's and the W's on the Mac D line is a really good indication

of when you know the cryptocurrency is about to soar and when it's about to fall.

Okay, so this is one of the basic ones to use and all you really need is just to put a MACD indicator

on top of the currency and use literally choose the currency.

Here you just go piv x and it brings it up.

Okay, so you select the currency, you run a mac indicator on top of it, so you can then see the M's

and the W's.

All right.

And this works.

You've just seen me go through one, two, three, four, five, six examples of where it's actually

been accurate in predicting the cryptocurrency is going to soar or fall.

All right.

And as you can see with X, a lot of money was made with this double.

You look at that, look at that.

That was probably a gain of about 20, 20 times the investment.

So if you had invested here and got out here, then you would have realized 20 times your investment.

So using the MACD indicator on top of a cryptocurrency that you're going to invest in or that you have

invested in, is a good way of knowing what movement is going to come next.

Okay.

So right now we're here.

Okay, so we've got it goes as a V and then it goes up.

So there's no W, there's no there's no M.

So that means that it's just basically a fluctuation.

But the W right here indicated humungous.

Soaring of the currency.

So that is a way in which you can monitor the movements of a cryptocurrency and when you can spot what

to do next.

If you see a W forming, that is the time to go in.

If you haven't already and if you see an MB forming, that is the time to either brace yourself, be

ready to buy more coins at a lower price or actually sell it.

Depends on how you're feeling about the coin.

All right.

But using the movement will give you an indication of what you should do next.

So I hope that that's helped you.

And I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 127. How to find out the Optimal Price of a coin!

Okay.

So we're going to be sticking to X and what I'm going to be showing you in this lecture is how to know

your optimal trade entry.

OTI Optimal trade entry means what is the point in which you should enter a trade?

What is the point you should buy?

All right.

And for this, we are going to use this side menu here.

And particularly what we're going to use is if we go to the pitchfork and select the dropdown, then

you want to select FIB Retracement.

So fib is Fibonacci.

And Fibonacci was very famous mathematician who explored the relationship between numbers and patterns.

And so Fibonacci is very, very apt for cryptocurrency because what we've got is numbers and patterns.

Okay, now the retracement means that we are able to see how much the market is taking back if we basically

overlay the Fibonacci retracement on here.

So if we start the lowest point, it's about there and go to the highest point.

And this is a very recent price rise.

This is a very recent bull market.

So we want to basically explore the range so it goes up to about here.

All right.

And then what you've got now is how much the market can take back.

Okay.

How much would the coin be if the market took back?

50% value, 61% value, 100% value.

All right.

You can see it via know if it appears within this kind of column here.

Now, a basic rule of thumb in the stock market.

And when people stockbrokers are looking at how a price is moving over time so that they can make inform

their clients of emerging markets, what they use is the Fibonacci retracement and basically the optimal

entry comes in anywhere between 60 and 70%.

So there's this principle, a tried and tested principle, that when there's been a bull market, the

market will try and claim back 60% of that value back and you can see that happening.

So it had a massive bull rise right there and then sank.

It took a lot of that value back.

So you can see at this point it's about nearly about 45, 48%.

All right.

So it's taking quite a lot back.

So in the stock market world, if the market takes back about 60%, that is your optimal entry point,

your optimal trade entry.

So I'm just going to use this rectangle to show the range at which you can buy.

So if essentially the price enters this range, that's the time to buy.

All right.

So as you can see, Pivac's experienced a massive rise.

Lots of people got rich on Pip.

And I explain that earlier in recent successes.

Now you're thinking, right, pivot, I've missed the boat.

What do I do?

Do I still get in with Pivac's?

Has it still got an amazing future ahead of it?

Okay, now lots of people have been raving.

Pivac has got a massive evangelist community, people who love Pivac's want to see it do well and they're

constantly asking me Pivac's, what do you think of Pivac's Superior Man?

What do you think?

Has it got long term value, blah blah blah blah blah.

A lot of coins, if you research them properly, have got good long term value.

As long as you have applied the four criteria.

Has it got a good platform, has it got a good community?

And most importantly, is there the right entry point?

Have you got a good place to get into the trade?

All right.

And this shows you that so you've researched your coin, you've seen it's got potential you want in.

You use the Fibonacci retracement to know at what point you should come in.

And as you can see, the pivot price has gone down and it has entered.

It's even gone lower than the range.

So if it's below the range, amazing, that is a strong time to buy now.

It's since gone up, down and it's slightly above it.

So it would be good ideally to get it within range, but we are seeing it at just just above 60%.

Just above it.

All right.

So it's still a good time, you know, seeing where it was, you know, 85,000 to where it is now,

which is 57,800, you can see that there is an opportunity to get into pivots before it potentially

goes up to where it was before and over time, as cryptocurrencies get more popular, as more people

flood the market because they want to get into this really exciting game, the value of most coins is

going to be driven up unless they're a dead coin.

If anybody does research, we'll find out.

That's something not to get involved in.

Most currencies will go up and people are always looking for the most volatile cryptocurrencies.

Now let me show you something else that can be overlaid on top of the price the OT and that is the long

position.

So if we just get that and enter it into this area, this will show you your potential risk reward ratio.

So you ideally want it to be about 2 to 1.

So you stand to make two times gain, but only one times loss.

So the low point is about there.

About that.

And the high point is up here.

Okay.

So as you can see, it's 1.87.

Actually, I think it might be a bit too high, but it is about that.

Yeah.

So it's 1.87.

If you can get that into the two, that means that you are you have got that 2 to 1 risk reward ratio.

So you are more likely to get reward than risk of losing your money, if that makes sense.

So you just get this long position and you click into the area where you have put the ideal range to

buy and you overlay it so that you can see what the risk reward ratio is based on the most recent high

and the most recent low.

All right.

If you go back too long.

Okay, then we're not going on trend here, so we're going on a current trend.

Okay.

This current this current rise, which, as you can see, has is is a trend.

So this gives you a good indication as to your potential reward from entering into this tree.

Okay.

So two things I need you to remember from this is optimal trade entry, the O.T. that is what the Fibonacci

retracement allows you to deduce.

Okay.

And then we have got the risk reward ratio.

Ideally, you want it above two.

Okay, so if we just put this up a bit and this down a bit because this is where the price is right

now, you can see that the risk reward ratio has gone down to 1.67.

So what you ideally want is you want the price to come down lower.

So if we just bring this lower, bring the.

Lowest point up OC and then bring the the highest point up to where it actually is the highest, so

that the more you wait and wait for this price to go down to this point, the more likely it is you'll

hit the 2 to 1 risk reward ratio.

So I that's helped you with any coin and this can be applied to any coin.

You can put in any coin right here.

Let's have a look at another one.

So let's have a look at Ripple.

So we'll bring up Ripple.

Ripple is another one that's done really well recently.

Okay.

So.

This is the most recent price rise.

Are there any more?

No.

So this is the most recent price rise.

So we'll use Fibonacci retracement once again.

Lowest point.

Highest point.

And then we will get the rectangle to highlight the best point.

Now, as you can see.

We are around that area again, very similar to Pivac's.

So it's gone right down below.

It's gone right down below.

Now, if we just get rid of this, we can actually go back a bit further.

All right.

So if we just look back a bit further, let's have a look at this price rise.

So bottom point.

Bottom point, their top point there, this is this is an incredibly huge rise.

Lots of people got very rich with ripple.

Lots of people became millionaires with Ripple through this price rise.

So let's once again get the rectangle and just overlay it.

As you can see, it's pretty much the same.

We are in that period now.

Let's just get the risk reward ratio overlaid on top the long position.

Put it there.

Okay, so we'll put the stop all the way down here, the rise all the way up here.

So you can see it's a 1.94 risk reward ratio.

So again, it's approaching the two.

So a good time to make the trade.

Let's have a look at another one.

So this coin, lots of people have been raving about this coin.

So let's just go back a little bit.

Okay.

So let's look at its most recent price rise.

Okay.

So let's use again the Fibonacci retracement.

From that point to this point.

Get the ideal price range here.

Okay, so this coin is too high.

So this coin is too high at the moment.

All right.

So if you invest so let's just put the long term position.

Let's just put the long term position in here.

Okay.

So if we put the lowest point right there and we leave the highest point there.

It's a 0.28 risk reward ratio.

So you stand to lose 2.78 and make $0.28 out of this particular trade.

If you come in at this point, so if it goes down to its furthest point, you lose a hell of a lot of

money.

All right.

That is why it's important to get in at the right time with a price and don't buy too high.

A lot of people buy too high and a lot of people say, is this the right time to buy Cisco and is it

the right time to buy Cisco?

No, essentially.

No, it's not.

So that is how you come in at the optimal price point of a coin.

So I hope that that has really helped you with deciding when to make your buys.

So I hope that that's helped.

And I will see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 128. How to analyse when to stay in a trade and get out of it!

Welcome back to another lecture.

Now, in this lecture, we are going to be talking about bias support versus seller resistance, because

when this happens, you will normally see a wavering of the buyer activity and selling activity.

You don't know which way is going to go.

Okay.

And that is where you can make a deduction as to what's going to happen next.

Okay.

Is it going to fall?

Is it going to rise and what to do when that happened?

Okay.

So the other day I bought See a coin.

So I'm going to use see a coin as an example.

I bought see a coin at 490.

Okay.

I went to sleep.

I saw the price was about 495494 and I couldn't wait any longer.

I needed to go to sleep.

So I put a buy order set overnight.

So if the price hit 490, it would buy a load of them by about 15,000 of them, if I remember correctly.

So I went to sleep.

I woke up the next morning and it had soared.

The price had soared right up to here, up to 590.

And I was delighted because I'd made a ton of points in that trade.

So let me just show you the Fibonacci just quickly.

So if we just edit the bottom point here, go up to the top point and then put a rectangle in here,

then you can see anything under four, five, seven is a good buy.

Now, I wasn't necessarily sure it was going to go that low, so I thought 490 is still about the 55

range.

So I put it in at 490 and then it just soared.

It soared right up.

So I was delighted with the gains that I had made because I just woke up and I was like, Yes, it worked.

I read it right.

Okay.

And I expected it because at the time there was a you know, there was a crash of a Bitcoin crash.

And what happened was, is that basically the value of most coins went down.

So it was an ideal time to buy.

And that is my favorite time is when there is some uncertainty in what's happening in the marketplace.

All right.

So if we just move over to the one day, look, let's have a look at buyer support and sell it resistance.

So if we just so if we just draw a trend line.

Here and then draw a resistance line from here to here.

You can see that for a period of one, two, three, 4 hours, there was a tussle between selling activity,

which are the red candlesticks and buying activity, which are the green candlesticks.

So you can see there was a tussle.

It was going anywhere between five, seven, 5 to 5, five, five where people didn't know if the price

was going to continue to go up or if it was going to go down.

So what we had was we had buyer support, which is this line here.

So buyers are trading trying to trade the price up and we've got sellers trying to sell the price down.

So we've got a tussle here and that and so this is the support line, this is the resistance line.

And so you've got the two sides fighting against each other and who wins determines what will happen

with the price.

So we had.

The sun is trying to bring it down.

The bias trying to bring it up.

The sun is trying to bring it down.

Down the bias trying to bring it up and you get it.

So it kept on going for a while.

And then what seemed to happen was this candlestick seemed to break through the support line and then

it slightly drops.

And then what happened was, is the bias support actually continued.

And broke the resistance line and it went up.

And then again, the the sellers were resisting and it brought down the cost again.

And so we just had this tussle going on for hours and hours until eventually by a support broke and

it went up to 603.

Okay.

So once the bias support breaks through the resistance line, that means the price is going to go up.

So this is a time to keep your money in if you haven't bought.

That's the time potentially to invest because the price is going to go up and you're going to make a

few coins out of a few dollars out of that.

And now if the seller resistance had one, then that would have been the time to get out.

So if the buyer support had won, this would have been called breakout.

So when buyer support wins and breaks through and the price goes up, that is called a breakout.

If the sellers win, then that is called a break down.

So the sellers basically go through the buyer support line, thus creating a break down.

So if the buyer support breaks the resistance line, that's going to break out.

If the seller if the sellers win has called a break down and this gives you an indication of what to

do next.

Okay, do you get out or do you buy more?

It all depends really on how you see the long term potential of your coin going.

OC But if you're doing a short one OC then you'd want to leave.

At this stage, if you're doing a short term investment, you want to leave at this stage.

And if you see it breaking out, then you basically want to keep it, keep it going.

Now, over time, you saw that this tussle just kept on going and going and going and it caused some

right zigzags in the market.

OC Leaving the market to go right down again.

Because basically if you if we take a zoomed in look, you can see that seller resistance has an awful

lot of red here.

You can see that seller resistance has broke down the buyer support.

So the buyers were trying to keep it up, try to keep it up, and then eventually they fell under the

weight of the seller resistance and so the price went right down.

Okay, so you need to keep an eye on support levels and resistance levels throughout the course of your

coin's market movement.

Whilst the price is moving, keep an eye on the candlesticks and if a buyer support is winning, then

you stay in.

And if bias and if seller resistance wins and drives down the cost, that's where you come out.

All right.

So I hope that that's helped you with knowing when to get out and when to stay in.

I hope that's helped you with buyer support and seller resistance, and I hope this has helped you with

breakouts and breakdowns.

So I hope this has helped.

And I will see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 129. How Candle Sticks tell you if your coin value will go up or down!

In this lecture, we are going to be looking at candlestick analysis.

Okay.

So these are essentially candlesticks, these are what they are.

And the green and sometimes it's white.

So green and white candlesticks means the price is rising or it's a bullish movement.

And then we've got the red and that is a sell candlestick and that essentially is a bear movement.

All right.

So and sometimes these red candlesticks can be black as well.

So there's normally green and white.

Red and black.

All right.

So these are the candlesticks that are involved now.

How do you read them?

Because there are different types of candlesticks.

You can see a range right here.

You can see this almost cross.

You can see a candlestick with a wick underneath it.

You can see a strong candlestick next to this half candlestick.

So how do you read them?

Now, a lot of people that do trading literally just use candlestick analysis to be able to read what's

going to happen next and literally use it to form most of their trades.

So the first thing I want to talk about, because this is probably the most common one that you'll see

is engulfing candlesticks.

And what I mean by engulfing candlesticks is if you get a candlestick like this green one, which signifies

buyer support, if next to it you've got a bigger candlestick, one that basically is much bigger than

the previous candlestick, and it's a different size.

Then engulfing red candlestick signifies a bearish movement if it comes after the smaller candlestick.

And as you can see, what happens as a result of that is the price goes down.

Now, of course, the same thing happens on the green side.

Okay.

So you saw so you see this small candlestick and then you see what's called the hanging mamba.

I'll talk about that in a minute.

So you've got the smaller red candlesticks and then you've got an engulfing green candlestick, which

signifies a bullish movement.

So this means price goes will go up.

So it goes from up, up a little bit of red there.

And then up, up, up, up.

So you can see where an engulfing candlestick reads.

What's going to happen next with the coin value?

The next candlestick is called a hammer candlestick.

And a hammer candlestick is essentially when it looks like a hammer.

So you've got a little bit of wick there and then you've got a small candle right there.

That is what's called a hammer.

And in fact, it can happen even with a longer handle and a longer candlestick.

Okay.

So essentially the candlestick is at the top of a big line.

All right.

And a hammer normally means that the price is about to go up.

It's quite a strong reversal indicator.

So by reversal, what I mean is, is that you've got the red coming down and then you've got the green

hammer and then the price goes up.

So Hammer is normally a good signifier of a reversal in the coin movement.

Now you can get a red version of the green hammer and this is called The Hanging Man.

All right.

So when you've got a red hammer shape that is called the hanging man, and that's a strong indicator

that the price is about to drop.

And look what happens as a result of the hanging man.

The price drops and then you've got two hammers here basically battling each other.

So this is a strong indicator.

Price is going to go up.

The price does go up, but then it's a hanging man and then you've got another hammer and then the price

goes up.

So that introduces to you the hammer, which is when you've got a stick with a green square on it.

And the hanging man, which is when you've got a line and a red square.

And these are strong reversal indicators, a reversal in the movement of the coin value.

And then we've got two more, which is the upside down hammer or for the green, it's called the inverted

hammer.

This is also a reversal signal that the price is going to change.

However, it's much weaker than the hammer.

So the inverted hammer is a signal, but it's a weak signal.

And you need to see how the handles that come after it look to see if it was right.

And as you can see here, the inverted hammer was wrong because it was a weak signal.

And what happened was the price continued to go down.

And the same can be said for the red upside down hammer, which is actually referred to as the shooting

star.

So this is also an indicator of a reversal, but a weak indicator.

And as you can see here, it's been proved wrong.

All right.

So should probably found better examples.

But this is just to show you that it doesn't do its job most of the time.

The hammer and the hanging man do their job, but the inverted hammer and the shooting star, they don't

necessarily do their job.

So this is one where if you see an inverted hammer or you see the shooting star, you don't necessarily

make a move because they are very weak indicators, as you can see here, because what happened was

that the price did momentarily go up and then it went down.

Okay.

And then I'm going to show you one more, which is the doji.

And Doji is basically when there is no real candle, it's more like a cross.

Okay, so you've got this kind of so you've got this kind of doji, which isn't a cross, it's a T,

and then you've got this one which is more of a T, that one which is a cross.

That one's a cross.

So a doji means indecision.

So it means that that both the selling and the buying is happening around about equal.

Okay, so the power is equal, so it means indecision.

So you can't actually make a decision if the price is going up or down at this point.

So that is what a doji is.

So with this in mind, you will essentially be able to read candlesticks, you'll be able to see if

a bullish movement is happening or if a bearish movement is happening based on what the candlestick

is.

That comes up in the next movement for your coin.

So let's have a look and see what the last movement was.

So this the last movement was an engulfing, bullish candlestick.

So it signifies that the price should go up from this point.

So as you can see, the price has been going down and then all of a sudden you have got an engulfing

bullish candlestick here, a buying candlestick which engulfs the smaller red candlestick.

So from this point, it should go up.

So I hope that that's giving you some indication of how Candlestick analysis works.

I hope this has been helpful and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 130. How to spot trends and predict future prices of a coin!

Trends.

How do you spot trends?

Trends give you an indication of where the coin seems to be going now to have a trend.

You need to have three points of contact with the trend line.

So I'm just going to draw out a trend line right here, which will start from the point of its lowest,

which is probably a point where you would invest that, okay, so we'll put a trend right here.

So there needs to be three points of contact.

So.

There they are.

So you've got.

There they are.

So we've got one.

Two, three.

So this is where the coin should be going if we go the points of contact.

So it's going all the way over here.

So in a way, we haven't gone off trend too much.

Now, there'll be another trend line right here if we have a look, the trend line that runs here.

So all of a sudden, it kind of breaks with trend.

And then we've got a trend line going up here which gives an indication it's going to go right up.

But then what happens is then you've got this happening and so this trend, so then it goes off trend.

Okay.

So we can see that the price is going over here.

So there'll probably be a point where it meets.

This line here, and it will be at 21 three.

937.

So the price is expected to go up to there.

So if you were so if you bought at this point, then looking at how the trend line is going with the

three points of contact in the long term, the price should go up to here and as you can see is kind

of if it stays at this level, it actually will meet that.

So trends are a good way of being able to look at the long term potential of your coin.

Okay.

So you can have a look at its bottom point and you can see how the price has travelled and you can make

a deduction as to where that price is going to be in days or weeks time.

Do you see what I mean?

And then of course, if you put this up more, then you can see where it's going to go in, even in

an even later date.

Now, what does happen is you can have a huge spike and then it goes down below and then it goes off

trend.

And then you've got to do a separate trend, separate trend line.

But typically with trends, you can see where the price is going.

All right.

So so another thing you could do is you can actually put a line up here to see what's the best case

scenario.

Okay.

So you've got, you know, 1 to 3 points of contact for this trend line.

So it could go anywhere from really sky high up here or over here.

And so you've got a bit of a triangle to see where the price is going based on the trend lines.

So this is a really good way of seeing the long term potential.

So Waves is something that most expert cryptocurrency traders are raving about.

And one of the reasons why is because they have done the trend analysis and they can see that based

on the movement of it, it's going to go right up.

Now, this may cause you to re-evaluate the situation if the price goes right down, but at the moment,

what this is showing is really good signs of a rise.

That's why at this point here, people will be saying, right, okay, the trend seems to be following

this.

So worst case scenario, it should be around about here.

And if they wait a little bit more for it to come up right here and then they see three points of contact,

then best case scenario is going to skyrocket even more.

Okay, so that is how you can use trend lines to spot the long term potential of your coin's movement.

You can kind of see where is the coin likely to go.

We can also see the downward side of it.

So this is a more negative trend.

Okay.

So you've got the line coming down here.

So worst case scenario.

If we have a look over here.

So we've got three lines right there going from that point down here.

So it could actually plummet down here.

So this gives you really good indication of what the potential movements are of your coin.

You can I have it skyrocketing, doing really well or doing really badly dependent on the support and

the resistance that comes in the coming days and weeks.

But as you can see, there's quite a mix of buyer support and seller resistance, but there seems to

be quite a lot of seller resistance here.

So this is one that anybody who has invested in this coin should keep a track of.

Okay, so that is how to use trend lines.

I hope that's really helped you and I hope that all of this technical analysis is really helping you

with being a little bit more intelligent with what you do with your coins and how you buy and sell them.

I hope that's helped.

And I'll see you in the next lecture.

# **Section 19:** Profitable Types of Cryptocurrency!

## 131. Blockchain / Infrastructure Coins and why they are valuable?

## 

Welcome back to another section.

In this section, I am going to go through the different categories of cryptocurrency because they're

not all one in the same thing.

They all are looking to achieve different objectives.

They all have different reasons for giving value to investors.

So I'm going to be talking about that in this section.

So this promises to be a great section.

This promises to educate you on what's out there and why it's important.

So without further ado, let's move on to the first one and arguably one of the most valuable ones,

infrastructures.

So infrastructures are what allows a cryptocurrency decentralized app to run.

So so infrastructures are almost like the operating system for a computer.

All right.

So let's talk about this.

So really, what infrastructure is enable are transaction speed and scalability and also power.

So any blockchain or any two parties looking to transfer value from one person to another, if a fast

transaction speed occurs, then you can send money instantly to someone and that makes them happier.

They've got to wait 15 minutes for something that doesn't make them happy.

So a good value transfer speed is excellent.

Now, if a million people can send a million other people value at the same time and the network doesn't

go down and everybody receives their money quickly, then this makes everybody happy.

So transaction speed not only in payments but also decentralized apps.

So when you upload a photo, upload a video or search for something or enter something in to the ledger,

if that transaction happens quickly, then there's no latency.

You're not sat there going, Hurry up, hurry up.

If it goes through instantly, it makes you happier.

So transaction, so infrastructures that enables fast transactions, scalable transactions and have

great power are the ones that are the most valuable.

Also, the ability to build decentralized apps on the blockchain, which is what Ethereum really brought

to the market.

And then decentralization, decentralizing payment services, decentralizing app services, decentralizing

services generally, generally.

And this is all achieved through consensus.

So this is how the validation of transactions occur.

So you don't need a third party.

The blockchain or infrastructure retrieves the consensus.

So this enables for services to be decentralized and not belong to a central authority.

So typically infrastructures can be categorized by blockchains.

So blockchains include Ethereum, EOS, Cardano, icon, zilla by the main names.

And then you've got what's very, very new, the non blockchains.

So non blockchains are similar structures to achieving consensus without the blocks, the block sizes

and the chains.

So you have got things like hashgraph, a new consensus algorithm, tango, which is a lightweight consensus

algorithm, like a lightweight version of the blockchain and then a hollow chain, which means that

transactions don't happen in a central area.

There's like almost like a transaction per decentralized app on this structure.

Now the uses of infrastructures are mainly for processing.

So whether that's payment processing, value transfer, sending money for money from one person to another,

that processing that is the key use.

So if you're looking at Bitcoin, Bitcoin has arguably one of the worst transaction times.

It's like three transactions a second, which is terrible really when you consider that Bitcoin is like

the largest value transfer in the world in cryptocurrency.

That's terrible.

So so really it's value transfer where it matters.

Okay.

Now some of the newer blockchains, they are looking to achieve a million transactions per second.

So 300,000 times better than Bitcoin.

Then there's Dapp actions.

So when you are processing something on a day out, when you're doing an action on a dip, you're uploading

something that uploads quickly.

That's good.

If you are waiting and you see this everlasting circle on your computer while something is processing,

not good.

So good infrastructures that enable fast decentralized app actions, fast transfer, fast record keeping.

This is great.

So infrastructures are really good for these users record keeping, value transfer and decentralized

app actions.

So where you get the value.

So what infrastructure is more valuable than others depends on uniqueness.

Are they unique compared to everything?

If they're the same as Ethereum.

Why bother investing in something other than a theory?

Has it got speed?

Has it got power?

That's arguably better than anything else?

And are the quality of the decentralized apps better than on other blockchains or infrastructures?

So that is how you can deduce what are the valuable infrastructures from what other not so valuable

infrastructures.

## 132. Privacy Coins and why valuable?

Privacy coins.

Privacy coins were made sexy in December 2017 when John McAfee said if you had a privacy coin, you

could be very happy that your investment is going to succeed.

All right, now, but what are privacy coins?

What makes them so special?

Why are they so investable?

So privacy coins hide the identities behind transactions.

Now on Bitcoin, when you send money from one person to another, that transaction is recorded on the

blockchain.

When you record it, when you send it from your self to an entity like a business, again, it gets

recorded.

All right.

Now, if you are sending cryptocurrency for a service you don't want people to know about, i.e., the

government or, you know, some agency that would not look nicely upon you.

If you send money to that transaction, you can hide your identity using a privacy coin.

So some of the privacy coins that exist are Monero Dash, PVCs Deep Onion and Verge.

There are more, but these are like the main ones.

So normally when you are selling a transaction with a privacy coin, you will do it through an untraceable

network.

So networks like Virgin Monero use the Tor network, which is untraceable network.

So you can go and you can access services.

You can't normally access regularly over the internet, so it can be used for unorthodox or dark web

stuff.

Now this doesn't necessarily make it the one that people like a lot because nobody really wants crime

to occur or for there to be a criminal element to cryptocurrency.

However, that doesn't mean that it doesn't exist and it doesn't have value.

People do pay for dark web stuff, you know, stuff that really you shouldn't be paying for or accessing,

but it can be accessed and using privacy coins and untraceable network allows people to do that.

So the value really comes from high usage and the transaction framework.

So it's now having a privacy coin.

Nobody's buying into it.

Nobody is buying up the supply, no one's investing in it, no one's using it.

So by having a high usage, people actually having a utility for it, plus having a framework by which

you can send those that currency to pay for a service is where the value comes from.

This is why Verge and Monero and Dash have such high valuation because they have got the high usage

plus the framework to enable these transactions to occur secretly and privately.

So nobody knows who has made the transaction and for what now.

Privacy coins have been used also for tax evasion, but I don't want to give that as an idea.

But that is another reason why it's so investable, because there are massive whales in cryptocurrency.

By whales I mean they've got a ton of money and they don't want to pay tax on it.

So what they do is they kind of cloak it with a privacy coin.

They put it, invest it into privacy coins so you can't actually see the identities behind them.

It's quite clever but also illegal anyway.

So I think that allows you to see the benefit and I suppose the value in privacy coins.

## 

## 133. IoT Cryptocurrencies and why they are valuable

Internet of Things and supply chain are a category of cryptocurrency that has become very, very relevant,

very, very exciting recently.

So Iot in supply chain, what does that even mean?

So Iot in supply chain projects allow companies to manage their data inventory, the quality of their

goods, and the authenticity of their goods on the blockchain.

There's a lot of companies that have large amounts of data on everything.

What do they do with it?

Well, a way to manage it is through the Internet of Things and supply chain management, also inventory.

So how do they know how much inventory they have, how many pink shirts they have, and where is it

in their stock?

Where, when?

What warehouse is it?

What country is it?

So they can manage their inventory with these projects.

They can manage the quality.

They can see what has happened throughout the journey of that product.

When it was shipped over, what condition it was stored in, what condition is presently stored in.

And then finally, when it gets to the product, is it arriving in a safe condition?

And then lastly, authenticity.

So I'm going to move on to authenticity in a little bit, but it's making sure the product is genuine.

So the projects that are enabling supply chain and Internet of Things management are IATA, vechain,

waltonchain, wabi omnia tude and nucleus vision, otherwise known as end cash.

So in terms of authenticity, one of the measures is being able to prove a product has not is not a

counterfeit product.

So it's an anti-counterfeiting measure.

This is one of the primary objectives of a supply chain project, is to make sure that companies are

delivering authentic and genuine products to consumers.

Now, the way that they can check this is through RFID technology.

So radiofrequency identification, this is a tag on the product where you can scan it and you can make

sure it's the real thing and not a replica or a counterfeited version.

There's NFC chips, again, similar technology.

Arguably, people are saying it's better and more advanced than RFID.

Again, you just run a device over it and you can see if the product is genuine.

And then QR codes, you need a QR code scanner, you scan the QR code that is on the product and you

can make sure that it's genuine.

So anti-counterfeiting is one of the objectives and this is why they have so much value.

Now this prevents scams fraud.

So personal fraud and product fraud, company reputational damage and health damage.

So using as an example, Webby.

So Webby provided these RFID tags on baby products, baby food, baby formula, that kind of thing.

The reason why is because quite a few years ago there were a number of infant deaths because of counterfeit

products.

People were buying fake baby food or fake baby formula and the babies or infants died.

So this is a way of making sure that not only is is the reputation of the company not damaged, but

also the health of the customers is not damaged and helps the customer know they are consuming quality

produce.

So the value comes from how large is the pain and what is the area they're concentrating on?

Is it an area that is heavily targeted by the counterfeit culture, like luxury goods, Louis Vuitton

bags, Rolex watches, the tech quality?

So how quality is the solution?

You know, the technology behind the solution.

So I o to use tangle, which is a lightweight version of the blockchain, which is arguably one of the

best technologies available.

And that is why it is the most valuable Iot stroke supply chain management tool and also partnerships.

So typically once you have the project, then you can form partnerships with big companies, big food

companies, big luxury goods companies, automotive companies, all of these companies, in order to

make sure that not only if you've got a project and a solution, but you've actually got good and big

and reputable companies using it.

So that's explained Iot in supply chain and I'll see you in the next one.

## 

## 134. Currencies and why these are valuable?

Currencies say a lot of people who get involved in crypto currency probably thinks everything is a currency

and may start.

To be honest, most can be a store of value.

So currencies are a coin basically, rather than a token.

With a lot of cryptocurrency projects, what you invest in is tokens, but with currencies you invest

in coins and and basically it's like a value transfer.

So you are paying somebody, let's say one Bitcoin for services or three Etherium for services or five

Litecoin for services.

So it's a value transfer between two parties.

It's like a method of digital cash.

So instead of paying in dollars or fiat money, you pay in cryptocurrency.

And also it can be a store of value.

So Bitcoin is a store of value and in itself is a very valuable commodity which gets more and more valuable

over time.

So it's a store of value as well as value transfer.

So the examples of currency are Bitcoin, Bitcoin, cash, Litecoin, Digibyte, dash, ADA, Dogecoin,

and things like that.

Now the reason why I bring Dash and Ada in is because Ada is like the currency of Cardano.

Cardano is an infrastructure, but ADA is the actual currency.

Dash is a privacy currency, but it's also a currency.

And then the other three or other four are just currencies.

So you can use currencies to pay for services with cryptocurrency rather than fiat.

So really value transfer again.

Also, these currencies can be used as a method of converting cryptocurrencies to fiat at the point

of sale.

So let's say I've got a cryptocurrency debit card, so it's full of some Bitcoin, some Ethereum, some

dash.

All right.

So with that, if I go to a local pub, they've got a kind of machine where you can just kind of scan

your card payment goes through.

That's point of sale.

Now for the for the pub.

They receive it in fiat.

But I've used a card with cryptocurrency so these currencies can be converted into fiat for the person

accepting at the point of sale.

Now the value comes from the ability to be mainstream adopted.

So let's say in years to come, when cryptocurrency all of a sudden becomes a way of paying for things

generally in retail, paying for your insurance, paying for your coffee, paying for anything over

the counter, paying for your groceries.

If it's more mainstream, if it's got more chance of being mainstream, adopted, it's got more value.

Bitcoin is likely to be mainstream adopted as long as they can store sort out scalability issues because

three transactions a second across the world is bad.

All right.

But if they have the lightning network, it makes it faster.

Litecoin and Bitcoin Cash are typical successors to Bitcoin, hence why Bitcoin Cash is in the top five

and like coins in the top ten.

All right, so if it's more likely to be mainstream used, then it's got higher value, high usage.

So high transactions, high transaction volume happening on the blockchain is also a reason for it to

have value.

If nobody's using it as value transfer, it's got very little value and also zero to low fees transacting.

So if I pay, you know, Joe Bloggs, if I pay him ten Bitcoin, if it's free, if he gets the full

ten Litecoin, that's great.

Only not only for me, but for him.

He gets the full allowance and I don't have to pay anything.

That's zero fees in the transaction.

However, if there are fees, then it makes it less attractive for me.

And I'll typically choose a currency that has zero fees or at the very least low fees.

But what I don't want is high fees.

So let's say I send him ten Bitcoin, I get charged 1 to 10% for that transaction.

No, no, no, no, no.

So it's got low fees or no fees, the better mainstream appeal, higher usage and zero to low fees.

You've got a valuable cryptocurrency there.

## 

## 135. DApp/Utility Coins and why these are important?

Last but not least, platforms or dapps.

Decentralized apps.

So apps that are decentralized in nature.

So like Facebook, but not controlled by Facebook, controlled by a series of nodes on the network.

So platforms.

Why are these good cryptocurrencies?

These are the services replicating the services out there in the real world.

This is what's giving cryptocurrency a lot of value and particularly giving the infrastructures a lot

of value.

So.

Platforms and dapps are decentralized apps or services for people and or business applications, decentralized

in nature that are for people and businesses to use.

So some examples are steam.

So steam is related to the social network steam.

It also de tube and the audio.

So this is a platform that enables people to do social networking ethos, which is a wallet.

This is a decentralized service where people can have all their cryptocurrencies in one wallet.

Power Ledger.

Power ledger is a way of buying and selling electricity at the lowest currency in your country.

So whether it's $0.01, one penny, one, whatever, you can get the lowest cost electricity.

Now, centralized services don't offer cheap electricity.

They monopolize the electricity and energy industry.

They charge a lot of money and they have a monopoly.

So they can do that.

But a decentralized service like power ledger means you can get electricity for the cheapest amount

of money per unit of electricity.

Deb Atom is like a cryptocurrency bank.

You can get loans like you can from a normal bank, but cryptocurrency loans IT degree is a way of buying

and selling online courses for cryptocurrency.

And then CryptoKitties, which is basically a game.

So you've got a wide breadth of the different types of services and platforms covered by Dapps.

So Dapps essentially are taking traditional services and making them decentralized so that they can

exist in this cryptocurrency world, so that decentralizing the services and then monetizing services

too.

So on Facebook, if you put a status which loads people like those people comment on those people love

you don't get paid anything for that.

If you put a status on Steam or a blog on Steam and people upvote that, which is the same as liking

it, you get paid a bit.

So it's monetizing.

So it's making more money available to people, like free money, I suppose.

So it's monetizing like big degree.

You're monetizing, you're enabling people to get paid in cryptocurrency for selling online courses,

which no other platform allows.

Now these can be long term or seasonal.

Think about Dapps like the App Store.

Now, services like Power Ledger have a long term appeal because as you know, arguably they are making

electricity cheap across the world.

However, certain apps may only only be seasonal, may only be good for a certain amount of time.

This tends to come in the form of the games.

So CryptoKitties, for instance, was really viral for a certain amount of time, died now.

So, you know, so it can be long term, can be seasonal.

You want to go for the long term ones if you want to make good profits.

So the value comes from a depth that solves the pain, rewards the people or businesses.

Using it is unique.

So you power ledger first to market with cheap electricity.

You now got other ones like WI power and restart energy and electrify Asia that are like meat products.

So if they so if power later was unique and therefore know it's the one that's most likely to be valuable

in the future and have mass appeal because ultimately the cryptocurrencies that are used by the masses,

you know, general people out there in the world that use traditional services using the cryptocurrency

version, this is where you're going to get the value, you're going to get the value in the numbers,

in the people, in the blockchain usage.

So there we are.

So that is how you get the valuable dapps from the not so valuable, maybe even seasonal that.

So that is all of the cryptocurrencies explain how that that's helped and I'll see you in the next lecture.

# **Section 20:** Blockchain Mining Methods (Advanced)

## 136. Intro to Blockchain Governance & Mining!

Welcome back to another section.

In this section, we are going to go through blockchain governance, which essentially talks about how

blockchains are run and consensus algorithms such as proof of work, proof of state, delegated, proof

of stake and more.

So this is going to be a very easy explanation behind quite a complicated subject.

Okay.

So what blockchain governance is essentially as it determines the mining and consensus algorithm method

for that particular blockchain, how transactions are validated, how coins are generated, and how

blocks are added in the blockchain, and how the network is run.

Essentially, it's also responsible for the rewards for miners, for nodes and for witnesses.

How much do they get for mining on the blockchain, and how does the blockchain protect against the

double spend attack or the 51% attack, which is essentially a way of malicious people that are running

the blockchain, being able to replicate a transaction, put it in their wallet and spend it.

So how do you protect the network against attacks on your money?

And so I'm going to go through proof of work, proof of stake delegated, proof of stake master nodes

and some of the more minor consensus algorithms, such as proof of caring and proof of authority.

But you're probably wondering, why should I care about any of this?

Well, this is why.

So you can actually be a node, you can be a miner, you can be a witness, and you can be a master

node holder.

These are ways of earning passive income in cryptocurrency, and it's important to know what you can

make in terms of money and also what's easy for you.

All right.

So you can choose the mining you want to take part in.

If you want to take part in it based on cost, ease and reward, you can also see how a blockchain is

run and how it's affected.

So when you are investing in infrastructures or blockchains, you have an idea of how they come to consensus

and how they protect the network.

And you can ensure your money is protected.

If you are using a blockchain and making sure you're using a blockchain that has got a decent protection

system and a decent consensus algorithm to achieve fast transactions.

And also it's just good for you to have knowledge.

Knowledge is power in cryptocurrency, and when you are investing, it's very important that you know

what certain things mean.

And proof of work, proof of stake, delegate and proof of stake are basically consensus algorithms.

You will come across a lot, so it's good for you to know what coins are within these different consensus

types.

So without further ado, let's get into the first lecture.

## 

## 137. Proof of Work Mining Explained!

So the first type of mining I'm going to talk about is proof of work.

This is manual mining cryptocurrencies.

So this mining method essentially validates transactions.

So the transactions happening on the blockchain and it generates new cryptocurrency.

This is how the Bitcoin miners are essentially mining through the remaining kind of 4 million bitcoins

out there left to be added to circulation.

So how proof of work essentially works is miners have to prove they are working.

And the more computational power you put into the blockchain to protect it and essentially solve these

mathematic puzzles, the better chance you have of getting the reward.

And so the reward for the successful miner that validates transactions that mines new blocks is 12 Bitcoin.

So the reason why this is such a robust system for a blockchain is because of the hash power.

The amount of computational power being put into the blockchain is protecting against an attack.

Essentially, to be able to replicate the transaction and create a double spend is by a great, almost

an almost impossibly high amount of computational power to make that double spend work in his favor.

So because proof of work mining has such a large community of miners that are putting high computational

power, it makes it almost impossible for double spend to occur.

That's why Bitcoin is arguably the most secure blockchain in existence.

So the different types of proof of work cryptocurrencies are Bitcoin, the number one Etherium, number

two Litecoin, Bitcoin, Cash and Zcash.

These are amongst the proof of work cryptocurrencies that exist right now.

Now just to be able to help you spot proof of work cryptocurrencies, the way to do it really is if

you go on Coinmarketcap, which I've taken you through, then what you need to look for is the asterisks.

If there is an asterisks, that means that it is a minted cryptocurrency and not a mined cryptocurrency.

So the ones that are mined are proof of work generally.

So Bitcoin Etherium as you can see, Litecoin, so you can see the ones that are mined and the ones

that are minted based on this asterisks.

So that was proof of work.

Hope you understood that and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 138. Proof of Stake and why it is preferred!

Okay.

Now we are moving on to proof of stake cryptocurrencies.

Now, this is arguably one of the lowest barrier to entry mining algorithms.

So proof of stake.

How it works is miners.

So they're not the traditional miners doing proof of work that's doing it.

That's putting in the high computational power.

Instead, what they're doing is they're validating transactions and maintaining the network via a staking

wallet.

So what they do is they download a wallet which you can typically get from that particular cryptocurrency's

website.

You put your coins in it and then you put that wallet into staking mode, and that is what's helping

run the network.

Now, this is essentially seen as a fair way.

So the more computational power you have, the more money you have to afford those electricity costs,

the more chance you get of getting a reward, which is unfair on the people that don't necessarily have

a lot of money and have the infrastructure to be able to do it or the expertise.

Whereas proof of stake is way fairer.

So it's based on coins owned rather than computational power.

So how it works is greater reward is given to those based on how much they hold of that particular cryptocurrency.

The more coins you own, essentially, the more mining power you have, and therefore the greater the

rewards.

Now, the reason why proof of stake is so much more preferred for just regular people is because it's

more energy efficient.

You don't need to spend money on a high powered computer.

You don't need to spend money on electricity.

The costs of proof of work mining are extremely high, so it's much easier, much more energy efficient,

much more cost efficient.

And it is still protected because it's a distributed consensus mechanism.

The people who are running staking wallets are essentially nodes, and those nodes are agreeing with

each other about transactions.

So it's still protecting.

And because with staking there is quite a lot of people who like to get involved in staking cryptocurrencies.

It ensures that network protection.

So the most popular cryptocurrencies that are proof of stake cryptocurrencies are neo ontology, ada

vechain and OMG.

## 

## 139. Masternodes - why are they and why you may want one!

M.A..

Lots of people are really interested in master nodes, and I'm going to tell you why they are in this

lecture.

So master nodes is a lot like a staking wallet.

However, you run this wallet on its own server.

So typically you will get an external server or a remote server and you will run your masternode wallet

on that server, and that will essentially validate transactions with a community of other master node

holders.

But the difference is, is that there are special functions or obligations for master node holders.

So in order to be a master node holder, you need to have a certain amount of coins, like a minimum

amount of coins that you put into your masternode wallet and enables you to be a masternode.

So all you really need is the minimum amount of coins to be a masternode holder.

So for Dash it's 1000.

Dash four x is 10,000 pivots for OMNIA.

Dude, it's 20,000 Omnia tokens, so you need to have that.

And then what you're going to be doing is you're going to be performing obligations.

So whether that's voting, whether that is actively running the blockchain, actively running the content

on that blockchain, that is the kind of thing that you have to do as a masternode holder.

So what must node holders get in reward is a percentage of the blockchain transactions.

So for instance, with Dash, 45% of the transactions are distributed to masternode holders.

The less there are of masternode holders, the more you get, the more there are, the more that money

is shared out and on.

The tuite is 60% of the transactions.

Now, this is almost a mixture of proof of stake and proof of work.

Why?

Because it's got the staking element.

It's got the the certain amount of coins.

You need to have a high amount of coins to be able to be a masternode holder.

And also your wallet acts as the node or the masternode that runs the network.

The proof of work is like you have to show proof that you are working.

So these special obligation, these special functions that masternode holders do.

Now, the most famous master nodes are Dash, PVCs, vechain and that's very new fusion and that's very

new.

And on the tube, although on the tube is slightly different, they've got sponsored nodes.

You don't need to manually put your masternode wallet on a separate server.

They do it for you.

Now, if you want more information on master nodes, it's worth going to a website called Master Nodes

online.

And what that will show you is all of the different master nodes that you can get.

So what it will show you is it will show you how many nodes are running on the network and how many

coins are required to be a mass node holder.

And that will show you how much that actually would cost.

So with the cost of Dash, which is $239, it would essentially be 239,000 from arsenide.

So it's quite expensive.

But the most important thing that people look at is are a Y.

How much do you actually get as a return on your investment?

So if you actually go into the cryptocurrency, you can see the daily, the weekly, the monthly, the

yearly income.

So it will cost 239,000 for a masternode.

So what you would be earning with that is $45 a day or 16,000 a year.

So looking at that ROI based on the cost of the masternode, obviously as the blockchain gets busier,

there will be more of a yearly income.

But as master nodes get added, as more people become masternode holders, that will get shared out.

So it could still dilute the yearly income, but you could see there's not much of a return on investment.

So what you would do is you would go back and you would have a look for something that gives you a bigger

return.

Now, what I would say is because looking at something like Easy, which I've never heard of, basically

that is 24,300% return.

So if we have a look, we go to it, then you can see how much you would be making a year and apparently

you would be making $323,000.

Now, considering that that costs only $1,452, that doesn't sound like it's right.

So I would make sure that you check these.

This isn't necessarily the most reliable source, but it gives you an idea of your potential earnings

and what how much it will cost and how many nodes are currently on that network.

So master nodes online and there are more like this.

So I hope you enjoyed that and I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 140. Delegated Proof of Stake (DPOS) and is it decentralised?

Delegated proof of stake or DPOs.

This is a relatively new consensus algorithm and it was created by Dan Larimer, the founder of Bit

Shares and of Steam.

So what happens with delegated proof of stake is the community votes in witnesses.

So there are 100 special people from the community that are voted in and they secure the network.

And like with master nodes, they do other functions too.

So the top 100 are paid witnesses, so they get paid for what they do.

But the top 20 and significantly more and the battle is always to try and get up into the top 20.

Now the top 20 essentially earn a full time salary to use steam as an example, steam witnesses and

$295 per day.

Now, with the voting system, it's constantly ongoing so you don't get voted in and you spend four

years in office?

No, it's a constantly ongoing process.

You can move up and down the rankings pretty much in real time.

So what that means is and why this is good is it removes malicious witnesses.

So if people are actively acting against the network, not doing what they should be doing or are pretty

much unpopular with the network, they're doing things against what the community is wanting.

They can get ousted.

OC And similarly the ones that are trying to do malicious things as well.

So like I say, the double spend attack, you know, these malicious witnesses can get ousted, their

performance is transparent, but the issue with delegated proof of stake is it's not fully decentralized

because you have voted in people and these people could be people that have won unpopularity.

They're people well known.

They're not necessarily completely impartial.

They're not completely different walks of life.

They're voted in.

So it's not truly decentralized, not a truly decentralized network.

And it's not necessarily fair either, because, again, you know, sometimes it's a popularity contest,

for instance, on Steemit, where a lot of these team witnesses are in order to be able to get votes,

they are asked by regular people in the community to upvote their stuff.

And if they don't get upvoted or re steam it, then they lose a vote and people take their votes away.

So it's not necessarily a fair system and that is what people have an issue with.

So where delegated proof of stake is happening right now, is with Steem, with EOS, with Lisk and

with Ark.

So I hope that that has explained delegated proof of stake in a clear way.

And I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 141. Other Proofs and what they mean?

Right.

Let's just cover the other proofs.

These are not necessarily as major.

However, some of them are probably going to become more major in time, and one of those is proof of

authority.

This has been made important by POS Network, also by V chain and by trash.

Now, how proof of authority works is essentially like delegated proof of stake in the it's reputation.

Scoring the people with a greater reputation on the blockchain are able to do more things such as making

dapps or doing certain blockchain functions.

If they have proved authority, then they have more power.

And then we've got proof of caring, which is something that was introduced by quite a few cryptocurrencies,

which is essentially you are as a holder, you are showing that you care about the cryptocurrency.

Now this is not like mining.

Really what you are doing is you are essentially promoting the cryptocurrency wherever you can on social

media with your friends and all that.

And then you have to submit a form and say how you are kind of promoting it, how you are caring, and

then you get rewards based on that.

Then you've got proof of importance which NEM have created.

You got stuff like proof of weak hands, which is actually a dapp, and then you got proof of storage

from stores.

So there are different proofs, but the ones that I talked about are really the ones that are more relevant,

the ones that you will see as more common in infrastructures.

And I hope that that's really helped you understand the consensus algorithms, the distributed networks

that exist in blockchain and how they protect people's money and also how they ensure speed on the blockchain.

So I hope that that's helped and I'll see you in the next section.

# **Section 21:** Investing in ICO's - Learn with this Practical Example!

## 142. What is an ICO? These are potentially hot!

Right in this section.

I'm going to talk to you about ISOs, that ISOs are the newest kind of cryptocurrency.

This is getting involved in a cryptocurrency before it gets listed on an exchange.

So what and why?

ISOs.

So ICO stands for initial coin offering.

This is an offering of tokens or coins to early investors.

It's otherwise known as token sale.

So if you go to a website and it says token sale, that is where it's giving you all of the information

to take part in an ICO.

So these are available on exchanges.

These are smart contract based.

So what you need is you need to have a normally these are Ethereum based for now.

Over time there's going to be way more ICOs across all of the different blockchains like Cardano, EOS,

Silica and all of that.

So typically you need will need some Ethereum and then you send it to a contract address and then it

spews back some tokens in reward for what you have put in.

So for instance, ten Ethereum could equal 1 million tokens from this ICO, so that's what an ICO is.

Okay.

Now what the purpose of this is for companies to raise money in exchange for tokens.

So let's say I wanted to create an online platform like Udemy in order to raise the capital to be able

to afford such a project to be built.

I will say, right, I'm creating this this website is called Superhuman Educates and I am offering

a million tokens for every ten ETH area.

So people will will launch my token sale and people will send me a etherium and I'll raise the capital

to in order to build it.

And in exchange, I give the tokens back to say thank you.

It's the earliest or at least one of the earliest opportunities to invest.

I'll talk more about that in a minute.

But it is the stage before it goes on the exchange.

So arguably you get it at the best price.

So typically you get the lowest or amongst the lowest price for tokens depends on if they've had a presale.

So this is the token sale.

Sometimes they have a pre-sale where you get a lower price, but this is these enable the greatest gains.

That's why over the last year, ICOs have been the most popular type of cryptocurrency to invest in.

Because if you invest in Bitcoin now, you know you need it to go.

So let's say today it's $8,000 and he's got $80,000 to make a ten X gain.

All right.

Now, if you invest in an ICO, which is 0.008 of a cent, and then when it goes on the exchange, it

goes to $0.08, that's a ten X gain.

Much easier to make ten X gains from an ICO.

And I'll show you more about ISOC gains and a little bit, but enables the greatest gains compared to

establish coins that you can already get on the exchange that have been around for ages so.

That was what and why I CEOs so I'll see you in the next so I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 143. Why ICOs are DYNAMITE investments!

IPOs versus ISOs.

IPOs are initial public offerings.

This is the stock market's equivalent, the future powerhouses like the future Tesla's, the future

Googles, the future Amazons versus AI CEOs, the cryptocurrency version of early investing.

So what's the difference between the two?

Well, IPOs make 50 to 1000 time profits a thousand times multipliers.

So if you put 1000 in and you make a thousand times multiply, that's $1,000,000 that you've made there.

So it's huge, huge, massive profit for investors.

Similar, same to ICOs.

However, this is a party that's only open to angel investors.

VC firm venture capital firms and founding teams.

So like the likes of like the early stuff at Facebook, they get like stock options because they've

just started.

So they get some options.

VC firms, the first people that Facebook encountered, you know, got special deals because there was

no real value at that time, know they were just making a future valuation.

And then angel investors, so specific people that put seed seed investments into crypto and projects.

So party is only open to the exclusive, only open to the people behind closed doors, the investors

that have a lot of money.

So if you or anybody who is smaller investor wants 1000 or 100 or 10,000, right?

These people won't touch you because they know these companies.

You know, the the IPOs are looking for millions.

So they'll go to proper investors, not to your average investor.

All right.

IPO is only open to the public when the money has already been made.

So Snapchat, the people that got involved in Snapchat when it was worth one of a cent, you know,

they they gave it an early valuation.

They bought millions of stocks at one point.

One of a sudden, you know, they got they got in very early.

Now, the public, when it goes on the stock market, it's $0.17.

The people who've made the money are the ones that got involved at 0.0 $0.01 back in the day, the VC

firms.

So the money's already been made.

So the public make much less money.

They make 10% gain a year.

Rubbish.

So I see those initial coin offerings open to everyone.

It's a game changer.

It's open to everyone.

It's changed the game.

Anybody can get involved in an early stage cryptocurrency project, you know, the very exciting ones

like Etherium and I'll show you how it can really make you serious money.

There's a game changer.

It makes it not exclusive anymore, makes it inclusive.

Everybody can get involved.

Everybody can get rich.

Now the general public can make times 52 times 1000.

Not just the VC firms and the corporate investors know everyone can do it.

That's why we love ICOs.

So in the next section, I'm going to be showing you the success of ICO investing, so I'll see you

there.

## 

## 144. How ICOs make millionaires!

I CEOs make millionaires.

It's a fact.

I know it because some YouTubers have done the exact same thing.

They've invested in an SEO, invested ten, 20,000 have become multimillionaires as a result of that.

So you can buy a cryptocurrency game changers for sense.

This is why you become a millionaire.

Because let's say like a theory, you know, now it's worth about $600.

At its peak, it's been nearly 1600 dollars.

And you could have got it for less for about $0.10.

So just goes to show you can buy into a game changer very early on.

If you can spot them, you can spot them.

And you have to use the criteria that I used earlier.

But you can get involved in the future cryptocurrency versions of Amazon and Tesla and Google and Facebook.

This is why it's a game changer.

Which is why I've just said, Hey, gang, Google, Facebook, Tesla stocks for Sensis the equivalent.

Now you can invest in the latest blockchain innovations.

So blockchains are like the operating system.

It's a bit like getting involved in Apple or Microsoft at the very beginning.

They are essentially operating systems for computers.

So by getting involved in these, you are getting involved in the whole structure around cryptocurrency.

So Ethereum is like the structure around decentralized apps at the moment.

It's been opened out now, but at the beginning and certainly still now, most dapps are Ethereum based.

So if you invested in Ethereum back in the day, boy, would you be rich.

It's much easier to make a profit than getting involved in established coins like Bitcoin because the

ten x is the 100 x is the 1000 x is the 10,000 x's.

They are more likely to occur with an ICO and getting involved at ICO than something that has been around

for years and has already made a massive profit.

It's the best opportunity to make multipliers.

Again, what I've just said, you know, times ten, times 100 all that lot now times 100, times 1000.

They're not easy.

They really are not easy and they're not common.

You probably know one in every 40 cryptocurrencies will achieve a times a hundred times 1000, but they

are the best opportunities to make multipliers.

So that is how ICOs make millionaires.

Now, let me give you some examples of how it has.

## 

## 145. Proof ICOS can make small investors RICH!

So what are the top five all time icons?

So these are all infrastructures, by the way.

So let me just show you what you could have made investing ICOs in these cryptocurrencies.

So Stratos, this was offered ICO 4.007 of ascent and its highest it's achieved nearly $23.

That is a 3200 times gain.

So if you put 1000 in, that would now be worth $3.2 million.

Etherium was $0.28.

An ICO at its peak is achieved $4,533, which is a 5000 times investment.

A 1000 times invested would now be $5.1 million.

Then iota 0.001 of a cent at ICO has reached $5.69, which again is a 5690 times gain.

1000.

Could have become $5.6 million.

Then there's Neo.

$0.03.

ICO has achieved nearly $200 6500 times multiplier, which would be 6 million.

6.5 million.

And then right at the top and make a terrific multiplier and x t which, you know, you could have got

4.00002 of a cent.

Has gotten up to $2.16, which is 128,000 times investment.

So that is mega horrific.

That's 128 million from a $1,000 investment.

Unbelievable.

But that.

Shows you what has been achieved through IQOS.

Now recently there hasn't been anything that's gotten close to this, but over time that can still happen.

The earlier you invest and if you hold, you could get massive gains.

So that shows you the ability to make multipliers with IQOS.

## 

## 146. Pre-Sales: How you can get the OPTIMUM price for Hot Cryptos

Private pre-sales.

This is the stage before ICO where you can get involved in a cryptocurrency.

This is arguably the earliest possible opportunity.

So private sales give you a discount even on ICO price.

So this is literally the earliest plus you can get bonus tokens.

So let's say the ICO price is $0.10.

At private sales, you could get it for $0.07 and you could get 10% token 10% in kind of free tokens

as well.

So get involved at presale.

So the like you've seen in the previous slide with the gains you could have made just from ICOs, imagine

the gains this would have enabled from the pre sell version of those ICOs.

Now to get involved in private or pre-sales.

Sometimes they look for you to be accredited, so the project will look for you to be an accredited

investor.

That typically means that you will either have been earning $200,000 per year over the last two years

or have a net worth of 1 million.

So let's say you've got a house that's worth $600,000.

You've got $300,000 in stocks, $200,000 in cryptocurrencies.

That gives you an asset base of over $1,000,000.

So that's how they that's how they come to that that that's as they come to that conclusion.

So you need to be accredited and this is for risk purposes.

This is for regulation purposes.

So this is where the institutional money goes so private.

And pre-sales is typically where you get the corporate investors, where you get the venture capitalists

getting in.

Okay, so if there are pre-sales offered and you can get in a pre sell time, typically you can make

an assumption that institutional money may have gone into this.

Now, typically with private and pre sales, there is a lockup.

So because you get the best deal and because you get the most amount of tokens with that deal, there's

the risk that you could burn all the people that get an ICO and later by selling all your tokens as

soon as it hits the exchange.

So they lock up your coins sometimes to make sure that you can't just just sell them.

So in exchange for giving you cheaper coins than everybody else, they make you hold onto them.

Forced hold, I suppose, for a period that could be a month, it could be five years.

There are some cryptocurrencies I've got involved in.

It makes you hold it for about 4 to 5 years.

You typically will put your Ethereum in.

Let's use Ethereum's as an example.

Let's say it's worth $600 at the time you buy in.

Sometimes that money will be locked up for four or five months, maybe eight months before the ICO actually

happens and before an exchange listing.

So if the Ethereum goes from that $600 to $1500, that's three times gain you've just missed out on

because you have locked in at $600 per Etherium when you go in.

So that is also the other risk.

But arguably, the discounts make it worth it.

## 

## 147. Why Private Sales can the most valuable?

So what are the positives of the pre-sale process?

Well, a discount.

So this gives you a greater ability to make multipliers.

So looking at those examples I gave you on a previous slide, if you got in before that, you could

have made bigger multipliers.

I mean, if you put 1000 in, you get a bigger multiplier potential on that investment.

It's institutionally backed most of the time.

That means that if institutions have got into it or venture capitalists have gone through it, they

see a long term potential in that.

They see this could be a next juggernaut and another Tesla and Amazon.

So it gives you the impression and also allows your money to be in there to fulfill the long term potential

of that project.

There's more credentials as a result of being institutionally backed, there's less risk.

And because people will know the institutional money or venture capital money has gone into it, it

could lead to more and speedier gains because there's more trust.

People who couldn't get a presale, couldn't get an ICO but can get it on the exchange, we'll think.

Well, you know what?

It's had VC funding.

People obviously believe in it, so I'll invest in it.

So the people who got in at pre-sales speedier gains and more more gains.

The forced hodling is not a bad thing necessarily.

Let's say you got into ethereum's $0.10 presale at $0.10 and it went to $10 and you were about to sell

it, but you couldn't sell it because you were forced to hold on to it for at least two years.

Well, two years later, it hit nearly $4,500.

And in which case, you'll think, oh, thank God, I didn't I couldn't have sold it for $10 because

now I can sell it for 1500 dollars and make a five, 6000 time investment.

Okay.

So enhanced multipliers sometimes if you're forced to hold, a lot of people don't like to hold because

they like to make a3x gain, a5x gain, and they take their money out and put it into the next one.

But you can get better multipliers if you just leave it in sometimes.

Not all the time, but sometimes.

And it's exclusive.

So you are in a kind of exclusive community of people that have bought into it early.

So that gives you that makes you feel happier about it because you're with an enhanced community, the

people you have money, the people who are credible investors, accredited investors, you know, you're

not you're not you're not investing with idiots who are just going to dump it as soon as it hits the

exchange.

You're getting involved with good people, you know, people who are very wealthy, people who are high

quality investors.

So this is a good thing.

The negatives are that it requires a large minimum investment normally.

So they could ask anything from a ten Etherium minimum investment to five Bitcoin minimum investment.

And what this does is this increases the risk because if if the project should come out and it loses

a lot of money, you could lose that large investment.

So it does require a large minimum investment and you got to make sure that you're happy affording it

and paying for it.

Institutional flips.

So institutional buyers who buy in large bulk, they get a massive, heavy discount, they get a heavy

amount of free tokens.

They could sell off their their their coins and they could tank the price to below pre sell price,

which could burn everybody else.

That is not a good thing.

Okay.

Now, if you get involved in this later, it's a worse burn.

But that doesn't necessarily mean that things that have pre-sales do carry risks.

The high bonuses.

So the bonus tokens, the free tokens for getting involved at presale can give an increased chance of

a flip.

So a flip is as soon as it hits the exchange, the price tags, because people have been given free

tokens as a bonus, they can sell those free tokens and think, Oh, well, it wasn't the amount I invested

in anyway.

So it's just kind of it's just kind of house money that can increase the chance of a flip.

So that has a high risk opportunity cost.

Obviously, if you get involved in something in March and your tokens are locked up and it's at the

pegged Ethereum price and in November it's opened and Ethereum has gone up to 2000, you've missed not

only the chance to make more money with Ethereum and leaving your money in Etherium, but also investing

in all the projects between March and November, which could have made you five X's, you could have

made ten, five X's in that time.

So it does give there is an opportunity cost with getting involved at presale stage.

And then lastly, less control over your gains because if you're forced to hold, can't just get out

when you want to and you're frustrated.

You know, let's say you you get a large amount of a cryptocurrency that when it goes on the exchange,

it goes 20 x 30 X in the first few days and you're like, I don't want to sell.

I want to sell, but you can't.

Your tokens are locked up and then when they are unlocked two months later and that big gain has gone

and it's like a5x, you'll be like, Oh, for God's sake, I could have made much more gains from that.

So that is a negative.

That's another negative of the pre sell element.

But you know with risk you can come large reward.

So I think that's helped.

I'll see you in the next lecture.

## 

## 148. How You can take part in Pre/Private Sales

So how do you get involved in pre-sales?

Because this is not easy.

If you want to get involved in ICO, it's open to everyone.

Anybody can get involved in ICO, but pre-sales not so tends to be more exclusive.

So how do you get involved?

How do you take part?

How do you become part of the pre-sales community?

So these are the ways.

Public ice polls.

They do exist.

You can join them on Telegram.

There are public pools.

Anybody can join them.

And you know, they will say, oh, we have got allocation for this presale.

If you want to get involved, send your Ethereum to this address.

And normally it's done through something called Primer BLOCK, which is a smart contract.

So the apartment block will acknowledge your contract address as part of the pool and then you submit

your theorem.

The smart contract will spell you out the tokens that you have paid for so you can make your own or

you can be part of an organized one.

Private networks.

This is four more quality ICO pools.

Now, quality projects will not use or allow public ICO pools to get their funding.

They will typically use private networks.

They will use people that they've been using for years, and the people they've been using for years

have to make sure that they have got a quality control procedure when they are selecting people to go

into the private network.

So in order to in order to get into the private networks, you need to attend events, attend cryptocurrency

parties and do some social media networking.

So you got to speak to people who are in private pools, see how you can get in, talk to people generally,

and maybe an opportunity will open out for you.

That's how you get involved at private and private networks.

How I have seen it done is through events.

So I've gone to cryptocurrency events and I've been invited into pools, but then I MCP, I would get

invited.

But generally if you talk to the right people and you have a good rapport with them, they may invite

you because they like you and think that what you've said to them is credible and they trust you.

You can contact the team so you can go on Telegram and say, Guys, how can I get involved in private

sale or pre-sale?

You could email the team via the contact details on the website, or there are forms on websites where

they say you want to get involved at presale.

Fill out this form.

What you normally have to do is you have to put your your name.

You have to say if you're accredited or not.

And an email address.

And then you send it over and it gives it to them for consideration.

And lastly, you can get involved via kind of VC and investment firms, but this is more exclusive.

But yeah, though they do take on some influences.

They take on people who add value.

So if you have a blog or if you've got a YouTube channel or if you have some way of getting some free

giving some free advertising for the project, these VC and investment firms may invite you and say,

you know, we'd like it if you you worked with us.

You know, these are very exclusive.

This is not common at all anyway.

So that is how you take part.

It is possible, but it is difficult.

However, if you put in the hard work, attend events, particularly big events like consensus or blockchain

events where you get decent investors, high quality events, then you've got a very strong chance.

Otherwise there are public pools, but the really good opportunities don't go through public pools anyway.

Hey, that's helped.

And I'll see you in the next lecture.

# **Section 22:** Conclusion!

## 149. Congratulations on completing this course! How to move forward with your journey

Congratulations on completing this cryptocurrency course.

I hope that it has really, really helped you with getting involved in cryptocurrency explained a lot

and hopefully giving you everything you need to do really well in this game.

Now, in order to progress your training and education further, what you can do is you can now join

the Super Man's Cryptocurrency Mastermind Groups or scheme.

In here you will be able to chat with all the students have taken the course have learned from it,

are sharing their tips, are sharing the investments that they think are worthwhile and have just have

somewhere to ask questions if you ever get stuck.

So the links on the next article also I would recommend you do is make sure that you follow me on Twitter

to get all of the latest updates and also follow all of the cryptocurrencies you are liking as you are

getting to know them and follow them on Twitter.

If you just have a look at the people that I'm following, I am following all of the influential people

and all of the exciting projects on Twitter so that I know all the time.

What are these guys up to?

What are the influencers talking about?

And just make sure you have a good understanding of what all of the various different people are saying.

So you want to have a good mixture of influences, projects and founders and getting an understanding

of what are these people doing?

And if you want, you can just simply copy all the people that I follow if you want to know what is

going on in the industry.

But I hope that this is really giving you a great indication and I hope I hope this is giving you a

really insightful education in cryptocurrency, hopefully not too advanced.

Hopefully everything was well explained.

If you've got any questions, ask them in the Q&A section.

But until then, I look forward to seeing you in the group.

I look forward to your questions.

Hopefully I'll see you on YouTube as well.

And let's just keep this cryptocurrency education going.

So thank you for taking this course and I hope to see you in another one.